









Ship Doctor Franklin



le,  
il,  
ih,  
w.  
h  
to  
sam  
ly  
in  
-Lay  
3.  
ee  
wa  
X  
V  
63.  
V  
4  
V



58.1632





Index To A Whaling Voyage. Page	
I Resolve To Go A Whaling Voyage. — — —	1
I Obtain A Huspooneers Berth. — — —	2
Preparations For The Voyage. — — —	3
The Way They Do It. — — —	4
Runners, And Sharks Game. — — —	5
A Whaling Advertisement. — — —	6
Jonathans Debut At New Bedford. —	7
A Picture Of Whalersmans	8
Boarding Houses. — — —	9
Refreshing Slumbers. — — —	10
Our Alarm Bell. — — —	11
Setting The Table. — — —	12
The Initiating Breakfast. — — —	13
Bill Of Fare. — — —	14
Mustering A Crew Up. — — —	15
The Way It Is Done. — — —	16
A Landsmans Outfit. — — —	17
Mr Jonathan Simple's Outfit Bill. — — —	18
My Birth Night, Aged 34 Years. — — —	19
Very Busy Indeed. — — —	20
Adieu To New Bedford. — — —	21
Mr Brown The Outfitter. — — —	22
How They Astonished Him. — — —	23
Shipwreck On Land. — — —	24
Sad Thoughts. — — —	25
The Departure, Nov <sup>r</sup> 11 <sup>th</sup> 1856. — — —	26
Crew of Bark Doctor Franklin. — — —	27
First Night At Sea. — — —	28
Drawings, Of A Whale Boats Gear. — — —	29
There She Blows. — — —	30
A Very Heavy Gale. — — —	31
A Providencial Escape. — — —	32
Our First Fine Sabbath Day. — — —	33



No. 2. Dec<sup>r</sup> 1856, *Index* To April 1857.

A School of Blackfish. — — — —	34
Breaking The Sabbath Day. — — —	35
Cape de Verd Islands. — — — —	36
do — do — do — — — —	37
A Run On Shore. — — — —	38
The Captain An Absentee. — — —	39
Our Captains Triumphant Return. —	40
With his Dear Lady Love. — — —	41
The Ship Saratoga. — — — —	42
Division of The Spoils. — — — —	43
Christmas Doings, 1856. — — — —	44
Our Flash Cabin. — — — —	45
Happy New Year 1857, Boats Crew Watches. —	46
Our First Gun, Ship Addison. — — —	47
The Isabeleta Hines. — — — —	48
Her Officers. — — — —	49
Badly Situated. — — — —	50
Doctor Franklin Again. — — — —	51
Bound To The Eastward. — — — —	52
Gave Her The Studding Sails. — — —	53
Two Cases of Assault and Battery. — —	54
A Little of All Sorts. — — — —	55
Cruelty To Dumb Animals. — — —	56
Our Captains Fancy Gig. — — — —	57
The Gig In complete Jamming Order. — —	58
Bark Rifle of New London. — — —	59
Bound For St Helena. — — — —	60
Arrival at St Helena. — — — —	61
On Liberty at St Helena. — — — —	62
Corking Ship, do — do. — — — —	63
Old Farmer Bagsley's Visit. — — —	64
On Liberty Again. — — — —	65
Old Bagsley's Second Haul. — — —	66



From April 1857. Index To September 1857.	N <sup>o</sup> 3.
Four April Fools, April 1 <sup>st</sup> 1857. —	67
Leaving St Thelesia. — — — —	68
Inhuman Torture, of Four Seamen. —	69
The Very Essence of Torture. — — —	70
Very Poor Prospects. — — — —	71
At Anabona Island. — — — —	72
Leaving Anabona Island. — — —	73
Bound For Trinidad. — — — —	74
Blackfish catching. — — — —	75
Martin Vas, And Trinidad. — — —	76
An Official Consultation. — — —	77
Bound For The Coast of Africa. — —	78
Amongst The Fleet. — — — —	79
Visiting The Fleet. — — — —	80
Can't Stop For Sperm Whales. — — —	81
Thump Backs And Gamming. — — —	82
Porpoise Beef For Sailors. — — —	83
Breaking Both Black And White Skin. —	84
The Blood Thound. — — — —	85
Our First Whale; (with A Drawing) — —	86
A Cow And calf; do — do — — —	87
Greasy Times; do — do — — —	88
An Unfortunate Accident; do — do — —	89
On A Sick Bed, 90. Recovering Gradually. —	91
Blisters And Bleeding. — — —	92
All Sorts of theses; — (A drawing) — —	93
On Deck Again; — — do — do — —	94
Whaling And Fishing; — do — do — —	95
Slashing Away At Them; — do — do — —	96
The Last Thumpback; — do — do — —	97
Last Chase For Thump Backs. — — —	98
Port Habenda Africa. — — —	99
Do — — Do — — Do. — — —	100



No. 4. From Sept<sup>r</sup> 1857. *Index* To May 1858.

Death And Burial Of Our Cook. — —	101
Bound For Loando. — — — —	102
St Paul De Loando, Africa. — — —	103
Leaving St Paul De Loando. — — —	104
Elephant Bay, Or Equimira. — — —	105
Leaving Equimira. — — — —	106
Cruising On The Meridian. — — —	107
Cruising East of The Meridian. — —	108
Running North Again. — — — —	109
Our First At Capturing,	110
A Sperm Whale, & The Result. — —	111
Small Fish, And A Small Row. — —	112
Second Arrival At Equimira. — — —	113
At Equimira, March 1858. — — —	114
Bound For St Helena. — — — —	115
Old Farmer Bagsley Again. — — —	116
In Port, St Helena. — — — —	117
At St Helena. — — — —	118
Do — Do — — Do. — — — —	119
Do — Do — — Do, In Liberty. — — —	120
Leaving St Helena, April 1858. — —	121
Do — — do — — do. — — — —	122
Do — — Do — — Do. — — — —	123
Sabbath Day Reflections. — — — —	124
Four Little Strangers. — — — —	125
A Heavy Squall. — — — —	126
St Helena Not Forgotten Yet. — — —	127
The Albacore. — — — —	128
The Skip Jack, Or Bonita — — — —	129
The Yellow Tail. — — — —	130
A School of Killers. — — — —	131
The Lost, Found. — — — —	132
Great Work At Coopering. — — —	133



# The Bachelor, Or Sperm Whale.

The Bull whale, makes  
from one to 150 Bbls  
of Oil, But rarely  
exceeds  
150 Bbls.



The Cows  
make from one  
to 50, But rarely exceed  
50 Bbls.

The Above Represents, A Large Sperm Whale, with one exception; that is, The Fleck, or Tail, instead of being up & down, like any other Fish, it lays across the Fish flat-ways in the Water. The upper Part of the head (base) is full of clear Spermiceti Lick as candles are made from; & in A Large Whales base, there is from 12 to 20 barrels of it. The Middle Part, Lunk, is the same only it is hard & has to be Boiled. (Jaw) is the only Place where they have teeth, there being none in the Upper Part of the Mouth. And in the Lower Jaw Ther is about 50, that average from 1 Pound to 3. Forward of the Fin where the Eye is Placed, Is the Skull & upper Jaw, The Blubber on this is no good But, on all other Parts of the Body it is good, even on the Fins & Tail. They have but one Nostril & Spout Hole. Which Leads from the Lungs up through the base Much like A Gutta Serena Hose & opens at the very end of his head, as above. They frequent all Parts of All Oceans where the Water is deep. And from the Equator up as high as the Latitudes of 65° North & South. The Females & calves go in large shoals & are never seen alone. The Old Bulls, Follow the schools, But, are often found alone, & are very vicious often destroying boats, and all in them & even Attack ships at times. They can remain under water from one to two hours, the Largest ones.



# The Black, Or Right Whale.



The Black or Right Whale  
Is Generally found in high latitudes, from  
30 degrees, to 55 degrees both North & South. they  
are scarcely ever found any great distance  
from the Land; And in the Calving Season  
The Females seek out some Sandy Bay where  
the Water is Shal, Smooth & Clear from  
here they keep their young until able  
to face the Rough weather but Side. They generally  
go in Pairs, & are Very Vicious, Especially when  
Protecting their young, They will fight while  
Life Remains in them, & A great many Lives  
are lost in capturing them. The Whale Bone  
lets in the Upper Part of the Head side by side  
to the number of about 400 Slabs or Teeth, pointing  
downwards with the Hair Edge inwards, The  
lip closes over those, so as to enable them to  
strain the Water out, leaving the Brit, (a small  
piece) half an inch in length, & which inhabit the  
Waters by Legions, in the cavity of the Mouth.  
The Southern Whales, make from 50 to 120  
barrels of Oil, & the Northern Whales from  
50 to 300 barrels, & Contrary to the Sperm Whale  
the Females is the Largest. They have Two Spout  
Holes or Nostrils & stay under water from  
10 to 45 minutes. They are taken to the North  
ward from April until September, & South, from  
October until May. Disappearing both North & South  
in the Winter Seasons.



From May 1858, Index To June 27 <sup>th</sup> 1858	No. 5.
May Day, 1858. — — — — —	134
Bark Heoka of Westport. — — — — —	135
A Gunning Scene, And How It	136
Is Enjoyed. Assault, And Battery. — — — — —	137
The Bark Tropic Bird. — — — — —	138
A Porpoise & A Sunfish. — — — — —	139
At Ambriz, Africa. — — — — —	140
Bark Hazard of Boston. — — — — —	141
The Barks Washington & Harwich. — — — — —	142
Part of Habenda Again. — — — — —	143
On Liberty, June 1858. — — — — —	144
Hauled Over The Coals. — — — — —	145
Oranges & Pine Apples. — — — — —	146
Our Habenda Recruits. — — — — —	147
Running Down the Coast. — — — — —	148
Taken For A Slave. — — — — —	149
A Sawing Match. — — — — —	150
A Regular Set to. — — — — —	151
The Fight Finished. — — — — —	152
A Flogging Match. — — — — —	153
A Game of Cross Purposes. — — — — —	154
Gunning. — — — — —	155
The Wrong Fish Hooked. — — — — —	156
First Turnspicks, for 1858. — — — — —	157
Captain's Jackknife & Hatchet. — — — — —	158
Selling Provisions. — — — — —	159
The Island of Corisco. — — — — —	160
A Visit To The Missionaries. — — — — —	161
Crangusimba Station. — — — — —	162
Agoba Station. — — — — —	163
Mrs & Mrs Ogden. — — — — —	164
Our Return To The Vessel. — — — — —	165
Corisco, Its Productions. — — — — —	166



No. From June 1858, Index To August 1858	
Mc Hackey & Mc Ogden's Visit. — — —	167
Leaving Corisco June 1858. — — —	168
Princes Island. — — —	169
St Antonio Bay. — — —	170
Fourth Of July Excursions. — — —	171
The Bark Pearl Of New London. — — —	172
Mated With The Bark Pearl. — — —	173
30. Pleasure Excursions. — — —	174
are Trading & Pleasuring. — — —	175
for Jack is good As his Master. (178)	176
The Foraging Expeditions. (179) — — —	177
the The Brig Hopeton Of Scipican. (180) — — —	178
A Grand Concert, & A Row. (181) — — —	179
to & Selling Out Our Stock. (176) — — —	180
go. Glorious Times. (177) — — —	181
Pro Commencement of Whaling. — — —	182
Lip Tropic Bird & Mary Gardner. — — —	183
are Whaling Hornings. — — —	184
id. Sporting Evenings. — — —	185
to & A Whale Line Music Box. — — —	186
are Alone Again, July 1858. — — —	187
The Hump Backs Holiday. — — —	188
Rum And Its Effects. — — —	189
Exploring The Coast. — — —	190
Attack And Defence. — — —	191
A Whale At Last, August 2 <sup>nd</sup> 1858. — — —	192
Butting And Boiling. — — —	193
More Blubber. — — —	194
And Still More. — — —	195
Heoka & Helen Augusta. — — —	196
Another Prize August 1858. — — —	197
Full Of Business. — — —	198
West Bay. — — —	199



From August 1858 Index To October 1858. No 7.

Goat Island Anchorage. — — —	200
Hard Luck All Round. — — —	201
Miserable Luck. — — —	202
One More Fish. — — —	203
Hard Work. — — —	204
A Pull Round The Island. — — —	205
Shifting Ground Again. — — —	206
Whalers Tricks. — — —	207
Attachment Of The Hump Back, Towards Her Young. — — —	208 209
A Sunkers Whale. — — —	210
Towing a Whale. — — —	211
A Man Killed By a Whale. — — —	212
First Line Lost 200 Fathoms. — — —	213
News From Ferrasido Po. — — —	214
A Bill Fish. — — —	215
A Whale Onshore. — — —	216
Disappointment. — — —	217
Drifting Off Shore. — — —	218
Off At Sea Again. — — —	219
The Old Pearl Goner. — — —	220
The Pearl's Return. — — —	221
Exchanging The News. — — —	222
The Other Whalers About Leaving. — — —	223
The Worst Kind Of Weather. — — —	224
Our Last Hump Back. — — —	225
The Fleet At West Bay. — — —	226
Prepairing To Leave. — — —	227
Dissolving Partnership. — — —	228
The Pearl Leaves For Home. — — —	229
Advice To Princes Island. — — —	230
Chart Of Princes Island. — — —	231
Description Of Princes Island. — — —	232

G  
H  
I  
K  
L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z



No. 8. From October 1858, Index To December 1858.

	A Joyful Day For All. — — —	233
	The African Coast Again. — — —	234
	The Doctor Franklin Ashore. — — —	235
	All Afloat Again. — — —	236
	Walt Heat Distempers. — — —	237
	Went Lower For Whales. — — —	238
	Beating Up The Coast. — — —	239
	Chased By A Coast Guard. — — —	240
	Who Turns Out An Old Acquaintance. — — —	241
	Porpoise Catching. — — —	242
The	Idle Thoughts, Oct- 1858. — — —	243
the	St Paul De Louro. — — —	244
	Selling Oil, Oct- 1858. — — —	245
to	Buying Stinking Beef. — — —	246
go	A Heavy Draft On Wilcox. — — —	247
Pro	At Sea Again, Nov- 1858. — — —	248
Lif	Bound For Equimira. — — —	249
are	The Three Runaways. — — —	250
get	Getting Some Potatoes. — — —	251
to	Fish And Vegetables. — — —	252
see	Two Men That Escaped us. — — —	253
	Farewell To Equimira. — — —	254
	More Cruel Torture. — — —	255
	The Torturing Continued. — — —	256
	On The Brink Of A Mutiny. — — —	257
	A Dissatisfied Ships Company. — — —	258
	A Brutal Ship Master. — — —	259
	Our Tea All Gone. — — —	260
	Bound To The Westward. — — —	261
	Crossing The Carroll Ground. — — —	262
	A Greeting From The Writer. — — —	263
	All Hands, Turned Grahamites. — — —	264
58	Box Blocks, And Unbuoy. — — —	265



From December 1858, Index To February 1859. No. 9.

Apple Pie For Pigs. — — —	266
No Catch 'ee, No Tackle. — — —	267
Eat It Or Leave It. — — —	268
Martin Was And Trinidad. — — —	269
A Little Of All Sorts. — — —	270
Hot And Heavy. — — —	271
Bark San Francisco. — — —	272
Rough Gaming. — — —	273
A Fine Whaling Day. — — —	274
On The Scent Of Whales. — — —	275
Monday Bread & Rotten Meat. — — —	276
Sunday Exercises. — — —	277
Bark Eben Dodge. — — —	278
The Hungry Strangers. — — —	279
A Friend Indeed, A Friend Indeed. — — —	280
A School Of Sperm Whales. — — —	281
Our First Sperm Whale. — — —	282
Cutting In Once More. — — —	283
Beauties Of Whaling. — — —	284
Steering Our Blubber. — — —	285
Out Of Coffee. — — —	286
One Good Meal. — — —	287
Very Rough Weather. — — —	288
Eager For Whales. — — —	289
A Little Pork, & Borreta. — — —	290
A White Squall. — — —	291
Bad Weather. — — —	292
Four Sperm Whales. — — —	293
Cutting And Boiling. — — —	294
Uncommon Bad Weather. — — —	295
Empty Slope Cask. — — —	296
Luck, And No Luck. — — —	297
Feeding Old Neptune. — — —	298



No 10. From February 1859, Index To May 14<sup>th</sup> 1859

One More Barn. — — —	299
Provisions getting short. — — —	300
I Raise Sperm Whales. — — —	301
Four More Pigs Born, — — —	302
And One Murdered. — — —	303
A Narrow Escape. — — —	304
A Sea Lawyer. — — —	305
Ship, Charles W Morgan. — — —	306
Dolphins. — — —	307
Polishing Up Things. — — —	308
Preparing To Leave. — — —	309
All Done Whaling. — — —	310
No More Mast Heads. — — —	311
A Poisoner Poisoned. — — —	312
Calm. — — —	313
Bound For St Helena. — — —	314
A Breeze, At Last. — — —	315
Arrival At St Helena, 1859. — — —	316
Painting And Sporting. — — —	317
Commencement Of Liberty. — — —	318
Landing The Whores. — — —	319
Lord Russell's Arrival. — — —	320
Adieu To St Helena. — — —	321
Recruits At St Helena. — — —	322
The Ships Bills. — — —	323
A Fool, Or A Rogue. — — —	324
My Own Remarks. — — —	325
Swedish Ship, Suevige. — — —	326
The North Star. — — —	327
Call All Hands. — — —	328
Down Royals Again. — — —	329
Down Studding Sail Booms. — — —	330
A Sunday At St Helena. — — —	331



From May 14<sup>th</sup> 1859 Index To May Writings. No. 11.

The Golly Sailors. — — —	332
Fitting For Home. — — —	333
Queens, Of Triumphs. — — —	334
The Rollers. — — —	335
A Half Drowned Whore. — — —	336
Ladies Jubilee. — — —	337
Cheers, By The Ladies. — — —	338
Oh! Crackey What Fun. — — —	339
Captain, And What Sick. — — —	340
Look, And Weep. — — —	341
Wilcox Pays For All. — — —	342
St Helena Harbour. — — —	343
Port Regulations. — — —	344
The Landing, & Fortifications. — — —	345
Ladder Hill. — — —	346
A View Of James Town. — — —	347
The Inhabitants. — — —	348
(Napoleon's Tomb.) — — —	349
Their Farms. — — —	350
Island Produce. — — —	351
Anabona Island. — — —	352
Tiger, And The Negroes. — — —	353
Anabona Fruits. — — —	354
King Jimmy Hadley. — — —	355
Brown Property. — — —	356
Schooner, John E Smith. — — —	357
James Patterson, And — — —	358
The Captain, Fight. — — —	359
Peace Restored. — — —	360
Anabona Houses. — — —	361
The Inhabitants. — — —	362
Their Propensities. — — —	363
Church, And Town. — — —	364

L  
M  
N  
O  
P  
Q  
R  
S  
T  
U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z



No 12. Promiscuous Index Of Different Times.	
Settling Our Accounts. — — —	365
Farewell To Anabona. — — —	366
Port Habenda, Africa. — — —	367
Habenda Crew Men. — — —	368
Fashions, And Laws. — — —	369
A Slave Barracoon. — — —	370
Shipping Off Slaves. — — —	371
The Captain, And Harpooners. —	372
Dead, Or Alive. — — —	373
King Pookatah's Warriors. — —	374
Almost A Row. — — —	375
Peaceful Reflections. — — —	376
Equimina, Africa. — — —	377
Don Eras, And — — —	378
His Plantations. — — —	379
And Trading. — — —	380
Life Improvements. — — —	381
My Opinion Of Equimina. — —	382
On Bark Isabeleta Lines. — —	383
Almost A Wreck. — — —	384
Cutting away The Sails. — — —	385
Returning Thanks. — — —	386
The Rum Getting Short. — — —	387
To San Francisco, Or Hell! — —	388
In Good Spirits Again. — — —	389
A Fatal Mistake. — — —	390
A Gale Of Wind. — — —	391
Breakers Ahead. — — —	392
Our Kessel Strikes. — — —	393
We Cut away Our Mainmast. — —	394
A Dismal Wreck. — — —	395
A Joyful Discovery. — — —	396
The Crew Saved. — — —	397



From May 15 <sup>th</sup> 1859, Index To	
The Cook, Steward, & Second Mate Saved. —	398
The Captain, & Mate Lost. — —	399
On The Beach. — — —	400
A Good Samaritan. — — —	401
Mrs Johnson. — — —	402
I get Basely Robbed. — — —	403
Disposal of the Wreck. — —	404
We are Suspected of Mutiling. —	405
Bark Doctor Franklin Continued.	406
A False Alarm. — — —	407
The Brig Leonidas, May 1859. —	408
Strange News From Home. —	409
Disappointed Hopes. — — —	410
Rather Dull Music. — — —	411
The Bark Pamela. — — —	412
Hammouth Pilot Fish. — —	413
Captain Edgeston. — — —	414
The Bark Cleora. — — —	415
A Gale Of Wind. — — —	416
Finbacks, And Blackfish. —	417
Another Assault, and Battery. —	418
A Little Of All Sorts. — — —	419
The Orcaft, And Doctor. — —	420
A Genuine Fox Paw. — — —	421
Cutting In Gear. — — —	422
What Nos 1, 2, 3, 4, & 5, Are Used For. —	423
What Uses Nos 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, & 13, Are Put to. —	424
What Nos 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, are used for. —	425
Mincing, And Boiling, Apparatus. —	426
What Nos From One To 8 Are Used for. —	427
What Nos, 9 To 15 Are Used For. —	428
Continued From Page 421. — —	429
Running The Ground Over. — —	430



Another Grand Mistake. — —	431
The Bark Thomas Winslow. — —	432
The Ship Mohawk. — —	433
The Fourth of July 1859. — —	434
The Seventh Wonder. — —	435
Barks Maria and Iowa. — —	436
An Old Shipmate. — —	437
Who Done It. — —	438
Whipping A Heavy Sea. —	439
Happy In Misery. — —	440
Very Bad Weather. — —	441
Homeward Bound. — —	442
Old Neptune Forever. — —	443
A Heavy Gale. — —	444
A Young Hurricane. — —	445
Dreadful Weather. — —	446
Agreeably Disappointed. —	447
The Last Staff of Life. — —	448
Crossing The Gulf Stream. — —	449
In The Gulf Stream. — —	450
Out Of Our Reckoning. — —	451
Five Useful Receipts. — —	452
On Soundings. — —	453
Land Ho! At Last. — —	454
Nearly To an End. — —	455
The Last of the Voyage. — —	456
	457
	458
	459
	460
	461
	462
	463



- 464
- 465
- 466
- 467
- 468
- 469
- 470
- 471
- 472
- 473
- 474
- 475
- 476
- 477
- 478
- 479
- 480
- 481
- 482
- 483
- 484
- 485
- 486
- 487
- 488
- 489
- 490
- 491
- 492
- 493
- 494
- 495
- 496









(18)

# The Bow Head, Or Polar Whale



This Species of the Whale is to met with in the  
Greenland, Schatz's & Arctic Seas, & it is supposed  
by many, that they also inhabit the Ant  
Arctic Ocean but, as yet it is not certain. They  
are always found among the Ice or in close Proxi  
imity to it. They are generally very fat, and yield  
from 25 to 300 Barrels. The oil Brings from  
two to four cents a Gallon more than the Right  
Whale, The Bone, or Teeth are also of a Better  
quality & Longer; I have seen teeth of this  
Whale over Seventeen feet in Length. The fema  
les are the Largest. They are very easily killed  
Scarcely ever showing fight, & desert their  
Young when Harpooned. They subsist on a  
Sort of Jelly substance, about the Size of  
a Walnut, which is very Plentiful among  
the Ice. They have Two Spout Holes or Nostrils  
on the Top of the Head, which are formed  
so as to protrude through the Air Holes  
in the Ice when they are under it. and  
it is supposed by many that they can remain 5 to  
for days under water without Breathing, and  
They have been known to go over three Hun  
dred miles under Ice, that not a single Air  
hole could be found in. On the end of their Nose, (in  
stead of a Bonnet, or Bunch, like the R. Whale,) there  
is an Oval Flat, in Shape like the inside of a  
half a Bell, and is covered with short Hair. c.



# The Hump Back Whale.

Length from

- 40 To 65  
Feet

Breadth -

12 to 18 Feet

This Species of the Whale, is found on nearly every Coast, & round almost every Island Between the Latitude 45 degrees, and the Equator. They are seldom seen off Soundings, Except, when Making Passages. When full grown, they yield from 30 to 75 Barrels of Oil; which is little inferior to R. Whale Oil; their Bone, or Teeth, are very Short & coarse & is never saved. Their fins unlike any other whale, are very long & narrow, and they use them in defending themselves & young. They are the Hardest kind of Whales to capture, generally letting off at full Speed when first struck & continue so, until they are either killed or make their escape. A Vessel that takes one Third of the Bulls they Strike is considered very Lucky. Most Vessels, try for Calves, for if you strike a Calf, & weaken him through loss of Blood, you are sure of The Old Cow, for she will never desert her Young, But, fight for it, with Tins & head, and you have to be careful how you approach them. They will take their Calves on their backs, or Head & start off at full Speed, until the little fellow is too weak to hold on any longer. They will then lay by him & fight until she breathes her last. They have two Spout holes & feed upon small fish of various kinds. They are taken at all seasons of the Year in various Latitudes. They are seldom attacked off Soundings as they most invariably sink when dead, & in 20 fathoms water do not rise again under 48 Hours.



# The Fin Back Whale



This Whale is very numerous, & is to be met with, in nearly all Parts of every Ocean that is free from Ice, & in every Latitude, both in Shoal & in deep Water. They are a Very long & narrow Whale, & some of them attain, a great length, longer than any other kind of Whale & are called Sulphur Bottoms. They make but little Oil & of a poor quality; Their Bone or Tect are good for nothing. They are never attacked, excepting for a Frolick, by the Whalers, for unless you strike their vitals with the Harpoon, off they dart at the Rate of Two miles a Minute with the Boat after them & if you get off with the Loss of 100 fathoms of line & your Harpoons you are lucky. If you succeed in killing them 9 out of 10 will sink and you are obliged to cut the line or they will take the Boat down. They go either single or in Pairs, seldom congregating together like other Whales. They have two Spout holes, but so close together that there is but one Spout seen when they breathe. They stay down generally from 15 to 30 minutes at a Time, & Their Food is Brit, and other small fish. They are quite tame or silly & often come playing round the ship until they are pelted off with Bricks. Billots of wood &c, & often receive their Death wounds from a Lance. They make from 15 To 50 Bbls of Oil.



The Black Fish, of Five Barrels

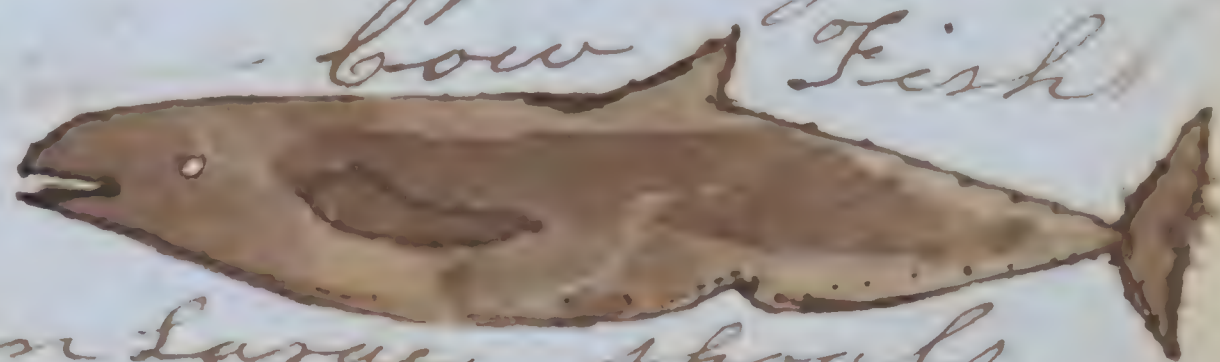


The Blackfish is to be met with in all Parts of The Ocean, between the Equator; and the Lat<sup>d</sup> of 50 Degrees North & South, and both in deep & shoal Water. They go in large Shoals & never single. Their feed is Squid, the same as the Sperm Whale, and their Oil next in Value. They have Ivory teeth in both Jaws, and the head where it is marked off is one solid mass of fat. They make from one, to seven Barrels of Oil. They have two Nostrils but both come together in one, at the Outlet. They stay under water from 15 minutes to half an hour. When killed, they sink & you have to haul them to the Surface with the Harpoon & Line. When you Harpoon one, The shoal will never leave him, or her, until it has received its death wound, and you have a chance to get one to each Boat. There is two other species between the Blackfish & the Porpoise, whose habits are the same, and the Oil as valuable. The first is the Algarine



They go in Shoals & feed  
the same as the Blackfish  
make from 10 Gallons,  
oil, The same quality as the  
As the Bow Fish

who makes from 5 to 15 Gallons of oil. Goes in large shoals like the Porpoise, & the smallest ones are often struck & hauled on board while playing round the ship.





# The Whale Killer



These fish can stay down from one to two hours, without rising to the surface of the Water to Breathe.

The Killer is to be met with in all Parts of the Ocean, But mostly, in the Neighbourhood of the Right Whale, and Humpback Whale Grounds. They are covered with Blubber the same as the Whale, and Breathe the same, having two Nostrils that Run into one at the Outlet like the Black Fish. They are from 10 to 30 feet in Length having Long teeth in Both Jaws, of the very Hardest kind of Ivory, about ~~two~~ inches in Thickness & four in Length, running to a Sharp Point; They are Shaped in the Body like a Whale excepting a Sharp Pointed <sup>on the Back</sup> Fin, from two to five feet in Length & very Hard, What use it is But to I do not know. They make from one to fifteen Barrels of Oil Very Clear, and Good for Lamps. They go in Large Schools, and when hungry, will attack a Whale dozens of them seizing on to his Lips until they have forced his mouth open when others tear out his Thick Tongue; this soon causes the death of the Whale, where they turn on & Eat every thing but the Bones. They have very often taken Whales away from Whalers after they have killed them, Notwithstanding the continual death strokes dealt to numbers of them, by the Whalers same. But I think they must have other means of living: they would soon thin the Whales if they are so numerous, and very few are destroyed by Whalers, being ~~very~~ Fish.



# The Grampus Kind.



This Species of the Whale kind, is to be met with, in all parts of the Ocean from the Equator to the Frozen Regions. They go in Shoals & are very shy, scarcely ever allowing a boat to get near enough to strike them, and they stop under water so long that you can keep no run of them. They have but one Nostril, & live on Squid & various Other kinds of Fish. There are several different kinds of them. The Peaked Nose Grampus, (which is represented above) The Round, or Snub nosed Grampus, The Square Head Grampus, The Smooth Back Grampus, having no fin on the Back, and The Snow White Grampus, who is also without a fin on the Back, & is to be found only in the Neighbourhood of Ice. There is very little difference in the Formation of their Bodies, but the heads of all are different from each other. They have hard Ivory teeth like the Killer, But not so large. The Whale from one to 15 barrels of oil, (The Square Head Grampus being the largest) and it is about the same quality of Black Fish Oil. Some of them exceed 30 feet in length. The Ship I was in Previous to this one I was in, (when I had command of a Boat) struck a very large one, who immediately rose, & in spite of all I could do, took out 240 fathoms of line, and I never saw him afterwards.



# I Resolve To Go A Whaling Voyage

1

On the Eight day of November, in the year of our Lord One thousand eight Hundred and Fifty Six, and the Anniversary of my Thirty-Fourth Birth day; I found myself in the City of New Bedford; still accompanied by my most Bitter Enemy, who I found it impossible to get rid of. For years & years! has he followed me! Go where I will, he is always with me! seemingly fully determined to sacrifice me to his Baneful influence. Let no man say to me, it is easy to put the glass from him; After being addicted to it for years! For Bitter Experience in my case, will give him the Lie; if in no other. No Man knows how I have tried to conquer my craving appetite for Spiritous Liquors; and no Man can know, until he has suffered as I have suffered, through the Effects of it! More than twenty times has it Prostrated me to a level with the Brute creation, and then let me rise again, only to Plunge me still deeper into the depths of degradation! And this last time, I began to tremble for my Life, Both here and hereafter. For this reason, I came to New Bedford; The Things alone, I well knew was all that could keep me from the curse that lies heavily upon me! State Prison, or Man of War, or A Whaler. I chose the latter, and Therefore set out for this Place, in the hopes of obtaining A Voyage. I have twice previous to this, held A Second Officers Berth in this Business, and was not Unknown to either Outfitters, or Owners; Neither could any one say aught against my qualifications as a Whale Fisherman. Both



2. Obtain A Harpooneers Berth.  
this they could say; that whenever my ship  
arrived in Port, I was of no more use as an  
Officer, until after she weighed anchor again  
and then, very frequently; not until she was  
at day or two at sea. Such being the case, I  
found it difficult to get at Berth, there being no  
scarcity of Officers, And it was unreasonable  
to suppose, that they would give it than at  
berth, whom they could not depend upon, on  
account of his Proneness to enebriation, or in  
Plain English A Drunkard! when there was others  
to be had. As A Harpooneer, I had Plenty of  
Officers, with Extra Lay's, And finally, being  
determined to go; I Engaged myself on the seventh  
day of November 1856, to Proceed in the Barque  
of Captain Franklin, of Westport, Massachusetts,  
In search of Sperm Whales, or any Other Kind  
of the Whale Species, in the North and South  
Atlantic Oceans, for A Period of two years or  
thirty months, if the Captain Required it. I  
was to have One fiftieth of the Whole Proceeds  
of the Voyage, as my individual Share. From that  
There would be deducted, my share of the expense  
of loading the Ship and Discharging her on her  
Return home, (about 10 Dollars) Medicine, Cabotage,  
Pilotsage &c, which is trifling. I could draw 100  
Dollars if I wished to, for to fit myself with neces-  
sary clothing, and other things for the Voyage, But  
on this I would have to Pay six Per cent, and  
whatever goods or Money I drew during the  
Voyage, I would have to Pay A Large Per centage on.  
I therefore drew on the owners for thirty  
Dollars; About thirty of which went to the



## Preparing For The Voyage.

3

Proprietors of Rum & Hell's, who put on their most winning smiles, and Salutations, inviting me in to take a glass, and expressing great wonders as to where I had kept myself so long. And I poor Fool! With eyes wide open, well knowing that it was my newly raised funds that drew their attention to me; suffered myself to be led like a Bullock to the slaughter. Thirty Dollars as I said, they cajoled me out of, and would have got the whole, if, the Outfitter would have let me have it in cash, But, according to our agreement I was obliged to take two thirds in Goods. I cared not if I made any money on the Voyage or not; If I can only cure myself of my evil habit, by going this voyage, I shall think myself more than amply repaid for the time spent in accomplishing it. And May God! in his infinite mercy enable me <sup>to</sup> reform! Amen. Now, having firmly resolved to Perform this voyage, if I lived, let what would happen; I bet thought me of keeping a Journal of it, and forthwith before my mind should change, I procured a Book and a good supply of Pens and ink. I then sat down the soberest I had been for a month and wrote a Farewell letter, to My Brother William at New Orleans, the only near Relative I have now living; although our Family was a large one, we are the only two that is now left, and him I have not seen for five years or thereabouts. After Posting my letter I had Resolution enough to keep from liquors until I had got together what things I thought



## 4 The Way They Do It

I would require for the Voyage, as far as sixty Dollars would let me go; and as I knew exactly what I needed, I had a good Chest for which alone, I Paid six Dollars, well filled with good common sea clothes; for which I did not Pay over one Third of what they would have charged a poor green hand, or in other words, I got more than would have fitted four of them, (& better articles too) at a charge of two hundred Dollars. And Now My Dearest Friend, as I have undertaken to write an Account of this Voyage in all Truth and sincerity, for your sole Perusal, Amusement, and Information, I will give you as true an account as I can, of the Manner in which crews are obtained, for the numerous Whalers that are yearly despatched from the different Whaling Ports of the United States; and if nearly 18 Years experience off & on at whaling in all its forms, will give a Person a right to claim some knowledge of how it is carried on, Then, can I claim that Right. In the first place there is a number of Men in New Bedford, who make it their sole Business to Procure hands for the Whaling Ships of this Place, and like a Cattle Drover or Slave Dealer keep a lot on their hands, ready for the inspection of Owners, Agents, or Masters, who may be in want of them. Where do they get them? Why those Dealers in Brand new Sailors have Agencies established in every Seaport town, and Inland Town also that is of any size. Those Agencies again have what they call Runners (or Sharks) stationed at every Railroad Terminus, or Steam



# Runners, And Sharks Game 5

Boat Landing of any note, Ready to Pounce upon every Verdant looking youth, who has left his Mamma's Apron strings in A Pet, had A place up with Dad, or been Liked by some Buxom Country Lass, or left some poor deluded Fair one, to find A Father for her folly; and others they seek out about the Towns, that have either come to gratify themselves with A sight of the Great Place they have heard so much about, or came on Business, and been led astray by the Sharps or Wantons, that are always on the lookout for their Country Cousins. (Hundreds, with whom I have been Shipmates, and otherwise become intimate with, have related their first experience to me; And nineteen out of one Hundred has been led off Whaling by one or the other of the above causes.) But to continue and having spent, or lost their Money, are ashamed to return to their Homes, until they they could once more regain what they had lost. Almost as soon as the Runner puts his eyes upon one of this class, he knows his man; And then by one or two ingenious questions he makes sure of it. he will then, if he perceives his customer to be wary, play his cards with care; Probably, imitate the Country nasal twang, and in all confidence relate his sad fortune, as one of the cases, and as near the case of his eager listener as he can Judge. Confidence begets confidence, and he is soon in Possession of his victim's story. The rhetorical question of Well Stranger what do you think of doing? Now is the Sharks time! Leading the poor gull along, he soon Points him to A flaming hand Bill posted on some wall, and which reads much in this way



## 6 A Whaling Advertisement.

Wanted Immediately, one hundred Landsmen; Young enterprising Americans, under the age of Twenty five, from the Country would be preferred, to Embark in the Whaling Business, in first class ships, fitted up in the most comfortable & Commodious style, and commanded by Experienced Officers. Now is the time for young men who are desirous of visiting foreign places, and seeing the World, besides, having an opportunity to learn the Art of Navigation (which will be taught to all who wish to learn, and the certainty of a handsome remuneration at the expiration of the Voyage. From Seventy five, to one Hundred dollars, will be advanced on the credit of the Voyage, to each man, to procure the necessary articles of clothing &c for the Voyage, on their entering into the engagement. Also Coopers, Carpenters, and Blacksmiths wanted, to whom Extra wages will be given. For further Particulars Enquire of Mr. Sheeshim corner of Shipstern & Starstern street, up Stairs. (Advertisements similar to the above, are to be seen in all or most of the Newspapers, & Playcarded in Bills Posted throughout all the large towns, & Seaports of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Rhode Island, Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania and many other states as well.) Now as soon as the Runner has fired Johnathan's imagination with the sights that are to be seen, and the fortune that is sure to be gained, they start off for the Shipfiring agent's Office, where he soon gives his dear friend the Slip, and is off in search of just such another & so continues.



## Johnathans Debut At Bedford - 7

The Runner has other means, not depending solely on this for a lively hood; Such as showing Passengers to hotels, Strangers to Boarding Houses, Counting other chunts to City Dealers; From all of whom he Receives a certain Percentage as a reward for his valuable services. And if an Opportunity Occurs, he will not neglect to appropriate any careless Change you may have about you; or a Wallet, Watch, Ring, Umbrella, Cane, coat or cloak or any other little article, which he may think needs his watchful care. But to my subject! As soon as the Shipping Agent gets his new recruit to sign a Written Contract, to the Effect, that, he the Signee, will Perform a Voyage, in One of those Beautiful Ships that have been Represented to him; if he is destitute of money, he is sent to a Boarding house, until the Agent obtains from eight to a dozen young recruits, which is seldom more than a day or two. The whole are then sent off by the nearest and cheapest conveyance to Bedford in charge of one of the Runners, where on their arrival, they are divided around to the different receivers of such like battle in the Human form. Now! for each one, the Shipping Agent, Receives the sum of five Dollars, besides having all their expenses for Board, Passage, Carriage hire &c refunded. And I have even known many instances, where the Agents on shipping men, and finding they had a little cash with them, Persuaded them to pay their own expenses, this being so much the more gain to them, as they made their charge, and got paid by the Receivers; And when on some leisure time at Sea our new Sailor comes to look at his Bill, he finds he



## 8 A Picture of Whaleness

has the second time Paid for Passage, Carriage hire &c. But to continue. The new recruit is then sent to a comfortable Boarding House, (God forgive me for styling them such) Let me describe one of them, of which I have had the benefit myself and of which there is no scarcity, This one being a fair sample of the whole. I imagine to yourself a two story wooden Building with an attic or garret, The First Floor being occupied by either a Rum Retailer, or an Outfitter, That can date its foundation being laid some eighty or one Hundred Years back. The upper Story, containing One large Front Room which is used as a sitting Room One Back Room that is Used as both Dining Room & Kitchen. At the head of the stairs you will generally find a small room probably ten Foot square, that is of general use, as Sink, Wash Room for the Boarders, with Piece of Looking glass set to Wall with half a dozen tacks, half of a course comb with a few of its teeth gone in search of the other half; and if by any Freak of Dame Fortune there should happen to be a whole one there it is sure to have a chain attached to it and that secured to the wall with a Staple. One course Towel, that has been dip't in pure water and pronounced clean; is hung on a Nail every Morning and this must last through the twenty four hours for as many Boarders, so that even if there be sore Eyes, Black Eyes, Broken Noses, sore shins, or feet! it is all the same! there it is! use it as you like, and for what you like it is all you will get until Tomorrow. Add



# Boarding Houses

9

to those A small Bedroom overhead of the Hall  
 Passage, and two more curtailed from the Front,  
 or sitting room, which three is generally used  
 by the Family of the Land Lady or Lord, and you  
 have the Second story complete. We will now  
 Proceed to the Attick, or Garret, where we will  
 find five Rooms much in this form. 

1	3
2	5

 In the  
 two largest are four Beds, two Broken  
 chairs and A small table, against the wall exactly  
 opposite the door or entrance, In the three small  
 ones, there is A bed each side of the door, But, as  
 the Eaves of the house comes so low that there is no  
 room for A Table opposite the door, so an old  
 Gin case, or small drygoods Box generally, supplies  
 its Place, and answers for A Lamp stand. And  
 Such Lamps! Oh! Mother of Moses! one morning  
 I mustered the whole of ours into No 1 Room, and  
 arranged them on the Table. They consisted of one  
 Brass candle stick stuffed with Paper to within  
 an inch of the top to keep the candle up, it being  
 minus of A sliding elevator. Two old Cassin  
 tin Lamps that was minus of Tubes, but, which  
 A candle filled up nicely, One Stone Gin Jug  
 half filled with wet sand to keep it upright,  
 and lastly, the Bottom Part of an Old Globe lantern  
 that had strayed from under the Protection of  
 its Better half. The Beds were not so Bad, Being  
 Feather Beds on top of Straw Mattresses, But the  
 Bedding consisted of A couple of Sheets & A cover  
 lid composed of Patches and holes, and it would  
 Require A better Judge than I am, to Point out  
 the Original Material from which they sprang.  
 Legions of Bedbugs, had supplied former occupants



## 10 Refreshing Slumbers

with a plentiful supply of paints, and the upshot of it was, that the Walls were covered with the most beautiful Landscapes, mostly representing Bloody Battle Fields, covered with the mutilated horses and gore of the slain. It was nothing new for some one of us, to dream of being hung or strangled, and only awake from the fright to find our head stuck through a hole in the coverlid, or our legs playing the part of darning needles, in the thatronly act of darning or filling up the holes in our sheets, which at the end of the week, (which they had to remain on the Beds.) was quite an interesting sight to behold, covered with human gore & the hide & Tallow of our Tormentors. There is no room for Trunks, or Luggage, nor does it require any; for if the new Recruit has any the receiver takes good care to keep it at his store; persuading him they will not be safe at the Boarding house. While in reality he is holding them as security that they will not decamp without notice. If they want a shift of clothes, they must shift there & leave the cast offs in place of those they Don. But to return to my Boarding Houses. Most of them have a Bell, or Gong, Conch Shell, or Tin Horn, with which they arouse the Country Gents in the Morning. In our Hotel, we mounted two thirds of an old Ship Bell, which could not but look well, as it was kept bright, and the ringing portion towards the wall. But Alas! for the credit of our House! the absent part happened to be that whereon the ship's name had been cast, leaving but three letters, M A R which were plainly in sight, this



# Our Alarm Bell

11

prompted the curiosity of nearly all who saw it, to follow those letters for the full name, When so the defective part came in full view, exposing the inside of the Bell also which was deficient of a clapper or Tongue. I tried to obtain the History of this relic, But all I could learn was, that a Truant Schoolboy two years previous, had watched his Opportunity, while the others who were repairing an old Ship went to dinner, And seizing the coveted prize marched off with it in Triumph. She had offered it to the old Lady for a Shilling, But, she exhibited to his view, a huge slice of Ginger Bread adding a Mince-pie, which the Juvenile Thief accepting, she became the undisputed Owner of the Precious Relic. Now our Cook, who was a stout hearty Lass from the Emerald Isle. And one that never regulated her movements by the clock; would, as soon as she was ready to set the Table in the morning, fist the Table cloth in one hand, and the Tongs in the other, & with the latter, come down on the Old Bell with a Vengeance, that brought forth the Music, unrivaled by any I have ever even heard, from John Chinaman, in his Native Celestial Empire. From any new comer this Music was kept strictly secret, and our reward was generally, to have the fun of seeing the stranger (if he was anyways green) spring from his Bed, with eyes protruding from their sockets and hair standing on end, grasp their clothes and Rush down stairs imagining the House to be on fire, or some other horrible catastrophe. But only to be met by Bridget with her formidable two pronged dross stick, who with a good natured



## 12 Setting The Table

Smile Exclaims, Shure and What ails the poor  
Crathure! this send him back again to be heartily  
Secured, and Laughter at, Sometimes ending with a fight.  
All hands repairing to the sink, where there is  
but one Basin, One Towel, One Comb, & One Glass,  
I will watch Bridget, while she sets the Table  
and places the Breakfast Thereon. First comes  
a couple of dozen plates, nearly every one of  
which is either of different Size, Color, or Form.  
The same number of knives and forks, which  
vary from one tine and a half, to four. The Knives  
of several different sizes, some of the Handles Black  
Some White, Others Yellow, or Green. Some sporting  
half a Handle, and others had none at all, But, by  
the watchful care of Bridget, was well wound  
round with some narrow strips of cloth, to keep  
them from injuring the young Gentlemen's  
tender Palms. The cups & saucers matched well  
with the Plates; The former varying from a  
Childs Pap cup to a large Soup Bowl, & the one  
half of the saucers, having to be propped up  
with a piece of bread on one side to keep the  
coffee from running out of the gaps at the other.  
Of Spoons there was Iron, Brass, Pewter, & Composition  
consisting of Table, Tea, & desert spoons; Some  
with half a handle, and more with the handles  
broke and lashed together again with twine.  
A cruet stand with two vinegar & one Peppier  
cruet in it, and a small white Mug that had  
strayed from some Bird cage, for a Mustard  
cruet, with a nice little wooden Paddle in it  
to answer as a spoon. Then comes three Platters,  
the Largest one containing two Broiled Hackles



## The Initiating Breakfast 13

which is set in the middle of the Table. The others, containing one each are set at each end. Then two fine large plates of Potatoes, noble looking fellows, that appeared ready to leap from their jackets, & on which Bridget gazed with pride. Above all others give me an Irish Lass for cooking a Potatoe. Two plates of Bakers Bread, and the same of very rancid butter. Add to those the Calk & water which substituted for Milk, The dark Brown Sugar, The Coffee Pot, and a Large Pitcher of Boiling hot water & you have our Table complete. Bridget, then seizing the Tong, gave another good Exhibition of her skill on the Old Bell, when a General Rush is made for the Table. There we find the Landlady stationed on one side of the Table, Pouring equal quantities of Coffee, and hot water into the Cups or Bowls as may be, and declaring that it was strong enough to float an egg. But as none of those Delicacies ever graced her Table, there was no chance to put the Truth of the old Ladys assertion to the test. Mackerel being called for, the Old Lady declared she had left orders for Ten last Night, But, the Plaguey fellow had only brought four, & she had never discovered it, until she went to broil them, when it was too late to get more. Never Mind Boys! cried she you must make out the best you can this Morning, and I will will have such a nice dinner for ye. Thus ended the Breakfast. And Now I will, Just give you a Bill of Fare, for one week, beginning at Monday's Dinner, (for you have Just had Breakfast) which will wind up my description of Boarding Houses.



# 14 Bill Of Fare

Monday. For dinner; A Skin of Beef, which being Boiled with an addition of Rice, Onions, Parsley, and a little pepper & salt, is styled delicious Soup. The Skin being Placed on a Seperate dish, as our allowance of Meat. Some Potatoes & Bread, with a Baked Pudding concocted from all the small scraps of Bread, Buttered or unbuttered, that has been collected for the last week, for a desert. Supper. Bread, Butter, Tea, Therrings, Lettice and a piece of Apple Pye. This was the same throughout the week, with this exception. One day you had, Therrings, Pye, & Lettice; and the next, Cheese Gingerbread, & Raddishes; (& so on.) The Breakfasts was the same excepting every Morning you had a difereent dish of Fish. (as follows) Mackerel, Scup or porgies, Lutlog or Blackfish, Blue Fish, Halibut's Tins, (salted) Fresh Cod Fish, and on the Sabbath Morning, for a Wonder! Beef Steaks. Tuesday. Dinner, Pork & Beans, with Rice pudding. Wednesday. Codfish & Potatoes, with Indian - do. Thursday. Corned Beef & Cabbage, with Flour do, that, if one might Judge from the worms in it, had performed, at least, one Cape Horn Voyage. Friday. Roast Beef, with Apple Dumplings. Saturday. Pork & Beans, with Rice Pudding. Sunday. Boiled Mutton, Clam Chowder, & Fritters. This was our regular bill of Fare from week to week & for this we were to pay, four Dollars per Week. Now! you may ask, if they could not change, if it did not suit them; I must answer; it would be of no use, for they are all pretty much alike. And as for leaving Bedford; that is next to Impossible. For they will never



# Mustering A Crew Up. 15

let them have over twenty five or fifty cents at a time. Once in a while after they have you shipped, they will let you have a Dollar, But, that is of very Rare occurrence. The Boarding House keepers also keep a good lookout for them; for if any of their Boarders give them the slip, They have to lose one half & the Outfitter the Other. still there is some that getting sick of their Bargain, do manage to get away clear. Others who get caught in the Attempt, I have known them to Put in the Town Jail, until a Ship was ready, to sail; when they would be put onboard and forced to Proceed on the Voyage, contrary to all Law or Justice. From the Boarding House to the Outfitters & Visa, Visa, is the general Promenade of the Recruits, until such times as a Ship is procured for them, which, as those longest on hand will be sent off first; Averages from two to three weeks; Excepting they have some small or Puny, sickly, looking ones, who they get rid of as soon as possible; For they can at all times command a Ship, for their strong, and Robust Specimens. I have often wondered that Owners do not Procure their own crews, and I used to think, it was because they had so much other Business to attend to. But, No such thing! it is because they can get them much cheaper from the Outfitters; And I will tell you how. When the Owners first begins to fit a Ship, they look around & find some one whom they think competent to go as Master of her, & the One whom they Procure, generally has some one in view that he would get them to Ship as the Chief or First Mate. The Outfitters then find the



## 16 The Way It Is Done.

Remainder of the crew. They all come forward with their candidates for Office. He who is Fortunate enough to procure one, that will Satisfy the Owners, as a Second Mate; has the Privilege of Putting three Green hands in the Ship, by allowing the Owners to deduct 10 per cent from the Amount to be advanced for their Outfit, and taking an Order Payable at the expiration of six Months with interest Thereon. And whoever fits the Officer, (Second Mate) if he draws advance from the Owners; must allow the Owners to deduct the Ten per cent. For Procuring a Third Mate or a Cooper, they are allowed to put two Green hands in the Ship on the same conditions. For Procuring a Fourth Mate or a Boat Steerer, they are allowed to put in one Green hand on the same terms. Now in a Four Boat ship this will give twelve Green hands. she wants now six more before the Mast, that have been to sea before & which ever Outfitter brings those that are shipped he gets the Privilege of fitting them out. Now that I have got thus far, I will take you to the Outfitters, and we will examine our new Sailors Outfit; and look over his Bill; While he in all the Pride of his newly Stained Jack Tar ship is strutting about town, Rigged up with New Red Shirt, Duck Trowsers, Belt, Sheath, & Knife a Pair of Whalersmens Cuffs, and to crown all, a Glazed Tarfeelin Hat, with at least a fathom & a half of Black ribbon, two inches in width streaming to the wind & whiffling the eyes out of all who Approach him, as well as his own. Ten chances to one but he cuts his hands, trying to get



# A Landsmans Outfit. 17

his new Sheath Knife out of, or into the Sheath, before he has it an hour. The first thing we will examine is his Chest. it is composed of inch Pine Boards, three feet in length and 18 inches in width, & the same in Breadth, with one small till in it, & a common Lock & Key, & the whole, covered with a Coat of Lead Colored Paint. This Bed, consists of four yards of Striped Cotton shirting of the commonest kind, doubled over, sewed up at the sides, and filled with straw. This Pillow half a yard of the same stuff, doubled, sewed, & filled with straw. A Piece of Cotton Batten, six feet by three & covered with sixpenny calico, is his Coverlid. Two of the commonest kind of small Blankets, six feet by four, and this is what they call Bed, & Bedding. A Monkey Jacket made of what the Sailors call Dog's wool & Oakum, six threads to the Armful. Woollen Pants, Shirts, Drawers, & Socks, of the very poorest quality. Cotton Shirts, Blue Cotton Drilling Trousers, & Frocks from the cheapest that can be procured. What they call Whalersmens Pumps, Brogans & Boots all made from the cheapest Article can be procured. Case hardened Jackknives, & Sheath Knives, Horse Combs, coarse & fine, Dried up Tobacco, without either taste or smell, Cheap Razors, Tin Petticoat Lamps, Damaged Thread & Needles, Turpentine & coarse chip Shatts, Scotch Caps, Oil Soap, made from Oil & Potash, Palms, Sawwesters &c, &c, &c. But I will give you a specimen of one of their Bills, with the regular exorbitant charge they make, which will finish the Outfitting of the Recruit. 99 out of 100 of their Bills, are exactly as the following one



18

New Bedford Oct<sup>r</sup> 1856

Mr Jonathan Limple

To Rogue &amp; Swindler Dr

\$ : c

For	Shipping & Passage from New York	9 : 00
"	Coach hire at New York & Bedford	0 : 75
"	Supper on board Steamboat	0 : 50
"	17 Days Board 10. Washing 6 Pieces 50	10 : 50
"	Chest 3. Monkey Jacket 5	8 : 00
"	Bed & Bedding 5. Pillow 50	5 : 50
"	Two thick Wool shirts	4 : 00
"	do - do - do - Pants	6 : 00
"	2 thin Shirts 2.50. 2 Thin Pants 2.50	5 : 00
"	Cash 50. do 25 - do 37 1/2	1 : 12 1/2
"	2 Frocks 2.25 2 pr Drawers 2.50	4 : 75
"	2 pr Whalmen's pumps 2.75, Thick shoes 2.00	4 : 75
"	3 pr Wool socks 1.50. 2 pr Mittens 1.00	2 : 50
"	Razor & Strap 1.00. Box & Brush 29	1 : 29
"	Looking glass 42, Fine & coarse Comb 31	0 : 73
"	3 cakes Shaving soap 18, Bed curtain 42	0 : 60
"	8 lbs Tobacco 2.40, 2 doz Pipes 37 1/2	2 : 77 1/2
"	4 Hanks Thread 50 2 Papers Needles 25	0 : 75
"	Thimble 8 2, Skins Woolen yarn 87 1/2	0 : 95 1/2
"	20 Pounds Oil Soap 1 per lb. & Pail 40	1 : 80
"	Pat, Pan, & Spoon 42, Lamp & Wick 42	0 : 84
"	Belt & Sheath 25, Sheath knife 37 1/2	0 : 62 1/2
"	2 Jackknives 75, Shears 25	1 : 00
"	2 Bars yellow Soap 87 1/2, Scotch Soap 50	1 : 37 1/2
"	Cash 100 do 1.37 1/2 do 25 - do 60	3 : 22 1/2
"	Matches, 50, Oil suit 200, Sawester 50	3 : 00
"	Truckidge 50 Boat hire 75	1 : 25
"	Interest on Outfit & Cash advances 5.00	5 : 00
"	Extra Board 5 00, Passage to Westport 1.50	6 : 50
Received Payment for order on Owners		Total \$94 : 09 c
Rogue & Swindler		



## My Birth Night. Aged 34. 19

Now this outfit Bill, is a True copy, (with the exception of the Names of the Parties concerned) of one of the green hands that, we have for the Bark Doctor Franklin, & I must, to speak the truth, say, that he has got the Best Outfit. I ever saw, for a green hand, at the same cost. And now having gave you a fair insight as to the way in which the Procure & dispose of their crews I will continue with a full account of all particular incidents from this day forward until the close of my Premeditated voyage, if I live to perform it, which God grant I may! After getting every thing I could think of, that I should need, in readiness, I proceeded to a Stationers, & Bought me a Book, for my intended work. As it was then late in the evening and the close of my Birth day, I came to a firm Determination, to have a little bit of fun for the last time, & declaring to the Old Landlady, that, I should sew the last of my Wild Oats to night & commence a new life on the Morrow. I accordingly sallied forth with this fixed intention. It was no hard job to find plenty, who were both ready and willing, to lend me a hand, to get rid of my spare cash. The consequence was, that, we paid a visit to nearly every Grocers in town; and after getting on a full amount of steam we started and took the rounds of all the Private Brothels, (with which New Bedford abounds in) calling for what we wanted; Paying for it in not just as we took the Nation; besides cutting all manners of caps & hats with the Old Bawds. This work soon terminated in a regular knock down & Drag out match; & I morrow escaped, taking up lodgings in the Watch House. And



## 20 Very Busy Indeed

was I got home about Midnight and turned in most gloriously fuddled. Next morning Sunday the ninth I turned out at daylight, and took a look at myself in the glass to see if I were standing on my head or my feet. I had some misgivings, as to who the glass reflected, But, the resemblance was so strong, that I finally concluded, it could be no other than the Dan Whitfield himself. So I immediately set about restoring him to his proper self, and then being determined to taste no spirits this day, I swallowed a couple of Sado Powders, & started on a walk of three Miles into the country and back to Breakfast I was fairly astonished at myself; for I have not taken such a Morning Ramble for years, and as the morning was dry & cool with a hard Frost I had a keen appetite for my Breakfast when I got back. I would not risk temptation, by going out of doors again. So I sat myself down & filed the Pen most diligently the whole day and at first of the night, when taking one glass of hot Punch, I retired to rest and enjoyed one of the sweetest night's rest, I have had for many a long year ashore. You will scarcely wonder at this; when I tell you, that, I have been in the habit, of consuming from three half Pints, to one quart of Spirits daily whenever I was living ashore where I could get it. Monday the tenth I was up at daylight and set my pen in motion again & continued at it with little intermission until near Midnight, when orders came to be in Readiness to start for the ship at three O'clock next morning. So taking my night Cap, and bidding a last Farewell, to all in our house. I retired to Rest.



# Adieu To New Bedford 21

Tuesday November the Tenth 1856. I was out at three O'clock this Morning & as no one was stirring in the House I went to the cupboard & took a slight Lunch, Then calling over Plump little Irish servant girl, to secure the Front door after me, I shook hands with her & then suddenly throwing my Arms about her, gave & received a Parting kiss; and as I stepped out on to the side walk, she uttered a fervent, God Bless & Prosper you Sir! and the thought came into my head, to ask myself if there was another one in all New Bedford, would say the same with as much sincerity? & self, was obliged to say, I think not! It was a cold morning but, clear & Freezing. I bent my way to the Starting Point, which was Mr Brown & Ridings tons Outfit Shop, in North Second street, second door from Union Street. There I found all in a hurry, loading up one Wagon with chests & another with the Bedding. Into this latter, I jumped thinking it would be a good warm Place for the Passage over to Westport a distance of 17 Miles to the Westward of Bedford. Most of the Hands Piled on to this Wagon, and having raised their legs well up, Early as it was; They commenced yelling, & shouting with the full force of their Lungs, and kept it up in spite of the Threats of the Night Watchmen, and the entreaties of the Outfitters & Teamsters; Until long after we had Passed the Suburbs of the City. We had not gone above four miles, when something about the horses gear gave out, and we have to, to repair damages. My feet was half Frozen & I jumped out to warm them with a Run



## 22 Mr Brown The Outfitter.

The Mens Outfitter Mr Brown (who By the Bye was a Church member) was there in a neat and Horse wagon, and in company with him, was a young Man by the Name of Jenney, with whom I had made a voyage some 12 years before. Mr Brown had got out to see what the Matter was with the Baggage wagon, so I stepped up & spoke to Jenney, and was astonished when he told me, he was going out in the same vessel and in the same Capacity as myself. For twelve years previous to this we had sailed together & he was then as now, a Boatsteerer. I had heard of him since that time as an Officer, and as he belonged to New Bedford, I supposed he was by this time Master of some Vessel; But, I soon learned that we had a Mutual Enemy to contend against & if Possible subdue. As we both knew Old Brown the Outfitter, to be a Hypocritical and scoundrel! I proposed, getting into the wagon, putting on steam, and leave him, either to foot it the Rest of the way, or take a Ride with the Greeny's in the Baggage wagon. The Idea seemed to please Jenney, so in I jumped, on went the whip & I just heard a faint Stop! Stop! For God Sake Mr Jenney what are you Doing! by this time we were out of hearing, and in another two minutes, out of sight! when my Old shipmate, Pulling at wine bottle, full of ready mixed Gin Cock Tail, from his coat Pocket, we drank to each others health, after our long separation, drew a breath and took another hearty Pull, to the success of our Present undertaking, & then Plying the whip again, we never drew check, until, we arrived at



## How They Astonished Him. 23

Mr. Trips' Tavern, at the head of Westport. The poor horse was covered with foam, so, we surrendered him to the tender care of the Hostler, and entering the Bar Room, where there was a Rousing old Hickory fire, we called for some Hot Punch & Segars, and enjoyed ourselves amazingly for more than an hour. By this time, the Wagons had Arrived & Mr. Brown was in a great fume about his Horse. Notwithstanding we lavished all manner of Concomiums on his great speed, evenness of Pace, &c. But all we could get out of him was, that it was, too Bad! his Horse was ruined & that we had acted like anything, but Gentle Men, & Christians! while this was going on, the Whole, ~~whole~~ ship's company came in, and took a couple of Rounds of Punch, and a couple of Segars each, and one of them, (the Carpenter) interrupted him with, There Old Boy! here's a chance to show your Christianity! Pay for this Liquor, for we have got no tin, and you know it! This, Mr. Brown refused to do, saying they all knew he was a Member of the Church, & a strict total abstinence Member & he could not countenance any person, who dealt in the soul destroying Poison. The crew however, all took a solemn vow, that, they would not Proceed a single step farther until he Paid for Both Liquor & Segars! As nearly the whole of them, had their outfit from Mr. Brown he finally concluded to sacrifice his vow, to his interest, so paid for the Liquor; While Myself, Lenny, the Landlady & Landlord, nearly split our sides with Laughter, to see his discomfiture. & it so tickled the Landlord, that calling them Back, he gave them a Parting glass & Segars all round, at his own Expence.



## 24 Ship Wreck On Land.

All being satisfactorily arranged, we again started and as Mr Brown took his place, in his wagon, I was obliged to take Passage in the Bed Wagon again, and about 10 A M, we arrived at Westport, about half dead with Hunger & Cold. Mr Tenney had some few Acquaintance here which he went to bid good bye to, & I began to make enquiry's as to where I could get some Breakfast, But, was told there was no place there, on the Point, so I made tracks for A Countryified looking store that I saw, and in which there appeared to be A little of everything. Here I managed to Procure some Crackers & Cheese. But as for beer, Ale, Porter, Cider, or any other kinds of Liquid, excepting water, they appeared to be astonished at my asking for it & plainly told me, there was none kept for sale in Westport. I eat what I wanted of the half Dollar's worth and gave the Rest to the Men who were to be my shipmates in the Old Doctor. She was plain in sight, though about four miles from us, & just outside of the Mouth of the River. As the Wagon containing our chests had not arrived, when I finished my lunch, They feared something had happened to her so sent back to see. They found her about two Miles back, laying on her Beam ends, having carried too much sail, ran over A Bank and scattered the chests (and five or six old shell Backs, that was riding on them) in every direction. Having Procured A Jug of Rum from one of the chests. They sat themselves down in the short dry Grass, & were enjoying themselves prodigiously. Swearing that, the Ship was wrecked on A lee Shore. The Cargo all Landed, and the



## Sad Thoughts.

25

Voyage to an End. And all the Teemster could say, as do, would not induce them to render him any assistance, & in fact he had about as much steam on, as any of them. So he was obliged to wait, until some of his own tribe, came to his assistance. They got all to rights, and arrived at West Port Point about Midday. (I am sorry I cannot describe this place now, as I have had no chance to see it, so must leave it, until I get Back again) As soon as the things had arrived we Packed them all into a small Sloop, & then commenced a shaking of hands, with all who had any friends to shake hands with, while, I stood looking on, & the sad thought crossed my mind, that here I stood all alone, about to commit myself to the Companionship of Perfect Strangers, (with but one exception,) For a Period of not less than thirty Months; with not one friend, to bid me Farewell, or try to cheer me with their well wishes. Laugh as you may! I can tell you, it would be hard to describe the mute anguish that wrings a Sailors Heart! where he steps from the Land as I did then, Probably for the last time, with no one to cheer him on! No Loved Home! Father, Mother, Sister, Brother, or Wife, to Pray for his welfare! sympathize with his misfortunes; or weep for his absence! I was thus lonely, & you may Judge of my feelings, as I gazed on the Group of Smiling, as well as weeping, countenances, that had there assembled on the wharf to see us off. Still I could not help Smiling, to see some of our merry Jack Tars, who had their skins full, shaking hands with every body, though they never saw one of them before, in



## 26 The Departure, Nov<sup>r</sup> 11<sup>th</sup> 1856.

their lives, & we had to fairly force them aboard of the sloop, that was to convey us to the ship. We at last, cast her off, and sailed down the River while those on the Wharf, kept waving hats & Handkerchiefs as far as we could discern them. It was about one o'clock in the Afternoon when we got to the Barge & bundling the things out of the sloop, into the cabin, & Forecastle we hauled the Windlass & hove the anchor up. As soon as it was catbed we set the Topsail. The Owner, who had accompanied us down to the vessel, then went on board of the sloop, as well as the men who had been taking care of the Bark, & shoving her off, they gave us three hearty cheers, which we returned with three Times Three, and then proceeding on all sail away we flew with a stiff North Easter at our heels. The Cook got steam up in the galley. And, all hands were busy securing the Anchors stowing away the cables, and clearing up the decks so as to have everything clear and in readiness for Bad Weather. At five o'clock the welcome news came, to get our Dinner & Supper & whatever the rest might have done, I can assure you, that, your humble servant was no ways backward. After supper we all took our last, lingering look at the fast receding shores of Buzzard Bay; And as each one was busy communing with his own sad thoughts, on leaving his Native Land; scarcely a word was spoken, among us aft; until the Captain gave Orders to close watches. All hands were then mustered & we found our ship's company to consist of the following Individuals.



# Bark Doctor Franklin. 27

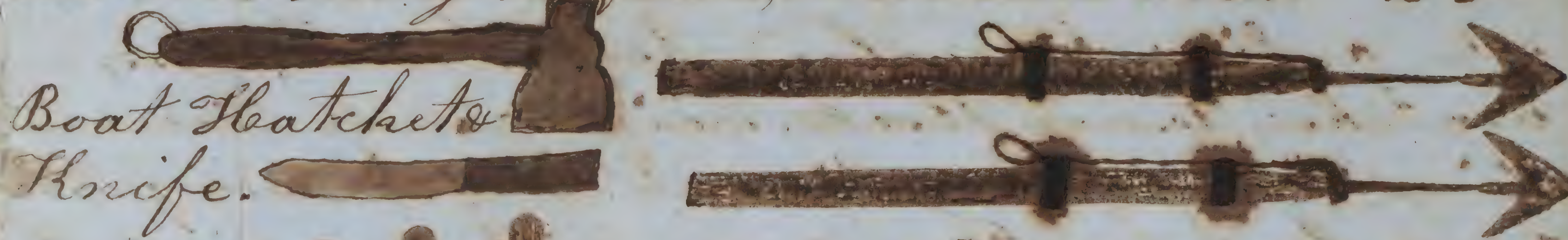
David S Russell, Master. New Bedford, Mass.  
 William M Edgerton, Mate. Edgartown, - do.  
 William S Warner, Second Mate. Salem, - do.  
 Daniel C Whitfield, Boat Steerer. Newark, N.J.  
 William A Tenney, - do - do. Bedford, Mass.  
 James Patterson, - do - do. Canada  
 John Guinan, Cooper. St. Louis,  
 Thervick Rouse, Shipkeeper. Connecticut.  
 William J Talbot, Carpenter. Pictou, <sup>Lower</sup> N.S.  
 John Davis, Steward. Calcutta.  
 David Beacham, Cook. New Bedford, Mass.  
 James Platt, Seaman. Long Island, N.Y.  
 John Platt, - do. do. do. - do. - do.  
 James Sherman, - do. Utica, - N.Y.  
 John A Wing, - do. Westport - Mass.  
 Samuel Mc Kutt, - do. Pictou, <sup>Lower</sup> ~~Upper~~ Canada  
 Samuel Purse, - do. New Bedford, Mass.  
 Henry Cochran, - do. Dominique, West Indies.  
 John Donald, Green Hand. Ireland, G.B.  
 Ephraim Benn, - do - do. Ireland, G.B.  
 James H Coffin, - do - do. Boston, Mass.  
 Charles Jackson, - do - do. New York.  
 And, Old Dog Tiger, half Bull, & half Newfoundland,  
 who belonged to our Captain. Those comprised our  
 whole Ships Company, and as yet nearly all strangers  
 to each other. After choosing Watches, one watch  
 (The Starboard) to which, by good fortune myself  
 and, Bill Tenney belonged; went below until eight  
 o'clock & we spent the time arranging our Beds &  
 Chests, until called to relieve the Starboard watch  
 I was glad we had the eight hours out to night, &  
 h! how glad I felt that I had, one Old Shipmate to  
 help while away the always lonesome hours of it



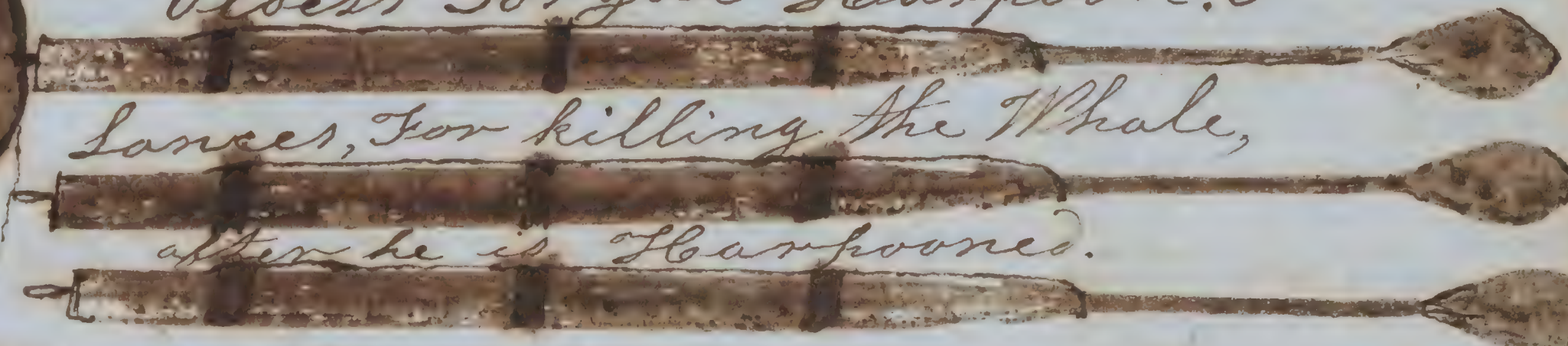
28 First Night At Sea. Nov<sup>r</sup> 1856  
Night watch, the first night at Sea in a strange  
Ship. No one can tell! except those who have experien-  
ced it; The Lonesome, desolate, Forsaken sort of feeling  
that some poor Sailors, suffer from, on leaving  
their native Land, for an uncertain period of time,  
and, more especially, if the ship's company are all  
strangers to him. There in his lone night watch,  
from my Heart I Pity him! and so would anyone  
that could form an idea how he suffers. But,  
the Landsman I know, by bitter experience!  
thinks, that a Sailor has no business with feel-  
ings. As it was, when our watch was out, we  
were bowling along most beautifully, leaving  
Montauk Light on our Starboard quarter, &  
as me & Bill Parted for the watch, a stranger  
would have thought, from our shaking hands,  
that we were about to Part forever in this  
world of sorrow; And when I laid my head on  
my Pillow, I inwardly Thanked God! that he had  
gave me one friend in the ship, & that one; on an  
equal footing with myself, & with whom I  
could associate. Thus, my Friend, ended my first  
day, onboard The Old Doctor Franklin, of Westport.  
Wednesday 12<sup>th</sup> was a Beautiful fine day with  
light easterly winds. As soon as it was daylight  
we washed the decks down, & then commenced to  
muster up Irons, Lances, & all the other gear that  
has to be put in a boat before she is considered  
in proper trim for whaling, & of which I will  
try to give a fair specimen of on Page 29. They are  
as follows. Six Harpoons, 3 Lances, One Spade, One  
hatchet, One Boat knife, 6 Bars, 6 Paddles, Boat Buck  
& Pigger, Line Tub, Boat Peg, Lantern Peg, Drug & Boat Hoe



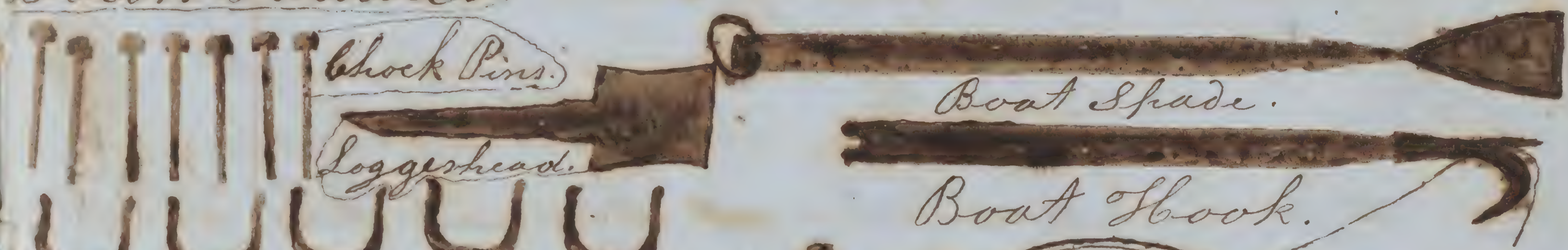
# All The Things Required, In A Whale Boat. 29



- Common Harpoons. 3
- Latest Torgak Harpoon. 4
- One Blue Harpoon. 5
- Oldest Torgak Harpoon. 6



## Boats Paddles.



- 1 Steering Oar.
- 2 Harpooneer Oar.
- 3 Bow Oar.
- 4 Midship Oar.
- 5 Tub Oar.
- 6 After Oar.



### 30 There She Blows.

Chock Pins, Loggerhead, Bollocks, Kipsers, Crochets, Lance Hooks, Waif &c. All those things takes a long time to be got ready, for each boat has the same quantity in her. So at it we went with a good will, until, about 10 AM when we were all startled, by The Repeated cries of, There She Blows! There She Blows! This caused considerable excitement, Luffing the Ship to the wind, running aloft &c. But They were soon made out to be Humph Backs, And we kept away our course Again, E, S, E. Thus we continued until the Afternoon of Thursday when it came on Squally, with Rain, from the Northwest. It kept increasing during the Night, and we kept taking in sail accordingly until 12 O'clock on Friday when we had her under a Close Reefed Main Topsail and Reefed Foresail, Running dead before the Wind with a heavy Sea after us, that kept increasing with the Gale. Half of our Number unfit for Duty with Sea Sickness & the other half scarcely got their Sea Legs on yet. The Officers and Boatswains were obliged to Relieve each other at the Wheel. About 10 PM away went the Foresail from head to foot and after an hours hard Labour we succeeded in saving the Pieces. We then Prepared to take The Main Topsail off of her, when away went the Fore Topsail out of the Gaskets, and was Badly Split before we could save it. By this time it Blew so heavy that we dare not start the Main Topsail. The Ship Straining in every part of her & The decks



# A Very Heavy Gale 31

Completely flooded, we were obliged to keep both pumps in motion all night. At daylight on Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> it looked frightful! A Tremendous heavy sea after us, that we expected to see coming over the Taffrail every moment, (and if it had, there would have been the end of J Franklin Crew Journal and all) The sea was one complete mass of foam lumps of it large as a bucket flying all over the vessel, a thing I had never saw before in all my experience on the sea, & I have weathered some heavy gales I can tell you! Not one inch of blue water could be seen in any direction. We dare not undertake to leave her to, & in fact, our greatest fears was, that she would broach to in spite of us! and if she did, God help us! For well, well, we knew she would have her decks swept of everything if not buried forever beneath the fierce & angry waves. But, everything must have an end! and so with this; For towards evening it began to moderate, and we began to make sail accordingly until by sunrise on Sunday the 16<sup>th</sup> we had all sail on her, steering E, S E, before a heavy swell. P.M. we had light winds, which continued with little to interrupt us, but, an occasional rain squall that would pass by in a few minutes until, Tuesday morning the 18<sup>th</sup> when it began to breeze up again from W, N.W. We took in all the light sails & single reefed the Topsails, before noon. P.M. the Larboard Watch undertook to close reef the Fore Topsail, when one of the others fell off from the yard. In his descent, he struck the Fore yard & from there, struck on the Main



## 32 A Providential Escape.

Stay forward of the Foremast & then rolled over falling on deck. The Mate ran forward expecting to find him a mangled corpse! But, found him sitting on deck & looking aloft. When asked if he was hurt much, he laughingly replied, No! and getting up, was about to go aloft again, But, this, the Mate would not allow him to do, feeling sure that he must be hurt, although he averred he was not. his name was Ephraim Bess. How he escaped unhurt is a Mercy! But I suppose it was the Fore yard, & then the Main Stay, breaking his fall, that preserved him from being killed outright. However; it so frightened the rest that we were obliged to call all hands to shorten sail, and the gale increasing we never stopped until we had her down to a close reefed Main Topsail & F, T, M, Staysail. Away we flew again E, S, E. Ephraim complaining of sore hip & Shoulders

Wednesday 19<sup>th</sup> The Gale continued with more fury accompanied by heavy rain squalls and the vessel leaking badly. Ephraim quite well.

Thursday 20<sup>th</sup> The Gale increased to almost a Hurricane, and all agreed that it blew harder than on the 15<sup>th</sup> of this Month, But, as we are well to the Southward of the Gulf Stream there is not such a heavy sea running and we feel quite safe, with plenty of sea room.

Friday 21<sup>st</sup> The gale broke, and by sundown of Saturday 22<sup>nd</sup> We had all sail on her once more, the decks washed off and every thing in its place. Everybody in good spirits at the prospects of a fine day tomorrow. And John Platt got up his Violin, & gave us some Music to while away an hour or two



## Our First Fine Sabbath Day. 33.

Sunday 23<sup>rd</sup> Was a lovely day. Several of the hands undertook to do some little jobs for themselves to day, But, the Captain stopped them, saying that he would not allow anything to be done on the Sabbath day that was not actually at ease of dire necessity, still we stand regular Mast heads and would lower for Whales if we saw them. We all of us fore and aft, had a good Wash, Shave, & a Shift of clean clothes for the first time since we have been out. We then spent the rest of the day in Reading, Writing, and Conversations, about other Voyages & Things about Home. Monday and Tuesday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine, and light winds. Those two days we employed, Repairing the Foresail & Fore Top Sail, and we had all hands busily driving their Needles. 26<sup>th</sup> & 27<sup>th</sup> We employed, fitting our Cutting Benants & getting them stapt & making other Preparations for whaling, it being a flat calm those two days. Saw some Grampuses & Bonetta. At 10 P.M., we got a light S.W. wind which soon increased to a five knot breeze. Course, S.E. 28<sup>th</sup> We were employed, fitting our Try Gear. (See Page 426) saw a sail in the distance. 29<sup>th</sup> Employed at the same, excepting the Boatstevers who are to work on their Boats & it will take us a long time yet to get all the Craft & gear (in Page 29) ready and in proper order. Saw another sail to day. P.M., the wind began to freshen & we took in the Light sails. At 5 P.M. saw some Whales breaching that we called Sperm Whales; we ran for them & have to until sundown, But, saw no more of them. Night set in with Rain, Thunder, & lightning; and fearing bad weather we began to forebrace for it, by double reefing the Topsails.



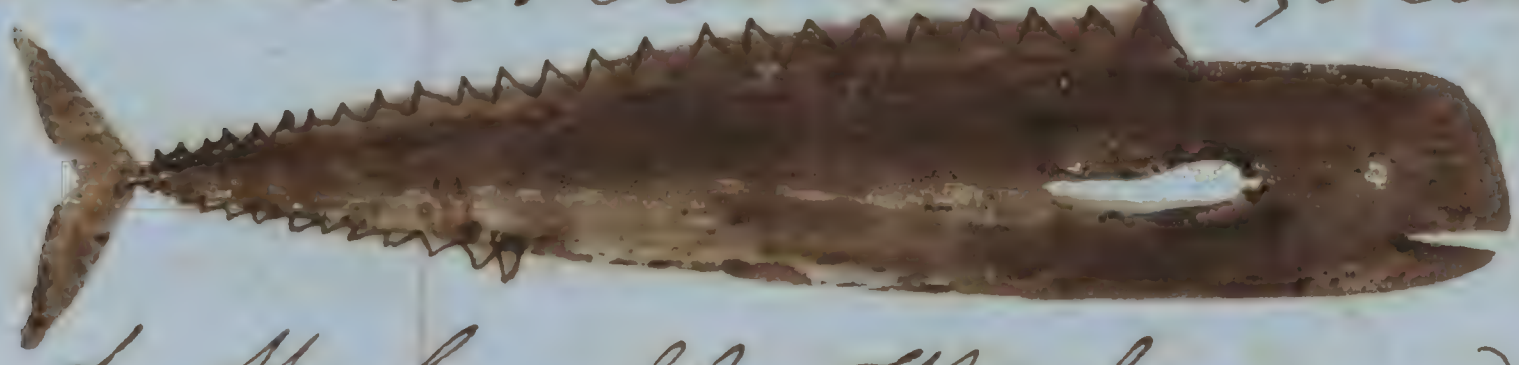
### 34 A School Of Blackfish.

we had some rain in the fore part of the night but before breakfast this Morning (30<sup>th</sup>) we had all sail on her again. As it is a fine day, and no work allowed, we brushed up a bit, and each one passed the day in the most agreeable way he could for his own instruction or Amusement. Saw two sails; Course S, S E.

Monday The First day of December 1856. Fine. Employed setting up Rigging. Painter Starboard Boat inside Saw a Finback. Tuesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. Saw three sails to day. P.M., saw a School of Blackfish, (see Page 35) Lowered two boats after them, But, they were too wide awake for us. Those fish are a Species of the Whale, Their Oil being next in value to Sperm Oil. They yield from fifteen gallons up to Five Barrels of Fish. Their Flesh is the color of Beef and when skinned up fine, with some fat Salt Pork, and other seasoning, is quite a Treat at Sea, and I would not turn my nose up at it onshore. Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & light winds. Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & nearly calm Employed the day Breaking out, in all three Hatchways, to find out exactly where things were stowed, Provisions, Stores &c so as to know just where to look for them when they are wanted. Saw several sails. P.M. it was dead calm & we lowered the Starboard Boat, (to which I belong) to try how she worked with a Rudder that Captain has had made for her & it is a comical looking thing God Throves! for, put it either hard up or hard down & I can defy a crew to get headway on the Boat. After an hours hard labour we came onboard & hoisted her up.



# Breaking The Sabbath Day 35

Friday 5<sup>th</sup> calm, Employed at various little jobs  
saw to Timberback & to sail. Saturday 6<sup>th</sup> calm  
We lowered all three Boats to day, to Practice. We  
took a Piece of board aff, to dart at. We went  
through all the Manuvres of Whaling, Pulling  
Ahead, Sterning all, Sterning two & Pull three,  
Sterning three & Pulling two, standing up and  
darting at the Board, hauling in craft & away  
again. Then trying how we could work the  
Paddles & until we were all pretty well tired  
out when we came onboard, everybody seeming  
to enjoy the Sport we have had. We fitted our  
cutting spades to day. (See Page 422) I Patterson aff  
duty with a very sore hand. Sunday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine  
& calm. At 7 A.M., I caught a fine large Dolphin  
 About 10 A.M., I raised a  
School of Blackfish about  
a Mile off. We lowered away the Starboard Boat  
& got close to them, when they perceived us and  
went down. Next time they came up we got  
near enough so that I darted one Harpoon into  
a good sized one  
got him dead and  
the ship. Then went off again to where  
the other two boats were & I got near enough  
to cut another fellow with the Harpoon, But,  
did not fasten. The other boats did not get any, so  
when the Blackfish made off, we came onboard  
hoisted our fish in, & flayed him, cut some of  
his flesh off for cooking & dumped the Rest Overboard.  
I caught another fine Dolphin this Afternoon.  
John Wing also caught one & the Captain got another  
with the Grainse, Making quite a Fishy day of it.





# 36 Cape De Verd Islands. 1856

Lat<sup>n</sup> To day 24 North Long<sup>y</sup> 28:22 West.

Monday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine. We henced our Blubber to day & christered our New Try works with it. We made us a little over two barrels of oil, to begin the Voyage with. We got the N<sup>e</sup>, trades this evening & kept her South by East.

Tuesday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine with strong N<sup>e</sup>, Trade Winds. Overhauled our cutting Blocks, Put New Lania rods in The Fleek chains, Blubber Hooks, Torgals, &c. (See Page 422) Lat<sup>n</sup> 21:36 N. Long<sup>y</sup> 27:17 West.

Lots of Flying Fish flew onboard during the night

Wednesday 10<sup>th</sup> Had all hands making scrub

Teeth. Thursday 11<sup>th</sup> At 3<sup>h</sup> AM Saw the Island

of St Antonio & At daylight we were abreast

of it, and Bealmed. Saw an English Merchant

Bank, off shore of us. At 10 AM we saw what

we called a School of Sperm Whales five

miles off; so we got the Boats Ready and lowered

away, we pulled to within about a mile of

the Merchantman where we had seen the

whales, & here we found a good Breeze, But, saw

no Whales; After waiting over an hour, we

returned to the Ship, and the Shipkeeper Infor-

med us that the Merchantman had run into

the School & gallied them. And if one half of

the calamities befall Poor John Bull, that

have been called down on him by our Ships

Company, he is sure to never see Old England again.

At 5 PM we had drifted so near to St Antonio,

that we were obliged to lower all our boats &

tow her off until 7 PM when we took a strong

breeze that made us douse Topgallants. Course S by E.

We were on the W, side of St Antonio, & St Vincent was also in sight.



Cape De Verd Islands. 1856. 37

Friday 12<sup>th</sup> At daylight we saw the Island of Fogo, At 10<sup>h</sup> A.M. Saw Brava; After dinner being close to it, we cleared away the Starboard Boat and Made for the Harbour which lies on the Eastern side of the Island. it is a very small harbour, & only shelter from the Trade winds. If it comes on to blow from any other quarter, Vessels laying there, are obliged to be out to Sea for safety. There was a Small Fort on the Left hand entrance, on which the Flag of Portugal waved conspicuously. One Schooner laid to An Anchor & we had to lay close to her until the Doctor came to us, who told us that the Choleera was raging on the Adjacent Islands, & they allowed no one to land until overhauled, & that they had sentries posted all round the Island, to keep any boats from landing. When he found we were direct from America, he told us we might land; So the Captain, myself, & two more landed; while the Second Mate and the other two laid off clear of the Surf with the Boat. There was but very few of what they called, houses, in this Place, Built of wood & Plastered outside, Custom House, Church, Fort & all, Most of the Houses were Room shops, at the doors of which stood a number of Sallow looking objects, that one would have mistook for Ourang Outang's; if they had not kept vociferating with the full strength of their Lungs, as we Passed by, Brandy John! Brandy No want Brandy John, eh? Very Good Brandy John! Very Cheap Brandy John! Come in! Come in John! But, we only Bandied a few Jokes with them as we Passed By, not feeling Brandy inclined whatever.



### 38 A Run Onshore Dec<sup>r</sup> 1856.

I was very much surprised to see the Numbers of Prostituted females there was hovering about us. They were much better looking than the others, though they varied in color from the dark Brunette, to the Ebony Black of Africa. Some of them spoke English so as to be understood very well, & tried by all manner of sweet smiles, and other inducements, to get us to accompany them to their miserable homes. I do not think I saw less than 20 or 25 of those Poor creatures, although there did not appear to be that many Houses in the Place. After remaining onshore a couple of hours, the Captain sent us off again, giving us a couple of Hundred of Oranges to take onboard and sending orders to Mr Edgerton, (Chief Officer) to lay off & on with the Vessel until next Monday when he was to send the Boat in again, with the articles specified in the Note he sent off. I had thought we came onshore for Hogs & Fruit, as the Captain took a Pocket full of Dollars with him; But, this opened my Eyes & I could now understand what the Girls meant onshore, when they wanted to know if the Captain had come to see his Wife, Oh! very Pretty Wife John! Belong Captain nudder time John! Very Pretty Wife. I now learned from one of our Boats crew that he was here along with the Captain, in the Brig Amelia a short time ago, after Hump Back Whales. That the Vessel was anchored about three Months & the Captain spent most of his time with the Whistress anshore, whom he rewarded from time to time, with Portions of the Ships Provisions, and no small Portions either. Leaving his Officers to



# The Captain An Absentee. 39

to whale it if they liked, & keeping his crew on short allowance of Provisions that he might have the more to take onshore. The consequence was, that they set Fire to the Brig once, But, it was discovered and got under without doing any serious damage. The Flower got home after a 10 Months cruise with but 25 barrels of Blumback Oil. We got on board by four in the afternoon, at six, we got Supper & then put her under close reefed Topsails & headed off shore. We saw a Vessel that we called a Whaler laying off & on at Fogs. The Latitude of Brava is  $14^{\circ}59'$  North & Longitude  $24^{\circ}43'$  West.

Saturday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & strong breeze. We laid off & on under easy canvas. Employed the day breaking out For Pork, Molasses, Butter, Tobacco, Soap &c, which is to go onshore on Monday. Night set in Fine, with a Full Moon, & clear overhead, But a Thick haze on the Horizon. Sunday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine. We had to break out Molasses to day, not having finished yesterday. We got through by Breakfast Time, & the rest of the day we had to ourselves with the exception of wearing ship from time to time. Night fine & clear overhead, but a Thick haze on the Horizon, & a very heavy Dew & it has been so every night since we have been here. We stand no Mast heads, for the Mate says he will not lower for Whales if we should see them, That, he will be d—d! if he is going to try for a Voyage if this is the way the Captain is going to throw away his time; And he offered to bet me a New Hat, that the Captain would not bring off 20 Dollars worth when he did come. But, I am not well enough acquainted with the Captain to take him at.



40 Our Captains Triumphant Return,  
Monday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine, We ran in for Eastern  
harbour & after Breakfast went in with the  
Starboard Boat, Taking with us, Two Barrels of  
Pork, three quarters of a Barrel of Malasses, One  
Box of Tobacco, & a Pillow case half full of Tea.  
After getting in we had to wait until about  
11 AM, when we saw the Captain & his Mistress  
coming down the Mountain, escorted by about  
fifty Men, Women, & Children. And you would  
have thought from their loud shouting & the  
Waving of handkerchiefs, that they were no less  
Personages, than, "Donna Maria, and her Royal  
Cousort". At last they arrived at the little Port  
and he entered a House leaving the Abak outside  
and strange to relate! his Lady Love with them.  
She was pointed out to me by more than twenty.  
So I walked up to her & shook hands with her  
to get a good look at her, & instead of finding  
the Beauty that had been extolled to me, I found  
a slender Built light skinned woman who  
stood about five foot two, With sunken cheeks  
& short hair, three of her upper Front Teeth  
were gone. Which, gave a kind of Lisp to her  
Broken English. She was dressed in a Brown  
calico Dress, with a beautiful lace collar round  
her neck, which she told me the Captain had  
she opened the Bosom of her dress & showed me  
the upper part of a lace trimmed chemise, & then  
showed me her Garter Belts, all of which, she said  
Captain Russell brought ashore for her. (None of  
them appeared to me to be quite new & I could not  
help thinking that, her Dear Captain, had made  
free with some of his Wife's Proficiency before leaving.



With This Dear Lady Love. 41

Thorne.) I saw plenty of young Damsels standing by, that to my fancy were fifty times as fascinating; Although to do Justice by her, I must say that I think she was a handsome woman in her youth. she appeared to me by her looks to be about 28 or 30 years of age, & had all the Amorous & Disgusting actions of a confirmed Prostitute; she was in the act of lighting a short Black pipe, about three inches in length, when I left; & if it would have saved my Life! I could not help a good loud Ha Ha! Ha! to see the lovely figure she made while Smoking. But, an end comes to all things! and about 12 o'clock the Captain sent a few Potatoes down to the Boat & a Mate for the chief Mate; with orders to hurry on board & back again. We got on board by one o'clock & after getting some Dinner, started back again, Taking with us another three quarters of a Barrel of Molasses, 18 Pounds of loose Tobacco, a Pail of Butter, Half a Cheese, and a few Sperm Candles. We staid this time until 4 P.M., when the Captain being Ready, we started off taking a few more things, & we got on board by 5 P.M., (he having been absent from the Vessel 77 Hours) we then had to pull on shore again with twelve Pounds of White Bar Soap, to his Beauty of a Mistress! We got back about, 7 P.M., when we hoisted the Boat & left her away South, making all sail on her. We brought off, in all, to day. 600 Oranges, 6 Pumpkins, Three Barrels of Potatoes, Six dozen of Eggs all dressed with Flowers, about a Peck of Grapes, One Old Ram, The Patriarch of the Island, and One Dunghill Cock. This is all we have received for Two Barrels of Pork, a Barrel & a half of



## 42 The Ship Saratoga.

Malasses, Forty odd Pounds of Tobacco, about 10 lbs of Butter, Half of a Cheese, Half of a Pillow case full of Tea, 12 Pounds of Soap & some Sperm Candles. How much Money, I do not know, But as I could not hear any Jingle in his Pocket as we were coming down to the Boat, I concluded that he had made Dollars Fly! Anyhow This Much I do know, that, Recruits Must be Remarkably high here, or The Old Man is coming down on The Owners to a Pretty smart tune! I found that you could realize fifty Per cent on any thing you had to dispose of, so the second time I went onshore to day, I sold 20 lbs of Tobacco, a Pair of Shoes & a Jackknife of my own. They Told us that the Whale Ship Saratoga had been here yesterday & After Loading two Boats with Potatoes, Oranges, Fowl, Sheep, Pumpkins &c to take to the ship, & bring back the specified articles of trade in exchange; The Captain was taken suddenly ill, before the second boat left, and he declared he must go immediately on board. The Ship however, left the Boat Haif (or Flag) with them with directions, when they see the Boat coming to stick it up on the Beach at the Best Place for Landing. She then went on board, and what was surprising to them, was to see the Ship Square away & Make all sail. The Haif had been sticking up & fluttering on the Beach over 24 hours, But, The Boat had not come yet. Although it was a piece of Mean Rascality of her Captain. I could not help laughing heartily at the doleful Faces they wore while telling me the Tale of Their bitter Loss; For he had Robbed nearly every Poor Family in the Place of a little, But that little



Division of The Spoils, Decr 1846. 43  
would be sorely missed by them. Suck then are  
a disgrace to the country that gave them Birth!  
Tuesday 16<sup>th</sup> Was fine with a strong breeze,  
and we bowling away under all sail to the south  
ward. We stowed away our Pumpkins Potatoes  
& Shelled a Bushel of Green Beans, which I forgot  
to mention was amongst the Lot yesterday, and  
they made one Chefs Fore & Aft. The Old Man,  
Then gave everybody 25 Oranges each, and kept  
the Balance of the eight hundred, for himself  
& the two Mates. Nothing more, worthy of Note  
took Place, up to the 24<sup>th</sup> of December, with  
the exception of seeing a Sail occasionally, or  
a Finback once in a while, & also several schools  
of Blackfish, but, going so quick that we never  
lowered for them. We were employed in the usual  
routine of Ship work onboard of outward Bound  
whalers, such as setting up Rigging, Fitting up  
all kinds of Whaling Gear, Painting the Boats,  
inside & out, Making Scrub teeth for the Broom  
we scrub Decks with, &c, &c &c. On Wednesday  
the 24<sup>th</sup> of December, Being in the latitude of one  
degree North, we fell in with Light South East  
Trades & it was a lovely day & the Larboard Watch  
Rattled down one side of The Fore Rigging, while  
the Starboard watch was busy setting up the Main  
Rigging and getting it ready to Rattle down. A  
large school of Blackfish Passed us, going to  
the South East. But, they are not valuable enough,  
for our Captain to lower for them! He is going  
to fill her up with Sperm Oil; At least, so he  
says himself. I hope to God he Will! That's all! At  
4 P.M., we cleared up decks & washed off, which



## 44 Christmas Doings 1856.

we do every day Sundays excepted. The Captain then set about finding a Butcher to kill the Old Ram, Three or four volunteered, and seized upon his Ramship who struggled violently, and bleated most piteously, and once or twice freed himself from his captors & Facing about, caused them to flee in their turn. At last they knocked the poor fellow down with a handspike, and two or three of them leaping upon him, first deprived him of his Ramhood & then sawed away with a dull knife until they got his head severed from his body & it was what I should call a miserably performed Murder. Not one of the would be Butchers knew how to dress him, so the Captain rolled up his sleeves & went at it himself. We then got supper, and spent our Christmas Eve in the same manner as we have spent all our lives. Thursday 25<sup>th</sup> Christmas Day. Fine & good breeze, Busy Rattling down Rigging, & various other little Jobs about the Rigging. We had a tolerable Fair dinner, consisting of Roast & Boiled Mutton and Mutton Soup. Cabbage Chauder, Masked Turnips, Pumpkin, & Potatoes. Bread, Butter & Cheese, with Oranges for Desert. The only thing that I saw out of the way, & which astonished me! was, our Pretended religious Captain, keeping us to work all day the same as any other day. The Night was fine & We crossed the line to Night in Longitude 26:06<sup>m</sup> West. But, so quiet were we about it, that I don't believe, there was half a dozen in the Ship that knew of it, until this Morning, Friday 26<sup>th</sup>. Fine with Steady Southeast Trades. This is a Regular Busy day, Painting one thing



# Our Flash Cabin.

45

and another, Amongst the rest, they made a Pair of Banisters out of Lance Poles, for the cabin gang way, & Painted them; Not one of us aft have escaped having a growl with the Old Man, for rubbing against them, Bad Luck to them! it will take a Round of soap, to wash out what I have got on my clothes from them. We Painted Yoke Ropes, Main Ropes, Captains & Mates chests, to match the Cabin Paint. The Second Mate had to Empty his chest putting his clothes in his berth, & stowing his chest on top of the Stowage on deck, as there is not Room for more than two chests in the Cabin. We have No State rooms, Only Two berths on each side with curtains before them. Then a Side Locker runs round on each side, which answers for Seats, & is filled with all sorts of whaling utensils cooking utensils &c, &c. For those Lockers, we made cushions to day, and stuffed them with Carpenter's shavings. Then there is a Large table in the center, which takes up all the rest of the Cabin. Saw a School of Blackfish to day, But did not lower. In this manner we pass away the Time, at numberless little jobs that is useless to mention over & over again, such as Rigging work, Tarring down, Making Suet, Scrub teeth, washing decks, Paint work &c and keeping the Fore & Main Top Gallant Mastheads manned with Men on the Lookout for any thing that may be stirring on the Ocean from Sunrise to Sunset when the weather will Permit it. & if we have no Rain, The Mast heads are never left until a Close Reef is Put in the Top sails, & not away Then. At Length New years day came round



46 Happy New Year. Boats Crew Watches.  
Thursday The First Day of January 1857. Nothing  
remarkable this day, excepting that we were as  
Busy at work as any other day, & occasionally you  
would hear some one shout out, Happy New Year.  
We had, a Ham & some Pumpkin Pies for dinner  
Aft, But, the same old Feed as usual Forward.  
We are making the best of our way for the  
Abrolhos Islands Cruising Ground. Those Islands  
lay in Lat<sup>e</sup> 17:5<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 38 42 West.  
Our Lat<sup>e</sup> to day was 14:0<sup>m</sup> 2 South. Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> Passed.  
Saturday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. At Noon we  
were in Lat<sup>e</sup> 16 41<sup>m</sup> South. At Sundown we took  
in the Light sails & double Reefed the Topsails as  
we are now on Cruising Ground. We then set  
Boats crew Watches, which is as follows; Each  
Boats crew stands by itself after having divided  
the Shipkeepers amongst them. They are headed  
by their Respective Bospooneers, (The Officers  
sleeping in all Night.) The Night is then divi-  
ded into three Watches from Sundown until  
Sunrise the Following Morning, when all hands  
is called, sail made, & the Business of the day  
goes on as usual. The Boats crew who had the  
Morning watch, takes the Mast heads until  
Breakfast time & then has the Forenoon for it  
watch below. The One who had the Middle  
watch, takes the Afternoon below, And the One  
who had the First watch, stays all day on deck,  
But, it will be his Morning watch next Night  
and Middle watch next. And so it shifts around  
giving them a Watch Below two days & the Third  
one all day on deck. Those watches are only stood  
when the Ship is under short sail, of Nights on



Our First Gam. Ship Addison. 1857. 17  
what are called the Cruising Grounds. Then the  
Officers sleep all night & take all day on deck  
stand regular Lookouts at the Mast head & relieving  
each other every two hours. But, at other times  
they come down & all eat together, one Harpooner  
taking his meal with them so as to relieve the other  
Harpooner at the Masthead. The Harpooners,  
Cooper, Head Shipkeeper & Steeward then take  
their meals at the Second Table, which is set  
with precisely the same viands as the First Table.  
Sunday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine. Hoise all Sail & then, the  
whole Boat's crew who had the Morning watch  
went to the Mast heads, with the exception of one  
to the wheel. I watched it all day, and oiled  
my Oil Suit at Old Melcoy's expense. Saw two  
sails in the Forenoon. At 5 P.M., we saw another  
on the Starboard Beam standing for us, so we  
luffed to the wind & hauled aback the M, Topsail  
At 6 P.M., she spoke us, & proved to be the Ship  
Addison of New Bedford 40 days from Home  
commanded by Capt<sup>n</sup> Lawrence, who had his  
Wife & one young Daughter with him. We went  
onboard of her, & their Mate with 4 Boats crew  
paid the Old Doctor a Visit. I saw a couple of  
Men I was acquainted with in N.B., & we spent  
the evening in pleasant Chit Chat. We heard  
that Buchanan was returned for the Presidency.  
The Addison was Bound round Cape Horn &  
then for the Ochotz Sea. She had seen no Whales  
since leaving N.B. We gammed until 11 o'clock at  
Night, when we bade them Adieu & wished them  
a successful voyage. We returned onboard, sent the  
Ladies some Oranges, & then shortened Sail & set the Watches.



48 The Isabeleta Hines  
Monday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine, sent down the Main Topsail  
to Middle stitch it & other wise repair it, and  
from this day until the Ninth of the Month, it  
continued Fine, and we sent down, and overhauled,  
nearly every sail in the ship. Running before  
the wind to the S W, daytimes, & heaving to at Nights.  
Friday 9<sup>th</sup> commenced with a Gale of Wind, and  
Rain from N E, and we running before it under  
double Reefed Topsails; P M it cleared off, But, the  
wind did not abate any of its violence. This is  
Anniversary of My Providential Escape from  
The Wreck of the Isabeleta Hines of Bedford.  
And will be kept vividly in my Memory. The  
Longest day I live. The circumstance I will relate  
which is as follows. In the latter Part of  
October 1855, I shipped in the Barque Isabeleta  
Hines of New Bedford, But, at that time, a  
Regular Trader between Canton, & San Francisco.  
I believe, (But, am not certain to within a day  
or two) it was on the 26<sup>th</sup> of October that I joined  
the Vessel, then lying at Wamsawa Reach, with  
a cargo of Sugar, Rice, and various qualitys of  
Teas; Consigned to Mr. The Condray & Co, at San  
Francisco, California. On the following day  
we weighed anchor, and by eight o'clock that  
Night, we came to an anchor in Hong Kong.  
Next Morning we got under weigh again, and  
put to sea, with fine weather & strong N E,  
Monsoons; We had scarce got clear of the China  
Seas, before we began to experience heavy  
Gales of Wind from almost every Point of the  
Compass, accompanied when from the Southward  
by heavy Rain & when Northerly, by Thick Hail



# Her Officers

49

And What was worse than either, we found that both our Captain, (whose name was Calhoun,) & our Mate, (whose name was Beatty,) were in the habit of getting Beastly Intoxicated. & in fact the Captain was almost continually so. Although the Steward informed me, that the first Part of the Voyage, and even while in China, the Captain scarcely tasted Liquor. But, said he, he got some news from San Francisco, which made him take to drink, and as far as I can learn, there is a woman at the Bottom of it. We kept working to the Northward whenever we could, in expectation of Westerly Winds, and god knows we had plenty of Wind let it come from what Point of the Compass it would. By the First day of December, we had Reached the Latitude of 41 degrees North. And Longitude of 177 degrees West. This was the Last day that I ever saw an observation taken on board of her, with the exception of a Meridian Altitude occasionally to find our Latitude. For the Second Mate whose Name I forget, was Taken down with the Fever & Ague Four days out, & was down the whole Passage. The Mate, was also confined to his Cabin with Fever & Ague as he said, But we could all see that it was nothing But a Continual Drunken Fit. The Captain he would sometimes come on deck in his Bare Feet, holding his Pants up with one hand & with the other, trying to steady himself, while his hands, Feet, Shirt, & Pants, were all besmeared by his evacuations, & the Steward said, that his Bedding was the same, and that he would



## 50 Badly Situated.

not allow him to go near his State Room to clean it. When The Captain did come on deck we always had to keep one Man close to him to keep him from going overboard, which he would have done several times but, for this Precaution, for he was always intoxicated & did not seem to care whether he did or not. And when we would arrest his falls, merely look up in our Faces without speaking a word. And even when he would fall on deck, which was a very frequent Occurrence, he would not speak a word, But, look so pitiful & imploring towards us, unable to get up until some one of us helped him. When he did speak, he appeared to be quite sensible of what he was saying asking us how we had been steering since we saw him last, and telling us how to steer until he saw us again. And not to take a stitch of sail in without letting him know of it. For he had appointed me to take the Mate's Watch, and another Man named Anderson (a Purser's Name) (Who had Ran away from the English Frigate Chankin at Hong Kong, Previous to Shipping with us) to take the Second Mate's Watch. It was about this time that I began to be fearful of some accident, I knew the Chronometer had run down more than once, There was no chance to regulate it by a Lunar Observation, and no one fit to do it, even if there was a chance. Add to this a continual series of heavy gales Rain & Hail, & the Ship Leaking Bad from her continual straining & not knowing anywhere



# Doctor Franklin Again. 51

near where <sup>we</sup> were for it certainly; (For all The Navigating I could do, was to get the Latitude at 12 o'clock) With no one even to advise with us and you can Judge what good Reasons we had to be fearful of some impending evil, and the sequel will show that our Presentiments were not without Foundation. (Continued on Page 383)

Saturday January 10<sup>th</sup> 1857. Strong Northerly winds, saw a number of Merchant Vessels to day which we do nearly every day being Right in the track of Vessels, both outward & homeward Bound, Round Cape Horn. We are edging along slowly, to the Southward and Westward, every day. being to day, in Lat<sup>e</sup> 24:40 South, Long<sup>e</sup> 41:04 West. We commenced on a Cask of Spruce Beer to day that the Old Man has been trying his hand at Manufacturing, and it is quite Palatable. The Night set in rather Squally accompanied by Rain. Sunday 11<sup>th</sup> Rainy. 12<sup>th</sup>, 13<sup>th</sup>, 14<sup>th</sup>, and 15<sup>th</sup>, Rain, Rain, Rain! with but little intermission & but little wind excepting in the Squalls. Friday 16<sup>th</sup> Beautiful Weather & light winds employed at various Jobs. Saturday 17<sup>th</sup> & Sunday 18<sup>th</sup> Weather the same. Saw any quantity of Grampius Breaching. & they Fool us nearly every day, Making us run for them in hopes that they are Whales. Lat<sup>e</sup> 27:36 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 43:29 West. Monday 19<sup>th</sup> A Northerly gale & ~~hazy~~ Weather. Tuesday 20<sup>th</sup> A Flat Calm. Opened a Cask of Cheese & gave them one Forward. Wednesday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & Strong breeze Thursday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Strong Northerly winds. Saw three Sails, and the Ocean appears to be alive with Grampuses both day & nights this long time.



52 Bound To The Eastward, Jan<sup>y</sup> 1857.  
Saw a Topmast Studding sail Boom, with the  
Tack block on it yet, so we lowered & Picked it  
up. There is scarce a day Passes but what we  
see some kind of Fish. Either Dolphin, Skip  
Jacks, Albacor, Porpoises, or Turtle. And Grampuses  
every day. Friday 23<sup>rd</sup> Strong Northerly winds.  
Saturday 24<sup>th</sup> Flat Calm. Saw a number of  
Reefers. P.M. we employed all hands scrubbing the  
Paint work fore & aft. Sunday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine, P.M.  
Strong Breeze, double reefed the Topsails. Wind  
to the Southward for the first time in a long while.  
Monday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind Easterly. Made sail and  
kept her S. S. W. Lat<sup>e</sup> 31° 30' South. Long<sup>e</sup> 45° 11' West.  
Tuesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine, steering Southwest saw  
Plenty of Squid, (Sperm Whale Feed) Grampuses, and  
Albatross. Wednesday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & light Southerly  
Winds. kept her East by North. Broke out for  
Sails, but, could not find them. Opened a barrel  
of Blue Fish, the only one in the Ship. They are  
very salty, and dryish, & I do not like them.  
Lat<sup>e</sup> 34° 58' South, and Long<sup>e</sup> 47° 29' West. At  
sundown, we set Whole Watches again, Made  
all sail & as the Wind had increased, we got Preve-  
nter Braces on the lower & Topsail yards, and  
away we went Tying. Course East, and I  
understand that we are Bound For the Coast  
of Africa. Thursday 29<sup>th</sup> Strong S. W. Winds, and  
Squally. Steering East. Long<sup>e</sup> at 2 P.M. 43° 43' W.  
Struck a Porpoise But did not save him.  
Friday 30<sup>th</sup> Weather the same & Course the same.  
Saturday 31<sup>st</sup> Strong S. W. winds & Squally. Had  
all hands to day, Breaking out the whole ship  
Looking for a New Main Topsail & at last we



# Gave Her The Studdingails. 53

Found it, in the very Place where it ought to be. So we stowed her off again. At 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., we bent a New Main Topsail & Took the Old one for a Fore Topsail Stowing the old Foretop sail away for, Fine weather Plenty of Grampuses & Merchantmen in sight every day. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., I was taken with a violent head ache & had to go below & remain there all Night, The first Sickness I have had the Voyage.

Sunday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of February, Fine with Light Easterly winds. I am all right again to day.

Monday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine, with a Good breeze from the Northward. Course East. Saw a Large Merchantman

Tuesday 3<sup>rd</sup> The same; Broke out for Studding Sails.

Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> The same; At 10 A.M., we set the Fore Topmast, & Main Topgallant Studding Sails. The Old Man & Mate are at Loggerheads with each other, and the only Reason I can assign for it, is, that the Mate Objected to our going Round Cape Horn, into the Pacific Ocean, which the Captain proposed to do, a few days ago, before we started to the Eastward.

Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind hauled S West, Course East

Friday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind South. P.M., the wind hauled S E, Took in the Studdingails, Night calm.

Saturday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm. At 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., we got a breeze from the Westward and out Studdingails again. Saw some Grampuses, Porpoises, & a Baracuta. Saw numbers of Birds, such as Albatross, Blue Jays & Mother Carey's Chickens. (Stormy Petrel) Full Moon to night.

Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> Squally, Wind West, Shifted Studdingails two or three times to day. Latitude by observation, 33:06<sup>m</sup> South. Longitude by observation 20:26<sup>h</sup> West.

Monday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze, by 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., it blew a Gale of Wind, Studdingails Sails in & topsails double



54 Two bases of Assault and Battery.  
reefed, Heavy Rain squalls, & Boatsteerers Steering the Ship.  
Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> At daylight took in Foresail, & close  
Reefed the Topsails; Heavy Rain, & wind due West. At  
10 A M, it cleared off & began to moderate. By sundown  
we had all sail on her again & the wind from South.  
Wednesday 11<sup>th</sup> Wind hauled to the Southward, and  
blew strong, accompanied by Rain. By 5 A M, we  
had all the light sails in & double reefed the Topsails.  
At noon it hauled East & we took in the Mainsail.  
Saw two schools of what we called Killers to day.  
Thursday 12<sup>th</sup> Wind dead ahead & blowing a gale.  
Friday 13<sup>th</sup> Still blowing heavy; P M, took in the  
Jib & spanker. A Merchant Bark close to us. Towards  
Night it moderated, & the Wind hauled to the Northward  
so we set the Mainsail, Jib & Spanker. Night set  
in fine, clear, & a strong Breeze. Saturday 14<sup>th</sup>  
At daylight Made all sail. Course East by South.  
Lat<sup>e</sup> 30:32 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 8:37 West. The captain  
Ropes ended Poor Ephraim Benn this morning.  
for no cause whatever. The others were all busy  
picking bakins, when we had occasion to  
give a pull at the Braces. When we had finished  
they all sat down to their work again, Poor  
Benn, being the last to sit down when the  
captain perceiving one rope that was not  
coiled up, Grasped up a rope & Beat Poor Benn  
in a most shameful, and Brutal manner  
over his Head, Face, and Shoulders, while the  
Poor fellow roared with pain. At half past four  
P M, we set F, T, Studding sail. Night fine & c.  
Sunday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. At 5 A M, the  
captain Pitched into Samuel Curse & Beat him  
inhumanly & for what cause I don't know, nor



A Little Of All Sorts, Feb<sup>r</sup> 1857. 55  
 do I believe the Captain knows himself, But for the  
 last two or three days, he has had a fit of bad humour  
 and spits his spite out on some of the Poor Boys.  
 Lat<sup>e</sup> 30:20<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 5:25<sup>m</sup> West. At 4:30<sup>h m</sup> P.M., we sent  
 down the Studding Sails, and Studding Sail Booms; At  
 sundown we took in all the Light Sails, and set Boats  
 Boats crew Watches again, Steering East by South.  
 Monday 16<sup>th</sup> Dead Calm. Employed Repairing the  
 Old Fore Topsail, & I made a Lib for My Boat. We  
 put the Boats on the lower Cranes to day, for the  
 first time in a Long While. Tuesday 17<sup>th</sup> Calm.  
 Employed sail Making. Night Squally, wind Easterly.  
 Wednesday 18<sup>th</sup> Rainy & Squally. Struck a Porpoise  
 and lost him again. At Sundown hove her to  
 Thursday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, wind Easterly. Employed Fitting  
 Bollocks to S & W Boats. Run the Lines & dried them,  
 also dried the Old Fore Topsail & stowed it away. Saw  
 some Grampuses, At Sundown hove to again,  
 which we do every night when standing Boats crew.  
 Friday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine, Painted S & L Boats inside. Saw  
 Grampuses, Porpoises & Squid. By 10<sup>h</sup> P.M., dead Calm.  
 Saturday 21<sup>st</sup> Dead Calm. Saw G. S & P., a Devil  
 Fish & a Sword Fish for which we lowered a  
 Boat, But did not get him. Lat<sup>e</sup> 29:35<sup>m</sup> South.  
 Long<sup>e</sup> 2:56<sup>m</sup> West. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., got a Breeze & kept her  
 E.S.E. At 5 P.M., I caught two fine Albacor, the  
 first that  
 have been  
 caught this Voyage. (See description Page, 128.) Painted  
 S & L Boats with a second coat inside. Sunday 22<sup>nd</sup>  
 Washingtons Birth Day, Calm. The Captain, and  
 the Mate had a Flare up to day. It appears that  
 the Captain overheard the Mate Making some Rema-  
 rks.





## 56 Cruelty To Dumb Animals.

to the second Mate, in which he accused the Captain of mismanagement of the Voyage by keeping the Vessel on a continual Run from one Place to Another. The Captain made use of some very harsh & Provoking Language; to which the Mate scarcely made an answer, But quietly walked the quarter deck with a sarcastic smile plainly denoting the respect he held for the Captain. A Fine Beginning for our thirty Months Voyage! Making & Taking in sail the whole day, and it a dead calm. In fact for the last Month the Captain has managed to always find plenty of work on the Sabbath to keep us constantly in motion, & to day, he openly wished before all hands that Sunday would only come once a Month. There is continual snapping & snarling Fore & aft, and everybody appears to be discontented & I have heard a number declare their Intention of leaving the Vessel in the first Port if it is a possible thing. He wound up the day by Beating his Dog with a Pole about 4 feet long and as thick as my wrist & for nothing that I could see, only that he has been in the Stuffs all day with the Officers. The Poor Dog cannot walk, But lays moaning under the Bowsprit & trembling like a Leaf. You will scarcely believe me; but, it is a fact! that I saw some of our men shed tears while looking at the Poor suffering dumb Brute & I was not far from it myself; I think it will kill the Dog. There! Exclaimed the Mate to me. He has pounded the Life out of ~~the~~, over the Dog's shoulders! and he would do the same to ~~the~~, if <sup>he</sup> dared to do it! and I could not help thinking, it was as the Mate said.



# Our Captain's Fancy Gig.

57

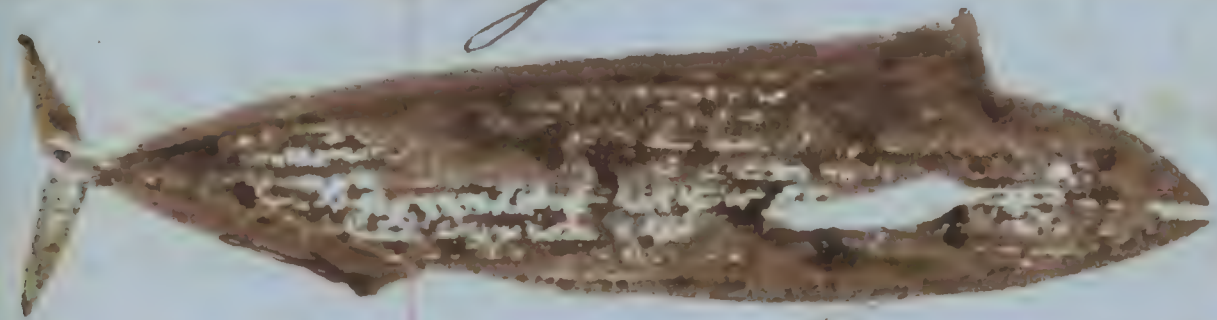
Monday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & Light Easterly winds. Painting the Kessel's name on the Buckets. We also Painted our Boats Rudder & Seat. we also fitted a Piece to the Loggerhead hole so as to hide it. She looks now, like anything else but a Boat for catching whales & I think we will soon be going to St Helena to show her off.

Tuesday 24<sup>th</sup> Strong Easterly winds. Saw Terns. I caught a Fine Bonetta



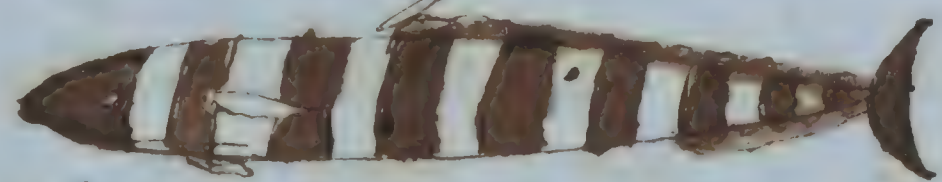
the first that has been caught the Voyage. (See Page 129) Wednesday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine. I had orders to day, to Burnish all my Craft, Scrape & Oil the Poles, and Scrape and oil the Oars, Paddles, Drog, &c, as we expect to fall in with Whalers before long.

Thursday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine. I caught three fine Albacore



& the Captain caught a Yellow tail (See

Page 130) he also caught the Largest Pilot Fish that I ever saw



(he was 16 inches in length and 10 1/2 inches in circumference. P.M. Calm. The second Matti caught two more Yellow Tails. Ephraim Penn was taken suddenly ill this evening, but by midnight was recovering fast. Friday 27<sup>th</sup> Strong South Winds, Course E by South. The Captain cut up

two sheets of New Copper to day to make a couple of Circles for the Ladies, with Lady Riders; to act as Dog Kanes on the After Davids, and any one But himself can plainly see that they will never answer for it. I wish he appeared as eager to Put Oil in the Kessel, as he is to Fancyify her for Show.

Saturday 28<sup>th</sup> The same. Made out to get my craft into the Boat to day, But, only two Sances Burnishd as yet. Lat<sup>o</sup> 27.58 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 4.03 East. Night was fine and we shortened sail as usual.



58 The Gig In complete Gaming Order.  
Sunday March 1<sup>st</sup> 1857. Rather squally; yet  
notwithstanding he had all sail made, and we had  
to take it in, and make it again two or three times.  
once it died away calm & we clewed up all the  
light sails & clewed down topsails & hauled the  
courses up, and ten minutes afterwards set them  
all again. The Captain was in his glory, and his  
eyes fairly sparkled with delight, to find he could  
keep us busy all this blessed Sabbath. Neither the  
Mate or second Mate holds any conversation with  
him & the only one he has to talk to now, is Jerry.  
Monday 2<sup>nd</sup> Rain squalls & calms. Saw a Turtle,  
lots of Kelp, & drift wood. Longitude 2:30<sup>m</sup> East. At Sun  
down, got a breeze from S.E., & kept her N.E. all night.  
Tuesday 3<sup>rd</sup> good stiff Breeze. Steering N.N.E.  
saw two sails, the first we have seen since the  
12<sup>th</sup> of Feb<sup>r</sup>. At sundown shortened sail, & let her run.  
Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> A Fine day for Mr Buchanan to take  
Frank Pierce's Place in the White House. Made  
all sail course the same. Water a Greenish Cast.  
Latitude 21:05 South. Longitude about 5 East. At sundown  
shortened sail & altered the course to N.N.W. letting  
her run all night. And I hope we will fall in  
with a whaler before long or he will run the Bottom  
off of her looking for one. Finished Painting our  
Fancy buckets to day after being twelve days at  
them. They are Red, Yellow, Green, Black & Cream  
colored & a coat of Varnish over all. we will soon  
have her ready for Exhibition when I think  
we will go in to St Helena and show her off.  
Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine, course N.N.W. finished burnishing  
my Craft & oiling Oars, Paddles, &c. No Person is al-  
lowed to get into the Starboard boat now But the



## Bark Rifle of New London. 59

under Penalty of losing a watch below for each offence. And if I get into her, without taking my shoes off, I am to get my ~~and~~ Head knocked off! and, this is what they call Whaling! Oh! God help us!

Friday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, Made Sail, kept her N.W. Saw three sails to day & a Sunfish. At Sundown hove to for once after shortening sail as usual.

Saturday 7<sup>th</sup> Strong breezes, Made sail, & seeing two Merchant Ships steering N.W. we kept off the same & tried them a Race all day. At Sundown we were ahead of them, & our Captain was in great Glee, crowing like a Dung hill Cock! so we shortened sail, and hove to, heading S.W.

Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> Made all sail again & kept off, saw 4 sails to day, all steering northerly. Lat:  $17^{\circ} 53'$  South. Long:  $2^{\circ} 43'$  West. At Sundown, hove to, heading S.W. again.

Monday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. Made all sail. Saw several sails. At 10 A.M. spoke the Bark Rifle Capt<sup>n</sup> Morgan of New London, 10 Months Out, 250 barrels of Sperm Oil, and 180 of Whale Oil & 1500 lbs of Bone, she exchanged boats crews, and gammed until nine O'clock P.M. when they agreed to keep company for the Night and run to the Westward. She was just from the Coast of Africa, where she had cruised a Month without seeing anything. She had taken the Tristan Season & Reports Experiencing very heavy weather, she was hove on her Beam ends twice & lost her Lib & Fly jib Booms and was otherwise severely Damaged. The Bark nestle's Capt<sup>n</sup> Middleton was there but was never seen after the Gale was over, Several of the Whalers who were there, were severely Damaged, and some of them had picked up Portions of wreck which



# 60 Bound For St Helena, March 1857

they felt certain were parts of the ill fated Bark Restless who without doubt had gone to the bottom & all hands perished. May God have mercy on their souls! Poor fellows! We had Clam Chouder for dinner & lobsters for supper, & we are going to gammon again.

Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light breeze. Both ships made all sail & thence West in company. Plenty of sails in sight. P.M., we kept off N.N.W. Lat<sup>n</sup> 16.58 South. Long<sup>d</sup> 3.28 West.

I caught a Boneta.



to day. Night steering N.N.W.

fine & full Moon,

Wednesday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Breeze. Four months out.

Caught another



Boneta & a fine Salmon with hook & line.



At 4 P.M., our Captain went onboard the Rifle & their Mate came onboard of us & we gammed until 10 P.M., when they went onboard and we kept off N.W. I saw what I called the land before sundown bearing North 1/2 East, But they say it is not possible to see it, neither is that the Right direction for it, But we will see tomorrow. Saw a couple of Merchant Vessels, steering for what I call the land. Thursday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong Breeze. After Breakfast it was 10<sup>th</sup> mast head, and as soon as I got aloft, I sang out for land, bearing East half South & dead to windward of us. The Captain said, it was Cape Flyaway that I saw; And it was not until the Rifle, who was five miles to windward of us, luffed to the wind, that I could make him believe it was land. By ten o'clock some of the Rest could see it, as we were beating up for it, and by 12 o'clock it was plain in sight to all hands. The Rifle beat us out of sight & I don't know but what she got in. Saw several Merchant Vessels to day. Night fine & strong breezes.



Arrival At St Thelena, March 37. 64

Friday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze. Beating up for the Island. At 10, it bore S E, 15 miles distant. Night fine &c.  
Saturday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine. At daylight we found ourselves to windward of the Island, so we squared away, and got everything in readiness for coming to anchor, which we did about ten o'clock in the forenoon, in twenty fathoms of water about one third of a mile from the shore. The Rifle was here, also the Bark Montezuma, Baxter, nine months out 150 barrels of Sperm Oil. The Thomas Winslow, Reed, 19 months 400. The Laurens, of N L, 17 months, 4000 barrels of Elephant Oil. The Hannah Brewer of N L, & the George of Newfort R. I, both condemned and quite a number of Merchant Vessels, Ships, Barks, Brigs, schooners & Steamers. P M, we broke out & Becketed 17 barks ready for getting water. After supper some of the men went gambling, & we set anchor watches, no one but the Boatsteveners & cooper being allowed to stand. I was greatly amused to day by several of the Washwomen that came off to us; Fine Rosy cheeked Buxom looking Lasses, who were as full of deviltry as an egg is full of heat. They told us that they did not depend altogether upon the washing they got for a livelihood. But, that very often they picked up a sweetheart when they came off to ships, who would befriend them while the vessel laid here. I took a kiss from one pretty little Damsel, who was nothing loath to perform the delicious ceremony. But, returned it with a hearty smack, and cordially invited me to visit her at her Residence, of which she gave me the directions & said I should not lack for either Board or Lodging, & a good Bedfellow. (For a description of the Town & Harbour as well as the Inhabitants & Principle things of note on the Island, turn to Page 343)



## 62 On Liberty At St Helena.

For I find that my time will be too much occupied, to write daily any more than the occurrences on ship board; so I have reserved a space, commencing at Page 343 to give as accurate a description as I can of this Place, as well as any other Places we may make a part of, during the voyage we are now, on.)

Sunday 15<sup>th</sup> The Captain came on board this morning at 7 AM, bringing the Port Regulations with him, which was stuck up on the Fore Part of the Main Mast with papers. He then told the Starboard Watch to get Ready to go on Liberty. This was very welcome news to our Watch, who flew about like a hen with her head cut off, Every one mustering up his best suit, Polishing up Shoes, & Brushing up clothes, that had not seen daylight for over four long months; Shaving, hair trimming &c; for as the order had come unexpectedly, no one was in readiness. But, we managed in about an hour to Present ourselves on the quarter Deck in file Pie Order, and the Captain; after attempting to make a speech on the Propriety of good behaviour & abstaining from intoxicating liquors, but it short by exclaiming, I don't care a Damn! get as drunk as you please! But, anyone who comes on board drunk, will not get on shore again, that's all. He then gave the Boatstewers two dollars and a half each, and the Foremast hands one dollar each & away we started for the shore, I went to church in the Forenoon & after dinner I rambled about visiting various parts of the town, until evening, when my fair acquaintance of yesterday insisted that I had Rambled enough, and must be nearly tired to death. So having Liberty to remain all Night if we chose, I concluded to hire several



Corking Ship, March. 1857 63

Lodgings at Miss Wade's, as she had as good accomodation, as any one else, and I considered it a charity, to help the Poor People, when I could, just as well as not.

Monday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine. At daylight the Boat came in for those who had remained on shore all night, and all came off in good order. We then got breakfast, got out a Raft of Casks, which we took in, and after filling them we towed them off & hoisted them in keeping them on deck to heel the Vessel with, as the Captain is going to cork the Upper works, all the way round; For what reason God only knows! excepting it is to have some excuse for staying here, as we were neither in want of Wood, Water, or anything else when we came in here, Only to show off. The Monmouth, Eldridge, of Warren, R I, came in to day, 27 Months out 600 Barrels.

Tuesday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine, All hands Picking Oakum. The Bark Wm Henry, Coit, of Warren, came in to day, 22 Months 500 of Sperm. Montezuma & T Winslow, sailed. Saw nothing of the Captain to day, But, understood that he had gone out in the Country to Rusticate.

Tuesday 17<sup>th</sup> St Patricks Day, which the Irish Soldiers as we can see from the Vessel, are keeping up in fine style, and I would like to be there Myself.

Wednesday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine, Employed Corking on the Starboard Side of the Vessel. The Captain came off about 10 O'clock & was accompanied by an old Farmer named Bagsley, where the Captain has been the last two days. We had to knock off everything, and Break out, For Smoked Beef, Ham, Butter, Cheese, Raisins & Port wine, and a Portion of each was delivered to Mr Bagsley together with six cans of Clams, and Oysters, and all the Potatoes & Onions that



## 64 Old Farmer Bagsley's Visit.

we had left from our home supply & which he said he wanted for seed. After Dinner they went ashore again; Old Farmer Bagsley leaving 6 cabbages as a Present for the Captain, & curiosity Prompting me to enquire, I found they were valued at 10 cents each; so I concluded the Boat Load that he took away, went towards defraying our Captain's Country Expenses. A number of Merchant ships touched for water to day, which I am told they do nearly every day in the Year. Thursday 19<sup>th</sup> Still working, & Finished Starboard side. The Captain came onboard, shifted his clothes, and went Right ashore again. Mr Warner & James Patterson had their sweethearts stay onboard to Night, so they set the Fiddle at going & we had a dance on the quarter deck. Their names were Miss Teresa Clark, and Miss Lane Donihoven. we kept it up until 10 P.M. & set the <sup>table</sup> ~~wa~~ Friday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine. Commenced working the Starboard side. The Old Man shipped two Men, William Perryman & Alexander Rutledge and they both joined the Ship to day. The Ladies also still remains onboard. Saturday 21<sup>st</sup> working. Our Captain onboard this morning & brought enough Fresh Mackerel for a Heft for dinner, 6 more cabbages, & about a Peck of Peaches which he said Mr Bagsley sent to the Mate's. He then shifted himself, left Money with the Mate for Liberty men tomorrow & taking a Lot of Wine, half a dozen Cans of Preserved Meats, the same Number of Oysters, a Clothes Bag full of Bread, & a Cheese; saying he was going to spend a few days in the Country. I suppose he is, and when he Returns will make another haul on the Ship's Provisions to Pay for his Spree. Anyhow



On Liberty Again. March 1857. 65

time will tell. After Landing him, I took the Captain of The English Ship Ramilies onboard of his ship which was laying off and on, and he gave it Sovereign & a Glass of Grog for each of the Boats crew. At 4 P.M., we cleared up the decks & the Larboard Watch began to fire for their liberty day. We got it half Barrel of Pitch & a Piece of Calm today to make it corking tight which is all the outlay we have had to make on corking her, The crew having picked all the bakum.

Sunday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine. The Larboard Watch went on Liberty today, & our watch spent the day gambling with the other Whalers in Harbour. All the Watch remained onshore but one Man, and the Ladies Remained onshore likewise, there having been some words about their stopping onboard.

Monday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine. All came off in fine spirits this Morning & turning to with it Will, we got through corking, painted her Outside, and stowed down it Good Part of our Raft of Water.

Tuesday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine. Our Captain came onboard again this morning for the first time since Saturday and told our watch to get ready for liberty again. I took two dollars & a half again & not feeling very well I went onshore & laid down all day & all night. Wednesday 25<sup>th</sup> A very heavy swell setting in. The Watch all came off all but John Platt & The Carpenter. When the Boat went in with the Larboard Watch, she got capsized in the Rollers, but, as plenty of assistance was at hand no damage was received excepting it good drenching in their Sunday go to Meetings. The Boat was also righted without any damage to her.



## 66 Old Bagsley's Second Haul.

Thursday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine. The watch all came off but Sherman & Cooper & our Watch went onshore all but myself, I did not go until after dinner when I took two Dollars & a half & going onshore paid a visit to the Gardens as they call them, and bought some Fruit for my Fair Hostess.

Friday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine, Starboard Watch on Liberty. Our watch as there was nothing to do employed themselves, some sleeping, and some catching small crabs, which are very plentiful here.

Saturday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine. Starboard Watch on Liberty. I drew but one Dollar & 50 cents to day & as it was to be my last day, I paid a visit to the Barracks, and the different fortifications of which more hereafter on Page 345) At sun down I was pretty well tired out so I soon retired. The cooper John Guinan & carpenter William Talbot ran away to day & we cannot look after them until the Captain comes back from the country, and gets a Warrant out for them.

Sunday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine, Starboard watch on Liberty for the last time, and we on board made up and packed away our shore Tugery, for some other occasion.


Monday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine. Our Captain showed his love of a Physogg this morning & brought some black seal for breakfast, Old Spurger Bagsley came with him & my Stars! didn't he walk off with a load of provisions. I thought our Captain was going to sell out altogether. Beef, Pork, Ham, Smoked Beef, Cheese, Flour, Butter, Pilot Bread, Raisins, Tobacco, Pipes, Preserved Meats, fish, Oysters, Clams, Molasses &c, in fact a whole Boat load of what I will bet a Dollar we will stand in need.



Four April Fools, 1857. 67

of before the Voyage expires. The Captain went off with him again, leaving orders for everything to be in Readiness to go to Sea tomorrow Morning. Tuesday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine. All were onboard this Morning but the cooper & carpenter & we have got to lay 24 hours according to Law to look for them. Thirty cabbages, Two Bushels of Potatoes, One Bushel of Bell Peas & 200 small Peaches came onboard today, and a Large Black Tom Cat, From Old Farmer Bagsley, & this is all the Recruits we have got at St Helena, that even one Fresh Meat of Meat, the whole time we have been laying here, that even a Potatoe & only two meals of Mackerel. Oh yes! we have got about a dozen small Pumpkins. The Whalers laying here that have come in since the Monthmouth, are the Peri, Russell, N.B, 34 months, 1100 of Sperm. Samuel & Thomas, Briggs, M.H. 25 months, 150 of Sperm. Solar, Chiles, W.B, 10 months, 120 of Sperm. Elizabeth, Cook, W.B, 29 months, 400 of Sperm. Chen Dodge, Norton, N.B 11 months, 180 Sperm. Canawha, Terry, G.B, Long Island, 17 months, 200 Sperm. Peruvian Chadwick, N.L, 400 Sperm & Whale. 10 months. Malta, Oliver, N.B, 6 months, 20 of Sperm, & she is the last. Wednesday The first, and April fools Day. It was found this Morning that three of our men had deserted during the Night. James Sherman, James Platt, & John Platt. Information was immediately sent on shore, where it was found they were already in Custody, having been found with Talbot Our Carpenter & Taken on suspicion. They were all Brought onboard by a Policeman, and our Captain came also, putting them in Irons & confining them in the after Hold. He then went on shore for his Papers & returning about.



68 Leaving St Helena, April 1857.  
about 11:30 A.M. We got under weigh, taking a  
last look at the Town, where most of our people  
had enjoyed themselves so well that it seemed more  
like leaving home again, than it did like leaving a  
strange place. By 4 P.M. every thing was secured  
and the Decks washed off. The Captain then had the  
Prisoners Brought on deck & the two Platts he Ironed  
down each one to a Ringbolt of the after hatch  
Both hands & feet, something in this manner   
secured to the one Ringbolt, only having no Irons for  
the feet a Piece of Whale Line was used instead, &  
being spliced around one Leg, by the Ankle, was passed  
through the Ringbolt & spliced around the other Leg  
as short as they could get it. I was the most Painful  
Position I ever saw them placed in since I have been  
going to sea; for they could neither sit up or lay  
down, the whole weight of their Bodies resting on  
the very tip end of their Posteriors. The Carpenter &  
Sherman were fixed in like manner, one on the  
Starboard Side of the (or by the) Mizzen Rigging & the  
other by the Mizzen mast, with this difference, that  
they were round a Stanchion ~~to~~ instead of through a  
Ringbolt. He then addressed them thus; Now God  
damn you! I have washed off my shore face, and  
shifted my sea face again! And there you shall  
stop until I get my Satisfaction. You may eat &  
drink, Shit and Piss, yell & howl, But, no Mercy  
will I have on you! I will make you remember  
me the longest day you have to live God damn ye!  
The Platts gave as their Reason for running away that  
the Captain had often cursed them & used very violent  
and abusive Language to them, which was the Truth.  
The Carpenter said the Ship was not Seaworthy, and



## Inhuman Torture Of Four Men. 69

Sherman made answer to the Captains Enquiry, that he had nothing at all to say to him one way or tother. The Captain then gave Orders to his Officers, to Let no one go near them or speak to them Except when they were fed, like wild beasts, having one of the Men from forward, who would put a Piece of Bread in their mouths & then hold a Pot of water to their mouths whilst they took & swallow of it. The night set in squally & rainy, steering E, N E. under reefed Topsails & Courses, & the Poor Prisoners, Soaked. Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> Squally with showers of rain. Getting our Boats ready. Heading East on the wind from S, S E. The Prisoners requested to be let loose to attend to the Calls of Nature, at the same time Groaning most Piteously from the Rain they were in. Oh you don't! cried our Brutal Captain, you haven't got a smell of it yet! you shall say there until you wallow in it & be d-d to ye! Night squally with Rain, and no sleep to be got aft, for the Groans of the Unfortunates. Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine weather, made all sail. The Poor Prisoners suffering the most excruciating torments, Neither eating, or sleeping; While their Inhuman Torturer is walking around them adding to their Torture by asking them if they did not feel good, How they liked the Perfume under their Noses &c for the Poor fellows had to evacuate just as they were & then wallow in it, no one being allowed to go near them. Night fine, steering East, N East having took the Southeast trades to day. I never in my life saw such gloomy dissatisfied countenances as is depicted by all hands, a number of whom I have heard swear most solemnly that they never would resort to Whale if they saw me. My faith in this voyage is to an end.



# TO The Very Essence Of Torture.

Saturday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & Steady breeze. The Captain came on deck this morning & taking the two platts out of Irons, he with the Officers assistance, he seized them up to the Bearers overhead by their lacerated & swollen wrists at arms length & then stretching one leg out & triced it up to the Rail leaving them resting with the Toes of the other foot on deck; he then walked the decks taunting, and laughing at them, while the cries, and agony of the poor fellows, fairly made the Blood run chill in my veins. I expected every minute to see the crew who were huddled together forward, rush aft to the Rescue! and if they had I felt certain they would have met with no opposition from any one but, the Captain who is it disgrace to the name of American. And this would have been termed mutiny on the high seas. (How few there are onshore, who read of Revolts, and Mutinies, in the Public Prints, that can form an Idea, of the Aggravations, Tyrannical cruelty, & Brutal Treatment, that in nine cases out of Ten, drive the poor seamen to it, in spite of their Better Judgement.) After keeping them in that Position until they became speechless, (while the Refuse of excrement was running down their legs, that had accumulated there, during the last three days) he gave orders to the Mate to let them down, which he did, and as soon as they were able to walk, sent them forward, calling them by every hard name he could think of. The Carpenter and Sherman were also released, and as soon as they had bound up their wounded limbs, they were set to work scouring the Outside of the deck Pot, with Brickbats & the Captain told them that from this forward they should be treated like Dogs! and if they ever ran away again, & he could catch them, that he



# Very Poor Prospects. April 1857 71

would kill them outright. And This is one of the others that is supposed to study the comfort and health of twenty two men who are under his authority; and to whom The Owners, as well as himself, must look to for the success of the Voyage. They were four of the Best men we have got onboard, & you, whoever reads this Brutal case of Torture; can easily Judge, why I have lost all Faith, in the successful termination of The voyage. For the last two days & nights, not a man aft has closed their eyes in sleep, being kept awake by the heart rending groans of the Poor Victims of a Brutal Tyrant. And I am not ashamed to own, that I could not refrain from tears of compassion, for the Poor Sufferers, whom it was not in my power to assist. And the excited state of my mind to tell the truth; has fairly made me sick. Raised some some Limbacks from the deck to day, which are the first Whales of any kind that we have seen, for One Hundred and Seven days. The night was fine, and we steering East, N.E. Wind S.E. Sunday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine, Several of us, shaved off our whiskers and cropped our hair close, preparing for hot weather. Monday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, steering E N.E, Black listers still at the Deck Rat, all but Carpenter who is very sick, and continually passing blood & the Poor fellow says, that he feels sure that his days are numbered & that if he dies he shall consider that Captain David S Russell is his murderer. God help the Poor unfortunate! for I know he must be in misery with pain. Tuesday 7<sup>th</sup> The same, course N.E, half East. Wednesday 8<sup>th</sup> The same, saw Plenty of Porpoises. I saw the Captain, furnishing the victims of his Cruelty with Salve to day to assist them in healing their limbs where the Manacles & Ropes had cut into them. He also



## 72 Anabona Island. Lat<sup>o</sup> 1:32 S. Long<sup>o</sup> 5:45 East.

Made them knock off, at the deck pot, as their wrists had began to fester so much, that I imagine he began to fear the consequences. A couple of our men have got the Ladies fever.

Thursday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine. Steering N E by E. Plenty of fish round and I caught a fine Boneta.

saw a Fin back. Night fine, A school of Porpoises came round the ship, three of which I harpooned, and saved two of them.

we hauled in on deck & cleaned ready for eating. Tomorrow.

Friday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine. At daylight saw the Island of Anabona & kept direct for it. (See Page 352) At 3 P.M., we anchored on the lee side of it in 7 fathoms of water. We were soon boarded by lots of canoes and amongst the rest this mighty Highness King Hadley who remained on board all night after we had bargained for a supply of Firewood (see description Anabona Page )

The Schooner John C Smith, Anderson, of N London 9 Months 15 Barrels of Turnblack, came in this evening to get wood also & we gammed with them until 10 in the evening & then set anchor watches. Anderson is a Negro.

Saturday 11<sup>th</sup> Both vessels busy getting wood and Fruits.

After Sundown we gammed again til ten, then set anchor watches.

Sunday 12 Fine. Broke out two Barrels of Beef, and one of Pork, which we let Captain Anderson have for Cash. The Mate & Patterson had some words this morning, which ended in a knock down between Patterson, after which, Patterson kept his Bed all day. (For particulars see Page 358) We were hard at it all day at wooding, which shows how much of a Christian our Captain is, when away from a civilized place. We got everything off that we were to get, by Sundown, & then spent the evening gamming. Patterson turned to again to night & stood his anchor watch.



# Leaving Anabona April 1857.

73

Monday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine. We Broke out again this morning to let Captain Anderson have some blath, to pay for his wood with One Hundred & sixty Pounds of Bread, A Bag of Tea, A Bag of Beans, A Box of Souffle, & A Box of Tobacco. for all of which he Paid in hard cash. These things along with what we set go to the Niggers; Makes quite a little hole in our Provisions especially the meat. And I should not wonder if we go with Pinched Guts before the Voyage expires, if our Captain continues to be as prodigal of the ships Provisions as he has been. He also sold A Jug of New england Rum to the King for Five Dollars in cash. We then got ready for Sea, by settling up with our Friends, as each man of us had one, who brought off Fruit &c every morning. At 10 A.M. we manned the Windlass and by noon we had the decks all cleared up, and hawling off to the Westward with A stiff Breeze; The John C Smith following close in our wake. The After noon we employed stowing away & hanging up our Fruit Coconuts &c. This Island is laid down in Latitude, One degree and thirty two miles South. and Longitude of Five degrees and Forty five miles East. Slight fine & the J. C. Smith hull down astern.

Tuesday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine. Steering W, S W. on the Wind & I have been given to understand that we are Bound for the Island of Trinidad to cruise there some one having told him while at St Helena, that it was A good ground. We had to leave several barks on deck so as to be able to get our wood below. The Old Bark looks like A great fruit market, & the cry of stand from under is heard every little while as A Pine Apple or something else come thundering down from the stays where they are hung up to ripen. Saw several Finbacks, slight fine, Porpoises came round but we caught none.



74 Bound For Trinidad, April 1857.  
Wednesday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. Got a New Boat from overhead & fitted her for the Second Mate, & put the Old one in her place. heading W. S. W. Wind South. Carpenter off duty with Pains in the Loins & Passages of Blood & John Thing with Sick head ache. Thursday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light winds. Lent down the Foresail, repaired it, & lent it again. Night fine & Blackfish, and Porpoises playing all around the Vessel. Friday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong S. E. trade winds. Course S. W. Busy Making a Lead line, out of New whale line yarns. Saturday 18<sup>th</sup> Weather the same, Steering W. by South Sunday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. Course S. W. Saw a couple of Finbacks. Thing on duty But Poor Carpenter is still very bad. I myself am sorely Troubled with Bile's Monday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine, Steering S. W. by South. Night fine & c. Tuesday 21<sup>st</sup> The same. P. M. Calm. At sundown got a breeze again & kept her, S. W. by W. half West. <sup>Lat 11:09 S. 08:03 W.</sup> Wednesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Set in with heavy rain showers & Calm. filled the Scuttle Butt, & a couple of casks for washing water. Thursday 23<sup>rd</sup> Weather exactly the same. Friday 24<sup>th</sup> Cleared up nicely. Saw three Merchant Vessels, one of which Passed close to us Loaded with Passengers. Lat 12:37<sup>m</sup> South. Long 10:16<sup>m</sup> West. Saturday 25<sup>th</sup> Strong Trades, Course W. by South. All hands on duty once more. Lat 13:58<sup>m</sup> South. Long 11:27<sup>m</sup> W. Sunday, Monday & Tuesday 28<sup>th</sup> Light winds, saw Nothing Wednesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light winds. The Ocean was covered with Blackfish this morning. So we hove to, cleared away all three boats & lowered away. They appeared to be to home scattered all round and going in no Particular direction. The Starboard Boat soon got near enough to a Large Bull to Plant a Harpoon in his Back. He soon turned him up and Towed him alongside of the Vessel, when we gave chase



# Black Fish catching

75



to them again & I darted at two more without success, they being out of my Reach. We did not chase

long, But came aboard, hoisted the Boats, Hoisted in our Prize, Stipped him of his Blubber & saving a Portion of his meat to eat, threw the Rest overboard. I wonder that the Captain does not stop here a few days, for it looks the most like a Whaling Ground of any Place I have seen as yet the Voyage. Lat:  $19:38^m$  South Long:  $20:39^m$  West. There have we been running through Blackfish the whole day & to night they are all round the Ship still. The Mate, Proposed stopping here a few days to look for sperm Whales, But, the Captain's answer was, Pooh! if I wanted blackfish oil, I know where I can go, and average 100 barrels a Month. So by that I expect that he is going to take us some place where we can fill her up with Sperm Oil without any trouble whatever. God send it may Prove So!

Thursday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. Course W by South. Saw a Finback & some Porpoises, I struck one of the latter but he tore away again. Friday May the First Started the Try works & boiled out our Blackfish Blubber and it made two Barrels of Oil. Saw Porpoises. Saturday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & light Easterly winds. Caught a Dolphin. Saw a Finback.

The Bark Susan, of London, G B, passed close enough to us to day for us to read her name. Lat:  $18:55^m$  South. Long:  $24:05^m$  West. The Captain is very Busy rigging hooks & Lines to go a fishing at Trinidad; Which Island he has given us all, aft, to understand, is to be called Sauxemburg; For he calculates to take a Great fare of Oil there; and he wants the crew to be ignorant of its Being Trinidad, so that when we





## 76 Martin Vas, And Trinidad.

arrive in St Helena again they will be unable to inform other vessels where we filled our ship up. Finished my last Pine Apple to day, the last one onboard. Sunday 3<sup>rd</sup> & Monday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine, And good breeze. Course West. Saw Nothing. Lat<sup>n</sup> 20:08 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 27:41 West. Tuesday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. At three O'clock this morning we hove the ship to and at daylight we saw the Island of Martin Vas to Westward of us. it lies in the Latitude of 20:31 South. And Longitude of 28:38 West. It is a Barren Rock not over a Mile in Circumference its self, But, surrounded by numerous small clusters of Rocks which gives it a much larger Appearance. There was no vegetation on it that I could see with the exception of a few small, and stunted trees. At Sunrise we passed close to it, steering for the Island of Trinidad, which was plain in sight & lies in Lat<sup>n</sup> 20:28 South and Long<sup>e</sup> 29:05 West. We sent a Boat in fishing at 2 P.M., & she got off by Sundown bringing a few fish that were eatable & any quantity of what they call Leather Suckets which we cannot eat they are so rank. They saw the Remains of a Wreck on shore, & some remains of barks supposed to be Pine barks. The Island is composed chiefly of Barren Rocks, with here & there a small spot of Earth which appeared to be rich soil, from the number of large Trees & long grass with which they were covered, although I could see no appearance of water But, what was furnished them by showers of Rain, & in fact some of the high Pinacles (of which there are numbers) were continually covered with heavy wet looking clouds. At Sundown we hove to, double reefed the Topsail & heading her to the Southward, set Boats crew Watches. Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, stood to southward & Eastward out of sight of the Land. Saw Nothing. At Sundown hove to again.



# An Official Consultation. 77

Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> Cruised round in sight of Land but saw nothing. At Sundown, shortened sail & laid aback all night. Friday 8<sup>th</sup> Rather Squally, P.M., we were between the two Islands & lowered two Boats in chase of what the Captain called a Humpback Whale, But, what every body else aft, knows to have been a Finback. At Sundown we close reefed. Night very squally, and wet. Saturday 9<sup>th</sup> Very strong breeze, But, fine, kept her under double reefed Topsails, courses, & Lib, & Spanken. P.M., we ran to Leeward of Trinidad, & sent a Boat in fishing. She got back by Sundown, having about two barrels but not more than a couple of meals fore & aft that were good for anything. We then shortened sail as usual. Sunday 10<sup>th</sup> Strong breezes & squally. The Captain came on deck this morning with a long face on & finally stated to the Mate, that he did not think we would do anything here and asked his Opinion about going to the Western ground. The Mate would have nothing to say until he heard the Second Mate's opinion of it; so when Mr. Warner came from the Mast head the subject was again broached, Mr. Warner said he could have nothing to say about it, since he was not acquainted with any of the grounds in this Ocean, & added that he should like to stop & see what was to be done here. Oh! there is no whales here (cried the Captain) I know there aint! They had a long talk & the Mates gave him to understand, (without he was very dull of comprehension) without speaking in plain blunt English, that we had been on the move ever since we left home & that he might go where he liked for all them as they did not think it made much difference to him whether they sanctioned it or not. The conversation as it was however, required the Captain, and after Breakfast we made all sail & kept her North, saying, he would work



## 78 Bound For The Coast Of Africa.

Across to the Coast of Africa, on the Line; For if he went to the western Ground, he could not get back in season for the Right Whale Season round the Tristan Islands. we stood to the Northward until  $4^{\frac{1}{2}}$  P.M., when the Captain coming up from his afternoon nap, we found he had altered his mind & concluded to make a Southern Passage we accordingly tacked ship to the Southward & at  $9^{\frac{1}{2}}$  P.M. we passed Trinidad for the last time; And instead of the great cut of oil we were going to get, we have only been here five days & two of that spent in catching Leather Jackets. Set whole watches again & carrying all sail.

Monday 11<sup>th</sup> Strong Northerly winds, heading S.E. and cracking on her. Saw an English Man of War Steamer

Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup> Strong winds. from Westward. Got out our Topsail & Topgallant studding sails, and away we went, paying attention to nothing but making & and taking in sail, until we were had got to the Meridian on the 28<sup>th</sup> of May in the Latitude of 19 degrees South. Never having gone to the Southward of 23 degrees the whole Passage across, & saw Finbacks or Sulfhor Bottom every Identical day on the Passage; we also passed in sight of innumerable Merchant Vessels. We then kept gradually working to the Northeast, until Sunday the 31<sup>st</sup> of May, when we gave her the Studding sail again, and kept her E.N.E; being in Lat<sup>d</sup> 16:00 South. and Long<sup>d</sup> 5:21 East to day. Monday June 1<sup>st</sup> Plenty of Porpoises all round, I struck two, one of which, tore away & the other walked off with the Harpoon, so I got neither. Tuesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. Took in studding sails & unbent them, sent down the Booms unrove the gear &c, and stowed them all away. Lat<sup>d</sup> 12:03 South. Long<sup>d</sup> 07:49 East. At sundown we shortened sail, But, still kept on our course N.E. by East; And set boats crew watches again.



# Amongst The Fleet, June 1857.

79

thus we kept going until Sunday 7<sup>th</sup> seeing several Finbacks & numberless different kinds of small fish, we then Raised at Sail & keeping off for her, we spoke her about 10<sup>h</sup> at A.M., & she Proved to be the Bark Charles & Edward Salter, of Dartmouth 7 Months out 50 barrels of Sperm & 40 of Blackfish and had taken 9 Blackfish yesterday.

We Gammed until 7<sup>h</sup> in the Evening when we Parted & hove to for the night. But, they informed us there was a Plenty of Whalers down in the Lat<sup>e</sup> of 6 so I suppose we will start for them tomorrow. If we don't Gam again.

Monday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine, Made sail & kept away again, East. caught a Porpoise this Morning.

Lat<sup>e</sup> today 7:54 South Long<sup>e</sup> 11:01 East. saw some small fish & a Turtle.

Tuesday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine. Raised what we called a Large Sperm whale & after chasing him four miles to windward with the boats, we came up with him & found he was a Finback. Saw Plenty of them all day afterwards who would Spout from 20 to 30 times & as Regular as any sperm Whale.

Wednesday 10<sup>th</sup> Saw some Finbacks & one Merchantman. Lat<sup>e</sup> 7:15 South Long<sup>e</sup> 10:39 East.

Thursday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine. Kept off again. At 5<sup>h</sup> A.M., we raised a Whaler and got near enough to see the men aloft when she squared away from us. We made all sail & gave chase which we continued until 3<sup>h</sup> P.M., But, could not gain on her. we then got sight of three more, one of them Boiling & two gamming. we gave chase to the latter But, they also turned tail to us & at sundown we were obliged to give it up. So we shortened sail & headed her to, Howard.

Lat<sup>e</sup> 8:36 South Long<sup>e</sup> 9:57 East At 10 P.M., another vessel Passed us Boiling so we then hove her to.

Friday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine, Six Whalers in sight to day, But, Lord Russell, won't go near them, although we know some of them, & have got Letters & Papers for them. Night fine &c.



# 80 Visiting The Fleet, June 1857.

The Captain threw a stick of wood at Ephraim Benson to day & came very near breaking his leg, the infernal Brute!

Saturday 13<sup>th</sup> The Captain Beat floor Ephraim at the wheel this morning because he could not stand on both legs; saying, that, he was trying to make out, that his leg was hurt.

At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., spoke the Eben Dodge, Norton, had taken nothing since leaving St Helena. He informed us, there was a large Body of Whales seen last Sunday & several of the Fleet had taken some of them. we gammed until nine in the evening & then hove to as usual.

Sunday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine, Made all sail, saw nothing but Whalers.

Monday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. Made sail as usual. P.M., we had a gam with the Eben Dodge & the Odd Fellow, Goodale, Sag Harbor, 10 months 110 Barrels of Sperm. she took one whale last week & Reports, that fourteen other vessels took whales last week also. We gammed until 10<sup>h</sup> in the evening. Lat<sup>m</sup> 6:48 South Long<sup>m</sup> 9:54 East.

Tuesday 16<sup>th</sup> Saw a Humpback, & gammed with the C.D.

Wednesday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine. At 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., saw one vessel's boats down & the Fleet making for her, When we got there & was just on the Point of lowering, one of the stranger's boats hailed us & told us they were nothing but Humpbacks. She belonged to the Schooner Wave Spirit, Bruce, of Cape Town, oil not mentioned. We then spoke the R L Barstow, Devoll, Mattapoisett, 10 months 300 Sperm. As we had letters for him he came on board, Norton also came on board of us & we sending our mate to one ship, and our second mate to another, we gammed all day & part of the night.

Thursday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine, Saw nothing Lat<sup>m</sup> 6:31 S, Long<sup>m</sup> 9:40 East.

Friday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, Struck two cow fish to day and only saved one who was so strong that we could not eat him. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M.,





# Can't Stop For Sperm Whales 81

We ran off & spoke the Washington, Babcock, Sagharbor. 22  
Months 250 of Sperm & 325 of Whale. Gammed until 5 P.M.  
Saturday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine, saw nothing of any account. Rouse off  
duty with sore leg that has been bad this some time, The  
Captain says he will send him home if he can get a chance  
I wish to god! he would send me too! from the Bottom of my Heart!  
The Eben Dodge caught a 25 Barrel Humpback to day.  
Sunday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine. Saw Plenty of Porpoises & Grampuses.  
Monday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine, saw several of the Vessels chasing  
Humpbacks & the E.D. Boiling. We ran off & spoke the  
Osceola, Carr, N Bedford, 10 months 275 of Sperm. he  
said it was too early to gamn, so we ran down &  
Gammed with the Barstow & exchanged Boats crews.  
while we were gamming some Humpbacks came up  
close to us & we both gave chase. The Barstow strike  
one But, cut the line off again with a lance. The  
gammed until 8 P.M. Lat <sup>6</sup><sup>m</sup> 6:01 South. Long: <sup>9</sup><sup>m</sup> 9:33 East.  
Tuesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Several vessels in sight. At 5 P.M. we spoke  
the Louisa Sears, Counteray, of Edgartown, eight months  
75 of Sperm. Gammed until 9 in the evening, when on  
returning onboard we made all sail & stood to the  
Eastward, Both Captains having agreed to go in to the  
Coast & Try their Luck at Hump Backing it in  
Company. Lat <sup>6</sup><sup>m</sup> 6:33 South. Long: <sup>10</sup><sup>m</sup> 10:35 East.  
Wednesday 24<sup>th</sup> Plenty of Porpoises round all day.  
And Blackfish all night. Thursday 25<sup>th</sup> A School  
of Whales Passed close to us this Morning about  
three o'clock. I called the Captain but he would  
not even turn out. At daylight, they could not  
have been over Ten miles from us Eastern, But,  
he would not even tack to look for them, although  
I told him I was sure they were Sperm Whales. P.M.  
it died away calm & continued so all Night.



## 82 Hump Backs, And Gammie.

Friday 26<sup>th</sup> Dead Calm. Lat<sup>n</sup> 6:31<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>t</sup> 11:41<sup>m</sup> East.

Saturday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze. At 2 P.M., we sighted the Land about 30 miles to windward of the River Congo. Louisa Sears close to us, saw one Humpback.

Sunday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine. The L.S. out of sight. Close to the Land in 15 fathoms of water. Lowered twice to chase H. Backs.

Monday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. Made all Sail & Ran down by Congo River. P.M., we passed by the Town of Kabenda, about 30 miles North of Congo River, where we saw a British Man of War Brig & Steamer. and two or three Merchant Schooners. To an anchor; We also spoke the Wave Spirit who was bound in, & informed us that The Pearl of New London was to anchor inside. We then Ran down the coast about 15 miles farther & came to anchor in 15 fathoms water six miles from shore & set anchor Watcher two in a Watch.

Tuesday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine. Got under weigh & stood off shore, fell in with The Helen Augusta, Worth, Holmes & told 12 Months 50 Sperm 150 Whale. So we all put about (having fell in with the Louisa Sears again) and came to anchor in our last night's Berth & gammed until 10 at night. All of them agreeing to go off shore again to look for Sperm Whales until after full moon.

Wednesday July the First. We gammed until 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., and then we all up anchors & stood off shore again.

Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. Lowered once for a Humpback. L.S. in sight. Lat<sup>n</sup> 4:57<sup>m</sup> S. Long<sup>t</sup> 10:20<sup>m</sup> East.

Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine. Lowered once for Humpbacks. We killed a Pig to day, that we begged out of the Bask. Rifle last March & he weighed 70 pounds. Gave them half of it forward. Lat<sup>n</sup> 4:46<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>t</sup> 10:00<sup>m</sup> East.

Saturday 4<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of our Independance! Saw nothing but Finbacks. Beating to windward.



# Porpoise Beef For Sailors, July 1857. 83



Sunday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. Lat<sup>n</sup> 5:50<sup>m</sup> S. Long<sup>e</sup> 8:23<sup>m</sup> C. Saw Nothing.

Monday 6<sup>th</sup> Weather the same. Saw nothing.

Tuesday 7<sup>th</sup> Painted the Overhead boats. P.M., lowered for  
Thumpbacks with the usual success, no where near them.

Wednesday 8<sup>th</sup> Painting; At 3 P.M., lowered for Th Backs  
and chased until sundown. Lat<sup>n</sup> 6:0<sup>m</sup> S. Long<sup>e</sup> 9:40<sup>m</sup> East.

Thursday 9<sup>th</sup> Chased at Finback. Saw Plenty of Porpoises.

Friday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine. I struck & saved two  Porpoises  and the Captain  
struck and saved another one. P.M., we spoke the

Washington & gammed until 10<sup>h</sup> At night. She had seen  
nothing lately but Thumpbacks. Saturday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine  
Both ships chasing Th Backs to day, and wound up with  
another gam until 10 O'clock at Night. Our Captain  
stopified the others meat to day, with orders to cook  
no more until the Porpoises were eat. I will bet  
something you will never see two Porpoises caught  
out of one school again onboard of this Good Ship!!

Sunday 12 Fine, Found that some of the Sailors had cut  
the Porpoises adrift, which galled the Old Man so much  
that he sent one whole watch to the Mast head in the  
Forenoon & the other watch in the afternoon, because  
no one would tell him who did it. Monday 13<sup>th</sup>

Fine, Saw some Finbacks. Lat<sup>n</sup> 6:44<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 10:00<sup>m</sup> East.

Tuesday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine. P.M., spoke the Brig, Amelia, Hempston,  
Hathaisett, 7 Months 50 of Sperrin & 10 of Blackfish.  
Gammed until 10 in the evening, and our Captain let  
him at large Shacked for one Dollar Cash.

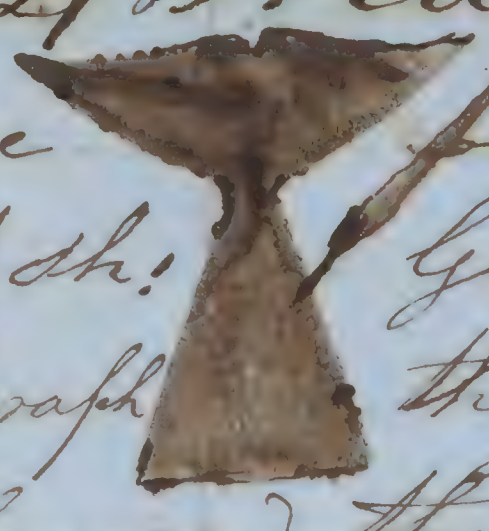
Wednesday 15<sup>th</sup>. Lowered once for Thumpbacks.

Thursday 16<sup>th</sup> Saw nothing, But a few Whalers.

Friday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine, Saw some Grampuses. At 10 O'Clock,  
raised two Thumpbacks. Lowered away, and after  
chasing them about an hour I got at Flying dart at



## 84 Breaking Both Black & White Skin.

one  and Planted it Harpoon in Her small, But, oh! Glory! Talk about your Railroads or Electric Telegraph they couldn't hold a candle! away She started to Leeward, the Bull keeping with her, Roaring like Thunder & Fighting like mad Bulls, The Ship kept off dead before it & crowded on all sail, Labour in Vain! for in 10 minutes we lost sight of the other Boats, and in less than half an hour we had run the Ship out of sight. we had got but a couple of Lances at her, but too far aft to help us any, & also a couple at the Bull. We then cut off & pulled in the Direction of where we had last seen the Ship. We got on board about 6 P.M., with the loss of one Harpoon, one Lance, 20 fathoms of Line, & the Boat strained so that she leaked like a Riddle. so much for the Backs.

18<sup>th</sup> 19<sup>th</sup> 20<sup>th</sup> & 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & Light winds, beating to windward. Saw Humphers every day, but, will not lower for any more in deep water. The Old Man & the Carpenter very Busy Building a Fancy Bird Cage. Lat<sup>n</sup> 7:35 South, Long<sup>m</sup> 10:36 East. Wednesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Rather Hazy. About 9 A.M., the Captain Pitched into Samuel Purse & Dragging him away from the wheel, choked him, & struck him several times, then sent him to the wheel again. Purse told him he would make him pay for it when he got home, & with that the Captain again dragged him from the wheel, by the hair of his head, & beat him with the end of the Spencer Long Fall until he was tired out. He then got a Piece of Ratlin stuff & doubling it, beat him until I thought he would kill him, & then made him stop to the wheel all day. He strified him self to night & showed me what a Horrid state



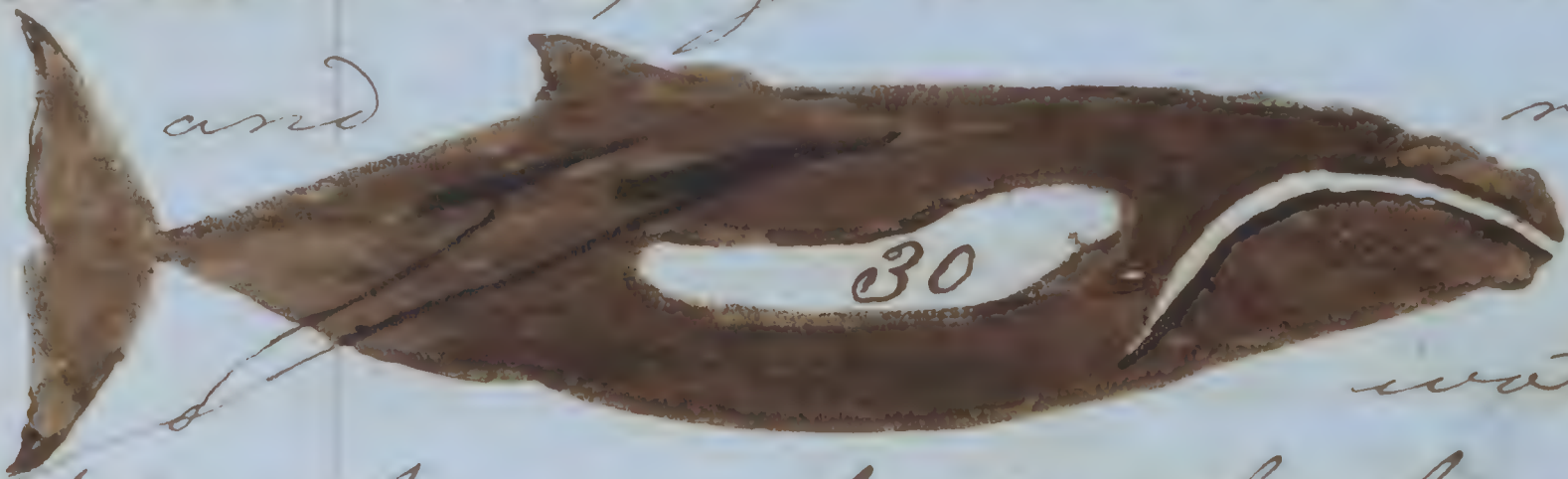
# The Blood Hound, July 1857. 85

he was in. From his head, to his heels, not even excepting his Face, was one continual field of Black & Blue Bruises & in several Places the skin taken completely off. We shortened sail to day as we got no Observations, Thursday 23<sup>rd</sup> Rather Hazy. Standing to the Eastward Bound in for the Land again. Lat <sup>6<sup>m</sup></sup> 7.53 S. Long <sup>0<sup>m</sup></sup> 12.14 East. Friday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine. About 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., we made the Land abreast of Ambroz Bay. (See Page 141) The English Steamer Bloodhound, one of the Coast Guards Boats, came to see that we were not a slaver. They let their Doctor examine Rouse, and he told the Otoman that he had the dropsy, that he was likely to drop off at any moment, & then again he might live for years yet. He however advised the Captain to send him home the first chance. Night fine, hove to. Saturday 25<sup>th</sup> Light winds, running down the Land chasing Humphbacks until 6<sup>h</sup> P.M., when we came to anchor in six fathoms water about 2 miles from the Land, & furling everything set anchor watches. Sunday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine. Got under weigh. We then sent the Starboard boat in shore with some trade in her, but, after pulling along shore for about 25 miles, (we following with the ship) she returned not finding any place where they deemed it safe to land. Lowered once for Humphers. At 6<sup>h</sup> P.M., we again anchored in 6 fathoms of water close to Land. Monday 27<sup>th</sup> Got under weigh at daylight, and chased Humphers until Sundown, when we again anchored about 30 miles South of The River Congo. Saw plenty of native fishing canoes but, none of them will come near us to sell any of their fish, & it is the same every day. I suppose they are afraid we will take, & make slaves of them.



# 86. Our First Whale, July 1857.

Tuesday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & calm. we however got our anchor and let her drift, while we went in chase of Whales. About 3 P.M., I got an Iron into a large Bull, who fought, and ran until he turned up at sundown & sank in 20 fathoms water, so that we had to leave.

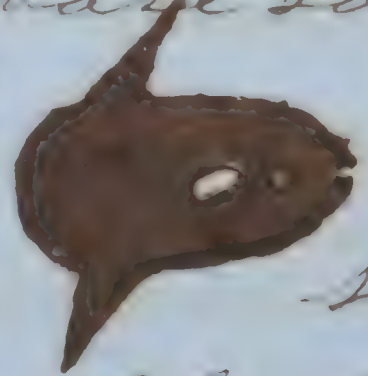


A Boat's crew lay by him all night. When we got back to the ship we found that Mr. Warner had killed & sank another, but, parted his line trying to haul him up, & so lost him. We anchored the vessel about a mile from our Whale, Dead Calm.



Wednesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine. Called all hands at daylight and warped the ship up to our Whale. we then tried to haul him up but could not Budge him. So we let him sweat & we all turned in or fished just as we liked best. Spoke Bank Globe, Trip, AB, 23 Months 600. Also the Montezuma Baxter, Both Captains came aboard & we had a game.

Thursday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine, Tried our whale again this morning but it was no go. The whale lowered for Lumpbacks, and caught a Lumpfish. The rest of us spent the day catching large Red snapper, a beautiful fish for eating & very plentiful here. Our Whale came up at sundown & Captain Baxter came on board to show us how to cut him in No one onboard having ever cut one in before. We finished by 12 O'clock at night & all hands then turned in for the rest of the night. (See description of cutting in Whales, Page )

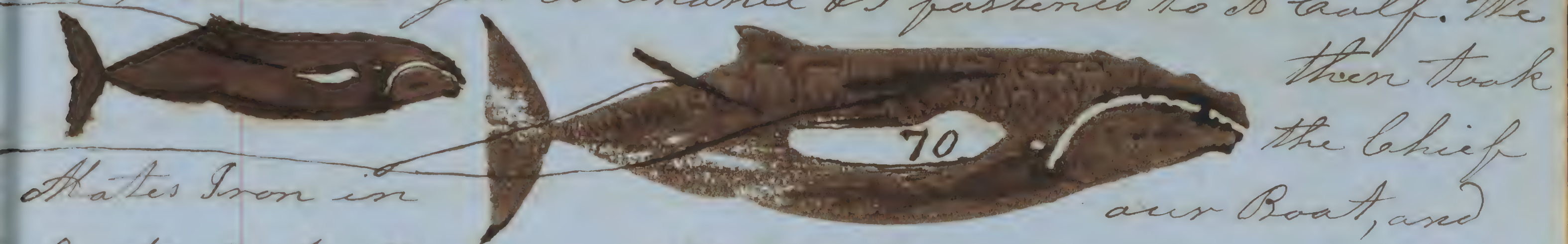


The good Captain Baxter & Boat Company to night. Friday 31<sup>st</sup> Had us out at daylight & commenced boiling. by 12 O'clock, we had the blubber all cut up into Horse Pieces, & in Lunk Casks. we then washed decks & the Larboard watch went below. At 7 P.M., we set the Try watches, until 7 in the morning (See Page)



# A Cow And calf, August 1857. 87

Saturday August the 1<sup>st</sup> Got through Boiling & all cleared up By Noon. After dinner Got under weigh & then lowered the Boats, Plenty of Whales all round us. At three P.M. our Boat got a chance & I fastened to a calf. We then took the Chief



fastened to the bow. The calf soon died & we let him go, but this made the Old cow furious, and we could not get near her until after Sundown, when as we had good Moonlight we still held on with two boats & got her turned up by 12 O'clock at night, & she floated. we got her alongside by 2 O'clock this morning & when we all turned in until daylight, after letting go the Anchor & Blewing up the Sails. At daylight we commenced cutting in, and got about half through, when the Boarding Torgal slipped out & our whale sank as far as the Fleuk chain would let her. So we cut up what we had in, washed decks got Supper & started the Try Works again. Monday 3<sup>rd</sup> Our Whale came up of her own accord this Morning, & we got her all in, cut up & decks cleared by Sundown, when we set the Watches. Tuesday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine. Getting the Boats in Readiness, & Boiling. At 2 P.M. we finished Boiling & our two whales turned out one Hundred barrels of Oil, The Cow making over 70 of it. At 6 P.M. set anchor watches, two in a watch. Talbott The Carpenter off duty, and still passing Blood. Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. Employed showing down our Oil, but did not finish. Plenty of Whales around But, cant Lower for them as 100 is as much as we can take care of at once. Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, Finished Showing down, 98 Barrels in all, and instead of lowering & trying to get another, we spent the day Washing the Ship, Boats, &c with Lye & Fresh Water.



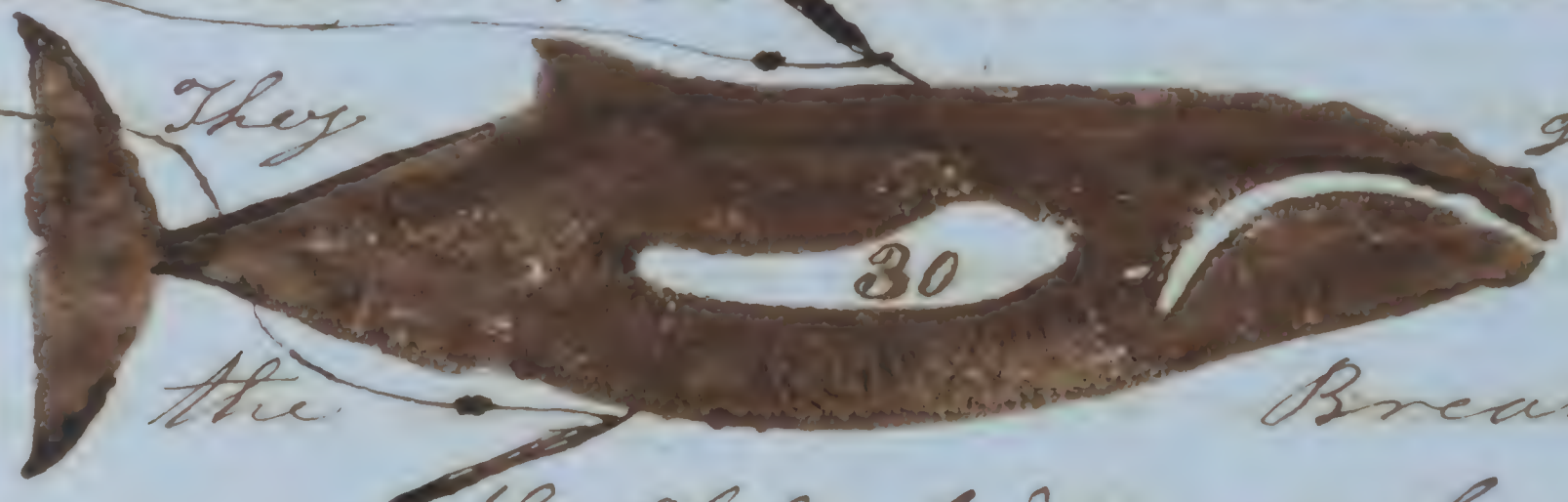
# 88. Greasy Times, August 1857.

Friday 7<sup>th</sup> Got under weigh at daylight & beat to windward all day. Saw but few Whales & they showed no chance. Stood Boats crew watches, & beat to windward all night. Saturday 8<sup>th</sup> Chasing Whales from 7<sup>h</sup> A.M. until 6<sup>h</sup> P.M., when we came to anchor for the night.

Sunday 9<sup>th</sup>. Saw no Whales to day until it was too late to lower for them. Saw one or two Coast Guards, which we see nearly every day & they come close to us, to see who we are.

Monday 10<sup>th</sup> Got under weigh about 9<sup>h</sup> A.M. At 11<sup>h</sup> A.M. we were close to Saint Padrone, when we saw a Bull whale inshore from us, we lowered away Larboard, & Waist Boats, & about 12 o'clock the Waist Boat fastened to him. They got him dead

about 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. and he sank about 1/2 mile from the Breakers in 9



fathoms water, we ran the Vessel down close to him & anchored her, we then ran both Boats lines to the ship & we hauled him up so as to get a Fluk chain on him & then Bending our other cable, in case of accident, let her stay all night. Standing Anchor watches.

Tuesday 11<sup>th</sup> As our Whale did not come up by 12 O'clock we up anchor & made sail on her, which soon brought him to the top of the Water. We then got a Hook in, to hold him up, & let go Anchor again, & Tumbled the sails. Commenced cutting at 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. & had him all in by 6<sup>h</sup> P.M. when we got supper & set anchor watches.

Wednesday 12<sup>th</sup> Got our Blubber cut up by 10<sup>h</sup> A.M. Was boarded by a Portuguese Man of War Schooner called, Don Ferdinand, who examined our Papers & then Left. P.M. Got under weigh & Anchored again 50 miles off shore. Started the Works. Spoke Bark Samuel Thomas & had a Gam with her. She had taken 70 barrels of Sperm since leaving St Helena. The Old Washington in sight also.



# An Unfortunate Accident 89

Thursday 13<sup>th</sup> Boiling. At 4 A.M., one of The Washington's Boats Paid us a visit & we found that her & the S Thomas were going to stop here & skate (96) 60 halves in what they caught. At one P.M., we finished Boiling & our Whale turned up 30 Barrels, we then hove up anchor & standing in, to our First Anchorage Ground, Anchored as usual.

Friday 14<sup>th</sup> Up anchor & stood off & on, with L & W boats down after Whales. About 3 P.M., The Starboard boat got on to a Bull Whale

and set him Spouting Blood the Irons. We got him turned up by 5 P.M. & he sank, we left one Boat by him, & coming onboard we worked the ship up to him, we anchored her & took the Lines to the Ship by 10 P.M., we then furled the sails, got supper & turned in for the night. The Captain Ropes ended our Poor Old look, & also struck him several times with his fist, when we came onboard this Afternoon. The other ships got a whale to day also, as well as ourselves.

Thursday 20<sup>th</sup> Thanks be to God! I am once more able to lay on my side & manage to write. I met with a bad Accident on the Morning of the 15<sup>th</sup> which has deprived me of the use of my Legs, & all the lower Part of My Body. I cannot even turn over in my bed without assistance, and I don't know how it will turn out yet. But, God knows! how I have suffered, & do still suffer. It happened thus. On Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> Not being near enough to our Whale to haul him up, we got out a Redge anchor & bending the cutting falls to it carried it out ahead & dropped it. The Falls not being long enough to reach the ship we bent a whale Line to the end & lead it to the ship, where they hauled it taught. we then under run it, & got hold of the cutting fall, which we lead through the chocks of the Boat, so as



20 On A Sick Bed, August 1857  
not to loose the Talls, & Fledge in case the Whale Line parted,  
when they weighed the Ships anchor & a strain came on  
it. I stood in my place in the Bows of the Boat when  
the strain came, & the line flying out of the chocks  
of the Boat, crushed me down backward over the  
gunwale of the Boat. I felt no Pain at the moment  
But, was unable to move & cried out for help as I  
was hurt. One of the men held me in his arms  
until they got me onboard, & then I began to feel a  
curious sensation like unto what a Person would  
experience by suddenly striking his Elbow against  
any thing hard. This continued for some time, when  
sharp Pains began to shoot across my Loin which  
kept increasing, until they threw me into strong  
Spasms, succeeded by Fainting fits through the day  
& night. And the mates have told me since that they  
never in all their lives heard such Piercing, and  
Piteous screams as I uttered. The Captain cut a  
Vein in each Arm But, could get no Blood, He  
then kept giving me Laudnum in small doses  
until he had given me drops which they said  
lulled me into a kind of Stupor & Leaving a Man  
to watch me went to look after the Whale, though  
they first put, Two Spanish Fly Blisters on the  
small of my Back & Mustard Poultices on my  
feet; & said the Mate, while talking to me last  
night, about it; We had done all we could for you  
Dan & I don't believe there was a dry eye in the Ship  
when we went to our Work; Expecting every  
minute that to see the Steward come up to inform  
us that you was out of Pain, But Thanks be to  
God! I am in hopes you will soon be over it  
Now to which I replied with a hearty Amen!

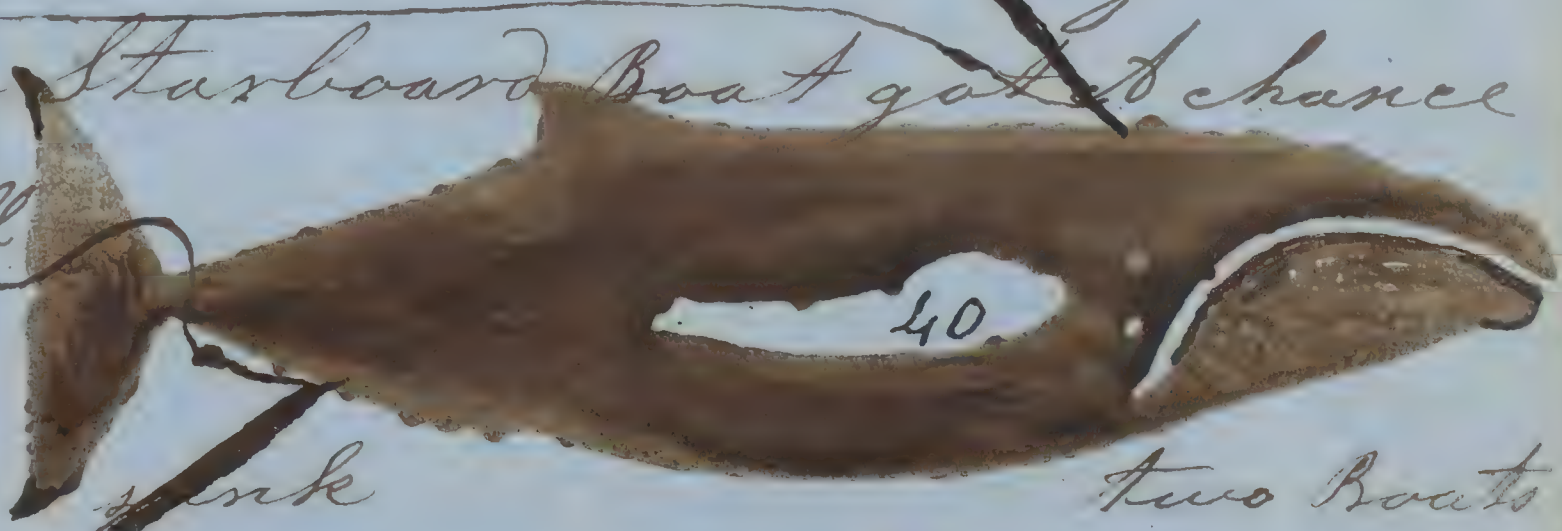
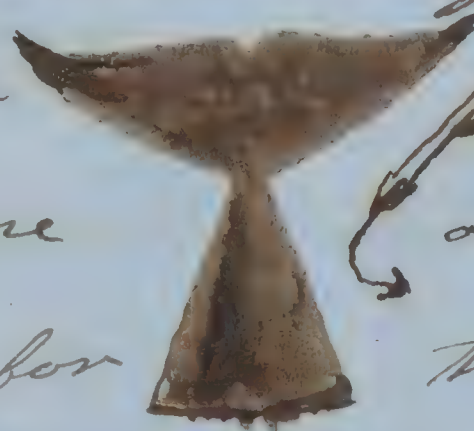


# Recovering Gradually August 1857 91

They have Promised to take me on Deck Tomorrow & you can't imagine how Happy I feel, at the Prospect of another glimpse at Salt water, & Blue Sky, & now I will give you an Account of what they have been doing, while I have been hove out for Repairing of Damages to my Skull it's correct as I can get it from my fellow Harpooners. On Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> After I was hurt, they got the Kessel up to the Whale But, could not haul him up, so they laid back until Sunday Morning, when they hauled him up quite easy & got him in, & cut up into Horse Pieces by Sundown. It was my overboard & one of the others (Sherman) took it for me. They Opened the whale for the Gut fat, & got about 5 Barrels. I should like to have seen the Performance, as it is something new to me. At 7 P.M. set the watches & Started the Works.

Monday 17<sup>th</sup> Got under weigh & stood back to our old anchorage, having two boats down after whales all day. Finished boiling about 12 O'clock at night & he made about 30 barrels. Tuesday 18<sup>th</sup> The Stowed down about 40 barrels leaving 20 on deck, then Laid her down fore and aft & washed her off. Wednesday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, Lowered two boats, & the Starboard Boat soon got fast to a Calf but the Iron drew again and he went off with his mother. Our Boats came and, we did not lower any more for that day.

Thursday 20<sup>th</sup> All three Boats lowered, the Captain he took the Skutt, one of the Foremast hands in my Place. About One O'clock P.M. The Starboard Boat got a chance & the Skutt struck a Fine Bull. he ran to windward but they soon turned him up & he came onboard & got the Kessel under weigh & beat up to where he laid, came to anchor & got the Lines onboard





## 92 Blisters, And Bleeding, And

by 6<sup>h</sup> P.M., we then furled the Sails got Supper & set the anchor patches. I was glad that the skiff got it chance, as it is the first time he has ever been in the head of a Boat, although I expect he is the only one that is praying for me to keep sick a little while longer.

Friday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine tried to haul the Whale up but could not. The Captain dressed two Blisters that had been on for 24 hours, after he got Breakfast & Bled me. They then went in chase of whales all day without success. While poor me was laying in the Bunk unable even to feed myself without the Stewards assistance. & suffering the most accute Pains in the Spine of the Back. At 11 o'clock at night The Whale came up & they all turned out & fleeked him & then turned in again.

Saturday 22<sup>nd</sup> All hands out at daylight, to cut in the Whale; Got him in by 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., and all cut up, the decks cleared up, the Works started & watch set by 5<sup>h</sup> P.M. The Captain Bled me again to day & I was in such Pain that he Promised to have a Doctor to see me, the first Cruiser that hove in sight if he could catch them.

Sunday 23<sup>rd</sup> Sent two Boats down & the Rest boiling I got about 2 hours sound sleep this day, the first I had, had since I got hurt, & I felt like another Man after it. Finished Boiling by 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., & he turned up about 40 Barrels. The Boats Got onboard by 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., & the Waist Boat Brought a fine Green Turtle that Patterson had darted a Harpoon through.



Monday 24<sup>th</sup> All the Boats went up to day, and before going the Captain gave me a dose of Medicine that left myself & Bed in a delightful sleep before they got back at 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., They then however soon put me to rights again, & I could not help laughing myself, as well as them to see what a lovely Pickel I was in,

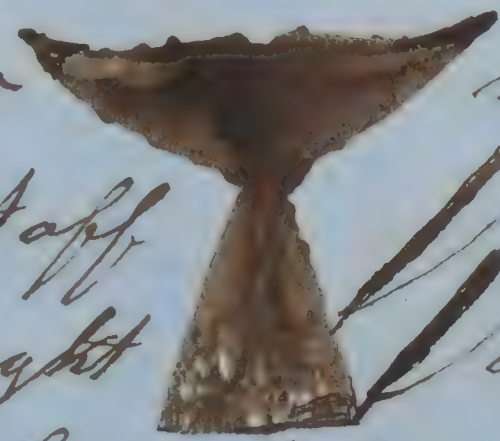
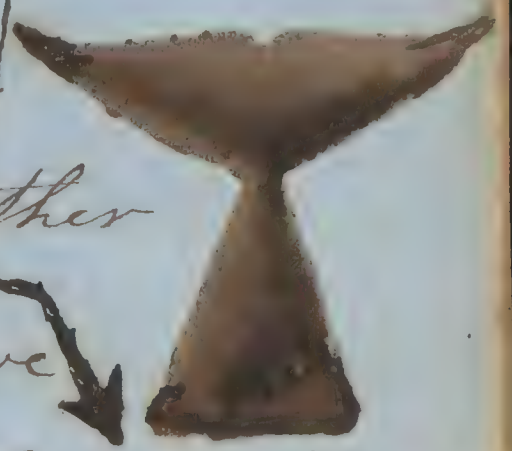
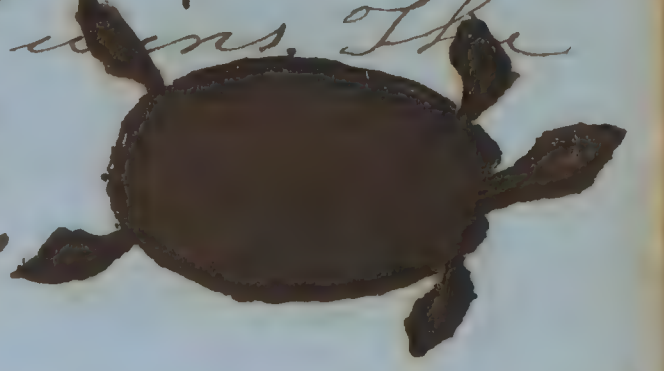


# All Sorts of Messes, August 1857. 98

But, it did me good, so let them laugh that will. The Captain Brought another fine Green Turtle to day, & they are Pronounced delicious by all hands, who have had it Good Tucker of the one they caught yesterday. I was visited this evening by an old shipmate who used to steer me on a former Voyage & who now belongs to the Brig Amelia. He staid a couple of hours & we had some Pleasant chat about Old Times. His name was John Foster, & he was sorry to see me sick.

Tuesday 25<sup>th</sup> I began to feel myself getting better to day & could almost roll over on my side. The Boats were off all day & the Waist Boat fastened once but the Iron drew again, they also darted at another but did not hit him. The Cook & Steward have been exerting all their skill on Green Turtle and have turned out some fine Messes that all hands are Pleased With.

Wednesday 26<sup>th</sup> Dead Calm, Plenty of Whales round. At 8 A.M. The Boats lowered & in half an hour the Old Starboard Boat was again fast to a small sized Bull, in half an hour & he sank but, as one Boat could not hold him up, they went to towing, until they got hold of a line we had laid out astern with a Barrel fast to it. Two Boats then came on board & we hauled him to the Ship & got him fluked by 2 P.M. They then got dinner & lowered again. About 4 P.M. the Waist Boat struck a Large Cow that was in company with two Bulls, & she put off with him until by 6 P.M. he was out of sight of every thing so he cut and letting his sail got Back to the Ship by 9 P.M. he lost two harpoons & about 20 fathoms of line with her. I felt quite smart to day & rolled over on my side once.

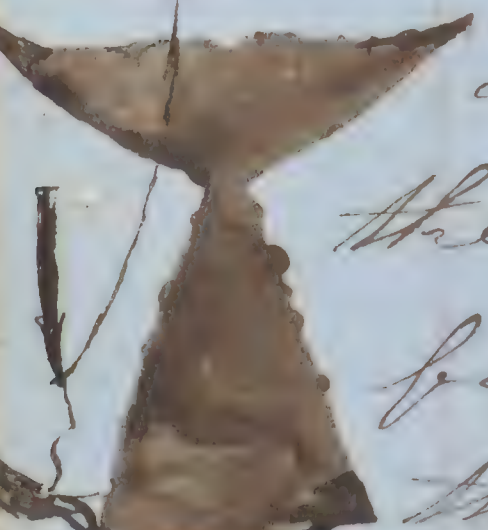




## 24 On Deck Again, August 1857.

Thursday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine. The Steward brought me my Journal this morning & I can make out to write a few lines to a time & then Rest to Sleep. They commenced butting in at 7 A.M. & got done by 11. After dinner they dressed me & took me on deck for an hour. And as I laid on the Rotator fan, aft by the Taffrail, The crew all came one to a time, to speak a few words to me, and Congratulate with me on my hopes of a Speedy Recovery. No one but those who have been confined below a ships decks, for a long Period, can imagine how happy I felt while gazing on the Blue sky, or over the Taffrail on the dark rolling waters of the Coast of Africa. They commenced Bailing on the Whale at 5 P.M. & set the Watch at 7 P.M. They caught another Turtle yesterday which they made into excellent Soups & Stews to day.

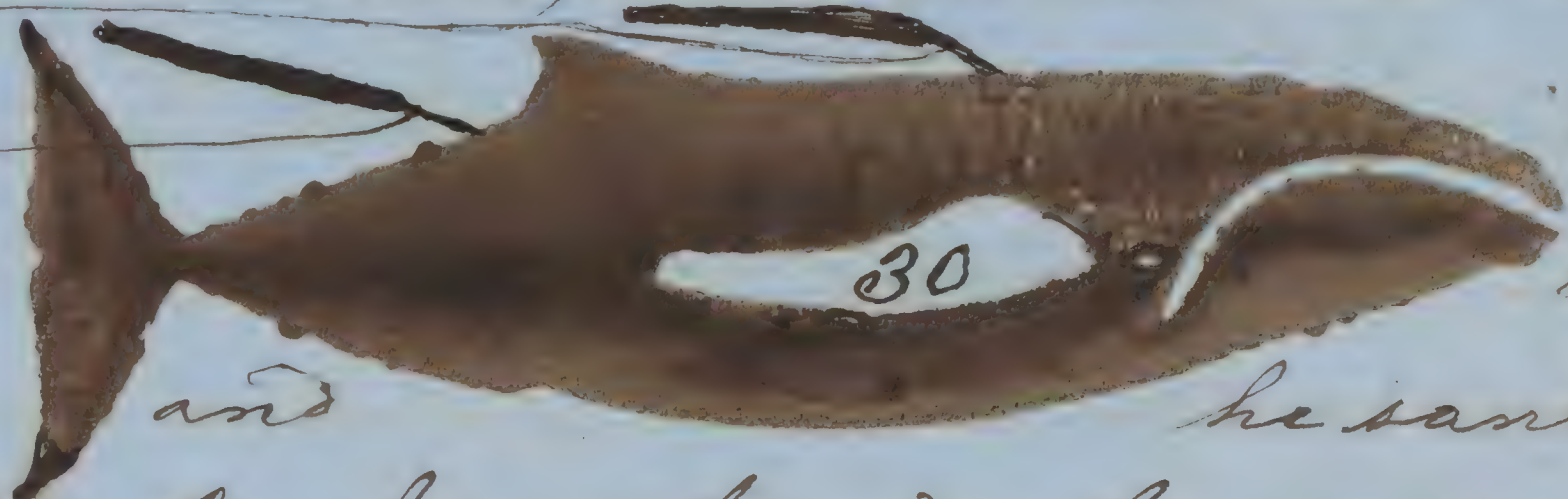


Friday 28<sup>th</sup> Bailing. Stowed down 54 Barrels more oil. Finished Bailing & our whale Proving a dogkin turned out but 15 barrels. I had another airing on deck to day. Saturday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine. Lowered all three Boats after Breakfast. At 9 A.M., the Waist Boat fastened to a large Cow who lounded & parted the line.  walking off with two Harpoons & some line. At one P.M., the Lapboard Boat struck another large whale who was on him about two hours & the Torgul Iron drew out and away he went also. About  the Starboard boat struck one and forgetting to throw his Box line  overboard, the line got foul, & the Whale going down, took the Boat with him. Leaving them all in the drink. He soon got clear again & came up, so they all swam to her, until the other Boats came to their assistance, They then Bailed her out & found the Gunwale & blumy cleat both broke, the Bow Thwart broke, The Boat Basket



# Whaling & Fishing, August 1857. 95

& some Kippers gone, & the Captains right Thumb sprained. besides the loss of two Harpoons, A short warp, & some line in the Whale. They then all came onboard, giving it up for a Bad job this day. Sunday 30<sup>th</sup> Chasing whales all day without success. I spent nearly all day on deck. Monday 31<sup>st</sup> Up Anchor, & then lowered two boats who were chasing until 3 P.M., when the Waist Boat struck an Old Bull who ran to windward like a



horse. They got him dead and he sank by 6 P.M., by 8 P.M. we had the Bark anchored alongside of him so we fished the sails got supper & set Anchor Watches. Bouse, Coffin, Carpenter & Cook off duty & the two latter not expected to live. I can just begin to crawl about without assistance & I get in the boats now when they are onboard & catch Fresh Fish for all hands to eat. Tuesday 1<sup>st</sup> Rather squally. did not lower until after dinner but could not strike. At 4 P.M. returned again. Wednesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Hauled the Whale up & got him cut in by 12 O'clock. By six O'clock they had him cut up so got supper, set the Watches, and commenced Boiling. Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> Boiling. Lowered two Boats to day without success. Spoke the W & S Thomas's Boats to day & they haled 6 Whales. Finished Boiling at 3 P.M. and he turned out about 30 Barrels.

Friday 4<sup>th</sup> Got our anchor & standing close in shore came to anchor again about 10 A.M. we then lowered and gave chase to some whales until 2 P.M. when they came onboard & did not lower any more to day I am improving rapidly now Thank God, and can walk nearly upright again, for a few minutes at a time. Friday 5<sup>th</sup> Thick cloudy weather with light showers. Got Breakfast & They lowered away again. About 9 A.M.



# 96 Slashing Away At Them

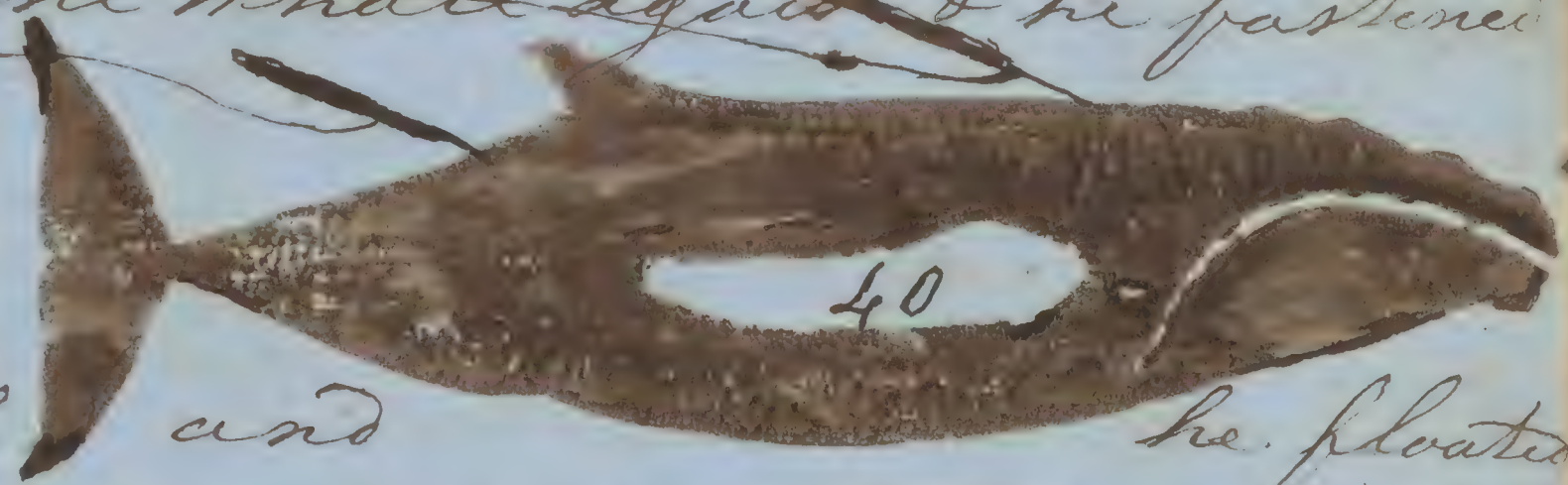
The Thairt Boat struck a large calf, The ather Boats soon came up & struck the cow which they soon killed and she sank, The line from the calf being foul of the bow he parted it & walked off with two Irons and thirty fathoms of line. Two Boats came & got the ship under weigh & by three O'clock P.M., we were anchored by her. The Samuel Thomas & W. was close to us & the Captain visited the former & staid until 9 P.M., they had taken nine Whales that made short of 300 Bbls between them. Sunday 6<sup>th</sup> At 10 A.M. Lowered for a cow & calf, the Starboard boat went on & struck the calf the ather Boats soon came up & struck the old cow, who they got spouting blood, when the calf dying and having the bows line foul of him she parted it & went off, leaving her spoutings again, and they chased her until 5 P.M., without success. So they gave her up & came on board; The Starboard Boat stove & three oars broke by the cow. At 7 P.M. our Whale came up, so they fluked her, & turned in. Monday 7<sup>th</sup> Commenced cutting at daylight, and got through by one P.M.; At 4 P.M. commenced to boil & Boiled until Midnight only getting two Bbls of Oil She is a large Whale but, is sucked down by the calf & only about two inches of the Blubber next the Black skin has got any Oil in it, the rest being full of water So we will have to split it before Boiling it. we therefore cooled down. Tuesday 8<sup>th</sup> Chasing Whales Starboard Boat fastened once & the Iron drew again. Chased til Sundown, when they came on board, got supper



# The Last Thump Back, Sept 1857. 97

and set Boats crew Matches, so as to Split our Last Whales Blubber without losing any time. I caught about fifty fine Perch to day while the Boats were away, that are Beautiful Eating. Wednesday 9<sup>th</sup> Very Hazy. We began on our Whale again this Morning & finished Boiling by 11 P.M., getting but 22 Barrels of oil from her. Had two Boats down all day, But, did nothing. Captain Briggs, & Captain Babcock, paid us a visit to day, & we let Capt<sup>n</sup> Briggs have 100 Pounds of Tobacco, 100 Lbs of Sugar, a Bag of Pepper & a New Steering Bar. We Gammed until 9 in the evening. Thursday 10<sup>th</sup> Rather Squally. After Breakfast lowered away & Starboard boat got on, But, she missed him. About one P.M., got on to the same Whale again & he fastened with the Second Iron.

he ran them about 10 miles before they turned him up and he floated two Boats came on board and got the ship under weigh, & it was eleven o'clock at night before we got him fleuked alongside, the Ship anchored, sails furled, Lucifer lit, & Ready to turn in. Friday 11<sup>th</sup> Turned out at day light & commenced cutting in. We got him all in & cut into Horse pieces by 5 P.M., At 7 P.M., set the Matches & started the Works. Saturday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine & Whales all around us, But, we are boiling & stowing down & would not lower for them. Stowed down 45 Barrels. Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & lots of Whales, Finished Boiling & he turned up 40 Barrels. Stowed down 23 barrels & spent the Remainder of the day shifting over Bread, and Flour forward of Fore Hatchway. Monday 14<sup>th</sup> commenced stowing in the Fore Hold & stowed about 40 Barrels. I caught a fine lot of snappers to day that would average four Pounds each. There was





## 98 Last Chase For Hump Backs.

about 120 of them & we salted down 2 Barrels of them besides keeping enough to eat fresh for it bawle of days. I feel quite smart to day & shall go down in the Boat next time she lowers. Tuesday 15<sup>th</sup> The up Anchors, and shifting farther in shore, anchored again. I turned to, to day, though far from being it well than. We chased Whales from 9<sup>h</sup> to 11<sup>h</sup>, until one P.M., & went not lower any more. Wednesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. Chasing Whales all day without success. The Cook & Talbott very low indeed, & Coffin still off duty. Thursday 17<sup>th</sup> The same, with the exception of hazy morn<sup>ing</sup>. Friday 18<sup>th</sup> Lowered away again this <sup>morning</sup> with two boats. The Captain of The S. J. (Briggs) came aboard of us to day & bought of our Captain, 12 Tin Cans, 9 Spoons, 12 Pack Knives, Two Pounds of Thread, 15 Durya cre, Frocks & Pants, 24 Striped Cotton Shirts, Seven Pairs of Shoes, Two Gallons of New England Rum, & we gave him a lot of salt Fish & some spices. They had taken 14 Whales between them that made them all totle about 400 Barrels of Oil. At 4 P.M., we lowered from all three ships for a large Cow with a small calf. Either ships Boats could have got her if they had been alone, But it was, if I cant, you shant, and they all came aboard at sundown as rich as when they lowered, And our Captain says, he will lower for no more; that he has got about as much Hump Back Oil as he wants to take, Anyhow. Saturday 19<sup>th</sup> Rather Squally. We hove up our Anchor at daylight, and saluting the other two ships; the squared away & blafed all sail on her. We ran down to the Mouth of the River Congo where there was three of War Steamers & one Frigate laying to Anchor on the Lookout for Slavers. We sent the Mate onboard



# Port Habenda Africa. 99

the Frigate to enquire about the River, And they told him that the current was so strong, that they would not advise the Captain to attempt it. But, if he run 35 miles farther North he would find Habenda where he could get Wood, Water, and Probably other Recruits. So we squared away again & by Sundown was to anchor at Habenda. We found there the Merchant Banks Petrel Capt<sup>n</sup> Bishop & the W<sup>y</sup> Lewis Capt<sup>n</sup> Fredell both of New York & both after Slaves, and two Men of War Launches laying close to, & watching them. Also the Old Louisa Sears, who had taken 14 Whales that made her 350 Bbls. She had struck altogether over 40. The three Captains came aboard of us, as well as the Officers of the two Launches & was having a fine time until 9 P<sup>m</sup>, when they all left & we turned in for the Night. (For Description of Habenda & the Inhabitants see Pages 367) Sunday 20<sup>th</sup> All hands on Liberty. But, the Starboard Boats crew, we were kept for to Pull all the Skiffers about, from Ship to Ship, and Ship to Shore the whole day long. And we Paid a Visit to a Baracoon kept by an Old Portoguese, who was called Don Pedro, of which I will speak on Page 368. At Sundown all our Men came aboard & some pretty Merry. Monday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine. I with my boats crew were kept to Pull the whole raft of Skiffers round to day while the Rest of the Ships Company washed the Ship down Low & aloft, & Fore & Aft. While a Boats crew of Natives got off a Raft of water & hoisted it in for us. The Petrel got off to night with 550 Negroes in spite of the Vigilance of the two guard Boats. Tuesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Part of the crew Washed the Vessel outside & the Rest got some Provisions shifted out of casks, to make another raft for water, which the



# 100 Port Kalenda Africa, Sept<sup>r</sup> 1857.

Crewmen got off & hoisted in by 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., we then knocked off.  
Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup> I was on shore with the Captain trading for wood, for which we paid two fathoms of Calath for 220 sticks & it took 800 sticks to make a Boat Load. We got four Boat Loads. I also bought two Bushels of hard shell Clams for 40 cakes of hard Bread. The <sup>W<sup>g</sup></sup> Lewis sailed to day, & lost her Best Bower & 20 fathoms of cable. Cook very sick.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> Finished getting off our Wood & Water & got it all stowed away to day. The Captain bought Three Grey Parrots to day & two she Monkeys for about a Bolt of Cotton Cloth the last that we have got. Myself & Jimmy also bought a Parrot each. The Captain sold about a Barrel of Beef & Pork, a Large Bag of Bread, & one also of Flour, a Pail of Butter & several other little notions, to a Rick Darkey that came onboard to day for Cash. And he bought 300 Oranges & one Bunch of Bananas which he divided amongst all hands. The First Fruit I have seen here.  
Friday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine, Starboard watch on Liberty. I rambled over the Place & amongst the Huts until I was tired out in company with Patterson. Towards Sundown we met with a Man named Rich, who had been Captain of a Slave at few weeks since, that was taken by the Portuguese while he with a Boat's crew escaped to the shore where they have managed to elude all Pursuit. We were pleasant<sup>ly</sup> chatting away, about 7 P.M., when in Rushed our Noble Captain with about 50 Armed Negroes & the King Parkaba with him & Presenting a Revolver Ordered us onboard the Ship. A Scene then ensued for a Revival of which you must turn to Page 372) for I have not time now.

Saturday 26<sup>th</sup> Every thing very quiet not a word about the Row yesterday. One of the men from forward reported that the Cook David Beauchamp was dead, we went forward & found it was true. So we had him brought on deck, and



## Death And Burial Of Our Cook. 101

laid on the Main Hatch. After Breakfast the Larboard watch went on Liberty. The Captain then had some of the Poorest Boards he could find got out, and we built him a square Box into which they put him, clothes & all just as he died & the second Mate took him onshore where the Niggers dug a Hole about three foot deep & they dumped him in as they would a dead cat, without a single Prayer or the Sympathy of a single friend. Oh God! have Mercy on his soul! For our Captain had none on his Body while it was with us; & the poor fellow died a Horrid Death without attendance or assistance of any kind. And our Christian Captain, when told of his Death Exclaimed I am David glad of it! & I firmly Believe it. for several times since we have been saying here, I have seen him go to the Forecastle Scuttle & sing out, Hey! you old Nigger aint you dead yet! come hurry up and Die for I want to Bury you before we leave here & save Cunnage. The crew all say, that the Captain came Forward last Night & gave him a dose of something, which as soon as he had swallowed it, he exclaimed, Oh My God! And laying back on his Pillow, never uttered a single Sentence afterwards. This Disease was Gravel in the Bladder. At Sundown the watch all came off But one, & pretty well Brozy. Sunday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine, We got under weigh at daylight, and by 8 A.M. we were clear of the Land & everything secure With a Recruit of, One Fowl, Two small Pigs, five Parrots and two Monkeys, besides what Wood & Water we got. & we found that they had stole our Crowbar & all our chain Hooks, besides a number of the Mens & officers clothes & other things. we set Sea watches & went at it Beating up the Coast, Paying no attention to the Hump Backs, which were fairly Blowing us out of Water & Cows with Cal. s at that. Night fine, Wind West.



## 102 Bowed For Loando, Oct 1857.

Monday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. Beating up the Coast.

Tuesday 29<sup>th</sup> The same. Saw the old Sam Thomas with a Whale alongside. We saw the U.S. Sloop of War Dale and we sent the Mate onboard of her, for their Doctor who came onboard of us, and after examining both Rouse & Talbott, privately informed the Captain, that he did not think either of them would live long, and advised the Captain to go to St Paul de Loando, and put them in the Hospital; which he promised him he would. We then took him onboard again & he sent us some medicine for them, & we made them a present of a Harpoon to catch Porpoises with.

Wednesday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine, Beating to windward. Broached a Pigst can of Mutton to make Broth for the Sick men which is the first Nourishing food he has ever given them.

Thursday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of October. Still Beating saw the Dale & several other Vessels & the Water alive with Humpbacks. At Sundown abreast of Ambriz Bay.

Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> The same. At Sundown, 26 miles from Loando.

Saturday 3<sup>rd</sup> We were close to the Harbour at daylight. after Breakfast the Captain went on shore, at 4 P.M. he came off again with a Pilot, and we beat up to the Anchorage where we arrived about 6 P.M. & anchored in 15 fathoms water 3 miles from the landing. We were visited by the Custom House Boat, who left two Officers onboard to guard against Smuggling. (See comments upon St Paul de Loando Page 244)

There was plenty of other merchantmen here of all Nations but, only one Whaler The Marion, Davis, of N Bedford 24 Months 900 of Sperm, & we had Agam until 9 P.M.

Sunday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine. The Captain came off this morning bringing a quarter of Fresh Beef & some Potatoes and told the Starboard Watch to get ready to go on



# St Paul De Loando, Africa. 103

Liberty. When all was ready he gave the Boatsteerers one Dollar each & the other 50 cents. with Orders to be off at Sundown; We landed about 10<sup>h</sup> at night, and for what I observed of the Place (See Loando Page 247) we all got off at the appointed time & some pretty well Buzzy. Monday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. Larboard Watch on Liberty, and our Watch Painted one side of the Ship, and then Broke out the Clof Cask, to let some of the American Merchants have some clothes they stood in need of; on the Sly, so as to get clear of the duty on them. The Watch all got off at Sundown Happy as Lords! The discharged our Carpenter William J. Tullott, a victim of Capt<sup>n</sup> Russell's cruelty, and our Shipkeeper Herriek Rouse, to day, & both went to the Hospital. Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, our Watch on Liberty. I visited my Shipmates in the Hospital, who were as comfortable as could be expected, & spent the Remainder of the day, Rambling about, when I could, for the intolerable heat, until Sundown when we all came on board according to orders, and most of them Happy. I drew one dollar & fifty cents to day. Wednesday 7<sup>th</sup> Larboard Watch on Liberty. The Captain came off to day, complaining of the Coast fever; But, from appearances, I think he is affected by a late spree last night, having got a little Inebriated, Not Drunk! Oh no! It is only sailors that do that. At Sundown he went onshore again after having a good sleep. All came off at Sundown, But, C. Jackson who has deserted. Thursday 8<sup>th</sup> Finished Painting & Mending Sails. Several of the crew Bad, with a touch of our Captains Fever. Friday 9<sup>th</sup> All hands well. Caught Jackson, brought him on board & put him in Irons. The Dale gave a Farewell party to all the Americans in the Harbour last night, But, we were not allowed to go.



104 Leaving St Paul De Loando, October.  
Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> Blowing fresh. Got off a few Potatoes Making  
in all, four Barrels since we have been here, Half a Barrel  
of Onions, Two quarters of Beef, making Six quarters altog-  
ether, 2 Small Pigs, Half a Bushel of Peanuts, four Canary  
Birds, Three other Long tailed Birds & Sundry New Boots,  
Shoes, Kines, &c belonging to the Captain, But all Recruits  
Sunday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine. Our two Portuguese Seamen Manuel &  
Antonio that we shipped at this Place, (& reshipped John  
Platt at the same time as Cook) came on board, & having got  
through with all the Cerimonies you are obliged to go  
through with at this Port, we got under weigh, & stood out  
of the harbour in company with the Marion, passing  
the U.S. Frigate Cumberland who was bound in. As  
soon as the Pilot left us, we hauled on the wind to the  
Westward, having the Wind from S.W. Secured the anchors  
Stowed the cables, Washed decks, got Supper, & set the Watches.  
Monday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine. After Breakfast the Captain took  
Jackson out of Irons, & seizing him up by the wrists to  
the Beamer overhead, triced his left leg up to the thirzen  
pipe Rail, so as to leave him hanging by his wrists, and  
resting on the tips of his Right Toes. In this Painful Posi-  
tion, he kept him, notwithstanding he Begged & Prayed  
for mercy, until five minutes before eleven o'clock when  
he fainted away, so he took him down & when he came to,  
sent him forward, with orders to the Mate to keep him  
on deck for one Week. Employed fitting our Boats up again.  
Tuesday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine. Beating up the Coast & I find we  
are now Bound for a Place up the Coast, that is  
called Equimina. It lies in Lat<sup>d</sup> 13:05 Miles South  
and Long<sup>d</sup> 13° 09' East. It is supposed we can get Potatoes there  
Monday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine as usual. from the 13<sup>th</sup> up to  
this day we have been Beating up the Coast; most  
of the time in sight of Land, & Plenty of Hummock



Clapham Bay, Or Equimina, 1857. 105

Whales in sight every day. We stood no Mast heads, as we do not want Fl Backs, & no Sperm Whales come in here on soundings. Little or nothing doing, excepting the Old Man and the Carpenter, who were busy making Bird cages, & when they got them finished they built another story on the Cooks galley, where he could keep his Pots & dishes from being exposed to the inclement weather we expect to have sometime during the Voyage. At 1<sup>h</sup> P.M., to day, we were about 15 Miles from Land, & according to our calculations nearly Opposite Equimina; so we cleared away the Starboard Boat & pulled in to the Land, & then followed the Coast down until we found the Place (See Page 377) We found upon enquiry by means of an interpreter that we could obtain Potatoes, & some other vegetables here if we would exchange other articles for them, as he did not want Money; so at sundown we shoved off, and they put in the Boat 15 Large Cabbages, Six Large Pumpkins, A Bunch of Turnips, Two dozen fine Fresh Fish, some nice Green Lemons, and A Fine Bunch of sweet smelling Roses. We got on board by 8 P.M., & laid off & on all night.

Tuesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine. We stood in close, & about 9 A.M., two Boats came off to us, bringing 2160 Pounds of Potatoes, half sweet & half Irish. We let him have 30 fathoms of A small cable, A Grindstone, 100 Pounds of Bread 100 Pounds of Pork, 100 Pounds of Beef, One Large Box of Soap, One Cheese, One Oak Plank, half A dozen Table knives & Forks, half A dozen Tea Spoons, One dozen Table Spoons, Two Bags of Cut Nails, Two Iron Hats, One dozen of Plates & Two Large Platters. With this lot they went on shore taking our Captain, with them. At One P.M., A signal being made, I was sent in with the Boat, and the Captain sent me off again for, Two dozen Calico Shirts, three whole Pieces of Calico, Five




# 106. Leaving Equimira, Nov<sup>r</sup> 1857.

Dozen of Sheath Knives, One Dozen of Jack Knives, Two Axes, Two Hatchets, One Whaling Lance, Two <sup>spotted</sup> Coils of Manila Whale Line, One Lance Warp, Two Spade Poles, Two Papers of Copper Tacks, A Lot of Chisels, Files &c, One Large Earthen Pitcher & Two more Straw Hats. At Sundown we shoved off, having 208 Pounds more of Potatoes, One dozen cabbages, A Lot of Lemons & Sugar Canes A Present to the Boats crew, Half A Dozen Pine Apple Plants for St Helena, And A Black Bullock which we took in Tow astern of The Boat. We got to the Old Bark about 8 P.M., And the Captain abused The Mate before all hands, in A most scandalous manner, for being so far off with the Kessel; Still she was exactly in the same Place where I heard the Captain give Orders to keep her. He called The Mate A Son of A Bitch! A Damd Fool & A Liar! And told him he had A good notion to throw him overboard; The Mate only told him, he might get another Mate when the Kessel went to St Helena for that he should leave him. We then Filled away & made all sail to the Westward. Of all the The Things we took onshore, we only brought back 18 Calico Shirts, six Jack Knives, & by the King ling of The Captains Pockets, A goodly quantity of Specie.

Wednesday 28<sup>th</sup> Killed the Bullock, P.M., strong breezes split the Flying Jib, Saw Plenty Humpbacks. 29<sup>th</sup> Fine, bent A New Flying Jib, standing to westward, saw plenty H.B.s.

Friday 30<sup>th</sup> very strong winds, took in the light sails, saw Plenty Black Fish & Humpers. 31<sup>st</sup> Fine clear sky but blowing A gale of Wind. By Sundown we had her under Close Reefed topsails, having split the Jib all to Pieces,

Sunday 1<sup>st</sup> day of November, Still Blowing heavy. I struck & saved A fine Porpoise  (3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & strong winds, I drew four Pounds of Tobacco, at 35 cents Per Pound.



Cruising On The Meridian, Dec<sup>r</sup> 1857. 107  
3<sup>rd</sup> 4<sup>th</sup> 5<sup>th</sup> 6<sup>th</sup> & 7<sup>th</sup> Weather much the same. Overhauled  
our cabbages to day & out of the whole 15 we got enough for  
one sheep & that scarcely eatable. Lat<sup>n</sup> 19:47 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 2:59 East  
Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> A Fine day. My 35<sup>th</sup> Birth day, & I am in good  
health, with plenty to eat, Drink & Wear, Thank God for it.  
9<sup>th</sup> 10<sup>th</sup> & 11<sup>th</sup> Fine, Saw Nothing But a few Merchant Vessels.  
Lost one year out to day, & have not seen a Sperm Whale as yet.  
Lat<sup>n</sup> 23:52 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 1:48 East. From the 11<sup>th</sup> to the 19<sup>th</sup>  
Fine & Light winds. We were employed, Painting the Boats  
inside & out & refitting them throughout. Saw plenty of  
Fin backs Grampuses & Porpoises. Lat<sup>n</sup> 26:55 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 2:42 East.  
Standing Boats crew watches, & shortening sail nights since the 16<sup>th</sup>.  
From the 19<sup>th</sup> until the 28 Fine weather with all. doing  
little or Nothing But, keeping a good lookout & working  
the Vessel to the Southward; seeing plenty of Porpoises,  
Grampuses, Albatross Cape Pigeons & Fin backs, the latter  
of which completely surrounded us to day, & the Second  
Mate threw a lance into one of them, who bled so freely  
that I think it will cause his death. Our Bow took the Boar.  
Lat<sup>n</sup> 29:48 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 00:20 East. 29<sup>th</sup> & 30<sup>th</sup> Strong Breezes  
Saw lots of Hump Back Whales; going to the South  
ward very quick in Pods of five or six together. Lat<sup>n</sup>  
Lat<sup>n</sup> 31:16 S. Long<sup>e</sup> Long<sup>e</sup> 00:41 East. & a fine night closed the month.  
Tuesday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of December, commenced with a Gale  
of wind from South, which increased until we had her  
under close reefed Topsails, when we bore away N<sup>W</sup> &  
and let her scoot, passing plenty of Hump Back Whales  
all going about S, S E. Lat<sup>n</sup> 31:22 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 00:39 West.  
Towards Sundown it moderated & we hove to for the night.  
From the 2<sup>nd</sup> until the 10<sup>th</sup> we had fine weather, and  
the most we have been doing, is making fancy Barrot  
Cages. Saw Humpbacks going S, S E, every day. We being  
on the Meridian in about the Lat<sup>n</sup> of 31 & 32 South.



# 108 Cruising, East of The Meridian.

Thursday 10<sup>th</sup> commenced Fine, But before 10 A.M., it blew a Gale from S.W., accompanied by rain, & we put her under close reefed topsails. P.M., it cleared off but still blew a Gale. & the Old Man saw what he called a Large Sperm Whale. Friday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine again, had Calm to hauler to day, which makes the fourth Friday running. Three Cents of Calms, for all hands fore & aft, & the Meat stoped for the day.

Late 33:17 South. Long: 01:00 East. And we are going no farther South.

Saturday & Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine, Edging to Eastward saw plenty of H.B.s.

Monday 14<sup>th</sup> saw a Sail on the Lee Beam the first we have seen in 34 days. Ran down close to her when it died away Calm sent a Boat on board, & found it was The New Bark England, of Stockton, in England, Captain Pearson. She was 72 days from home, with a Cargo of Coals, & bound for Cape Town Cape of Good hope; he had a crew of 27 Men all Tote, and his Wife also. They had no Papers, But, gave the Mate a Fine lot of Books, which is quite a Treat as our reading Matter was quite exhausted. From them then we also obtained the information of the Ship's Breaking out in India. P.M., we got a Light Breeze & by Sundown were some distance apart, So we have to as usual. Late 31:50 S. Long: 2:22 East.

Tuesday 15 & Wednesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine, Edging to the Northward & Eastward.

Thursday 17<sup>th</sup> Heavy Weather, close Reefed the Topsails.

Friday 18<sup>th</sup> the Same, with Rain, working Easterly saw some Humpbacks. From Saturday 19<sup>th</sup> Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup>

Fine, Working to Northward & Eastward. Have got out of the Track of Hump backs having seen none since the 21<sup>st</sup> & having seen them every day this Month before all going about S.S.W. Late today, 28:33 South. Long: 7:09 East.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine, Killed a Pig & gave them half forward.

Friday 25<sup>th</sup> Christmas Day, Blowing a Gale of Wind. Roast Pig for Dinner, & Broached the only two Bottles of Wine in the Ship. Passed a Topgallant Yard & another



# Running North Again, Jan<sup>r</sup> 1858. 109

Piece of some Vessels Spar. Lat<sup>e</sup> 26:32<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 8:42<sup>m</sup> East.  
From Christmas up to the 31<sup>st</sup> Fine & strong winds, saw nothing  
still working North. Yesterday, me & the Captain had some  
words about my taking the Latitude & Longitude off of the  
slate, so he rubs it out now. on the 28 the Lat<sup>e</sup> was 29:47<sup>m</sup> South.  
Finished his Barrot Cage today, after being to work on it 24 days.

Friday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of January 1858. dirty drizzling Rain.

Saturday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. Sunday 3<sup>rd</sup> The same, saw Pl<sup>ty</sup> of  
Porpoises & small fish I caught a  
Fine Dolphin. Lat<sup>e</sup> 13:45 S.

Friday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine. We are now running over what is  
called the M<sup>ye</sup> Ground; We were today in Lat<sup>e</sup> 9:31<sup>m</sup> South  
& Long<sup>e</sup> 9:27<sup>m</sup> East. since Sunday we have had good weather  
but, saw nothing but Porpoises, small fish &c which we see  
now every day. We opened our cask of Cheese which we  
found nearly all rotten, What was good, we put away  
for another Rat. Out of it large cask full we have not had  
above six to eat the whole Voyage Saturday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & c.  
Sunday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine. Spoke Bark thattafissett, Manchester  
of Westport, 5 1/2 Months, 25 barrels of Sperm Oil. We gammed  
until 9 P.M., got three letters for our ship but, none for  
Poor Me! We also got some late Papers & a Shipping List.

Monday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine, saw nothing. Lat 9:30<sup>m</sup> South. Long 9:00<sup>m</sup> E.

Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine. A School of Algarine Blackfish came  
Round the Ship & at 9 A.M., the Mate struck one out of the  
starboard boat,

lowered the starboard

before the Mate's Iron drew, & we soon killed him, When

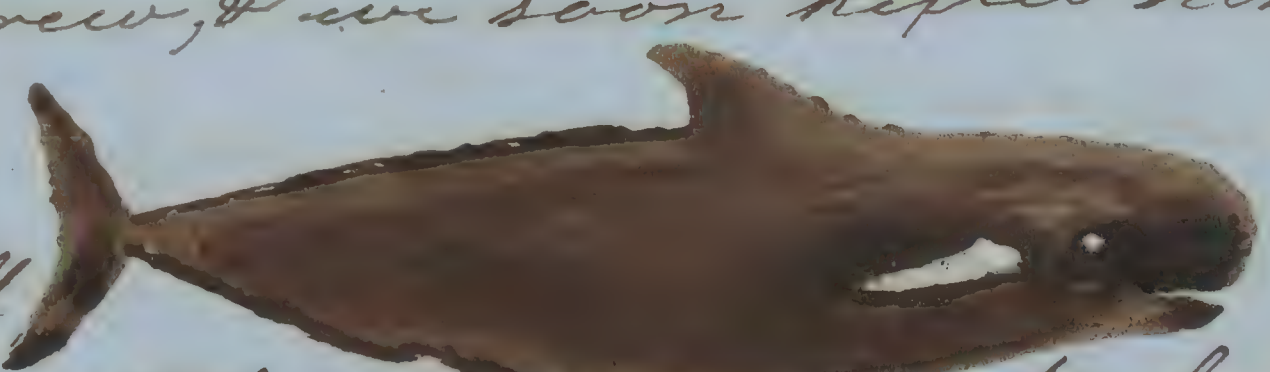
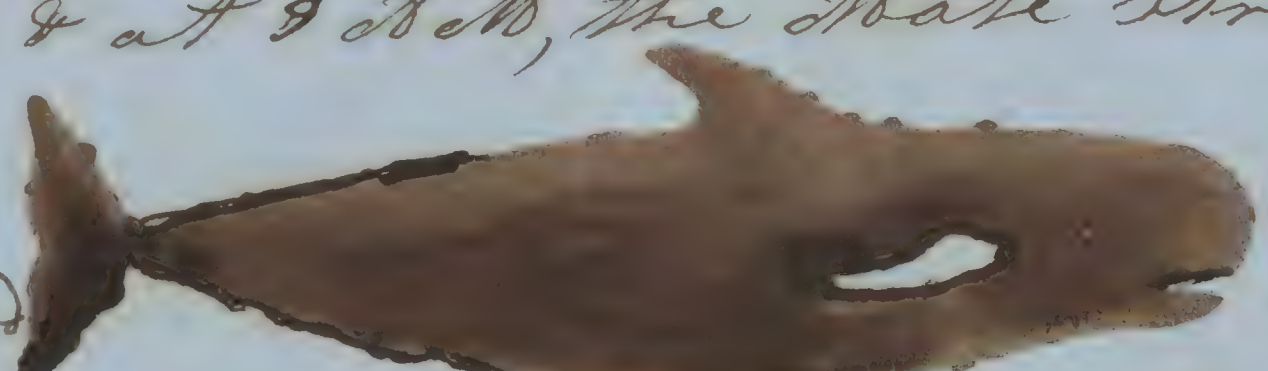
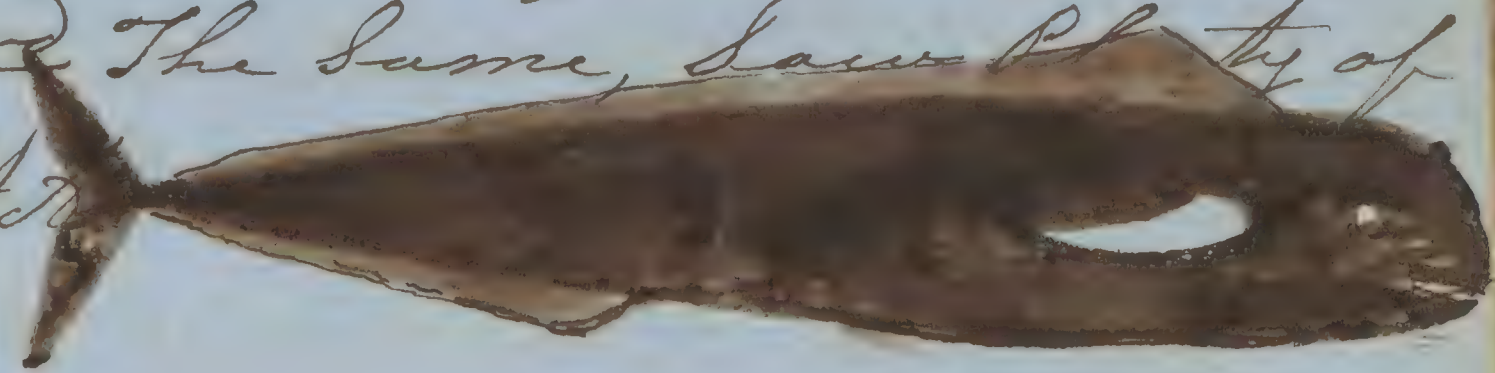
I struck another one, & after

killing him, I struck still another

but the Iron drew again. We took them to

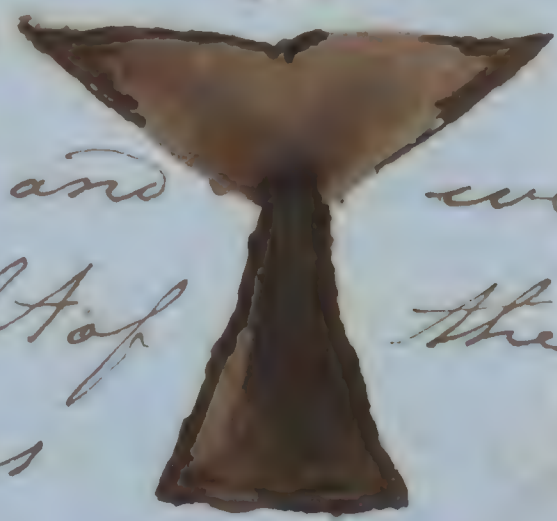
the Vessel, & went in chase again. Waist Boat darted two

or three times without success, saw nothing more today,





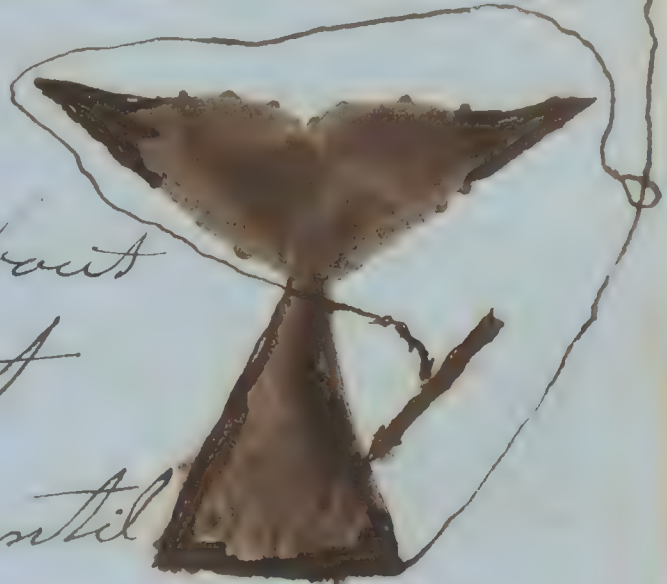
110 Our First Trial, At Capturing  
Wednesday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine, Saw some more Algarines to day, but, they  
were going too fast. Lat<sup>o</sup> 9:18 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 8:38 East.  
Thursday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine, Started the works & boiled out our  
two fish & they made about 10 Barrels. At 11<sup>th</sup>, we spoke  
The Kate Cary, Trippe, of Westport, 6 Months 5 Barrels of  
Sperm Oil. At 3 P.M., spoke the Mattapoissett again, and  
all the Captains coming here we gammed until 9 P.M.  
Friday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. Saw another Stranger & we spoke  
her, she proved to be the Bark Fleoka, Grinnell of  
Westport, 4 Months out clean. All four Vessels then  
came Together, & we had a General Gam until Sun  
down when we parted, standing different Courses.  
Saturday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine, Gammed all day with the Fleoka  
Exchanging Boats crews; Let her have five gallons of  
oil for burning as they had none. At 5 P.M., we parted.  
Sunday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine, Running before the wind. Saw some  
Algarines & one sail to day. Lat<sup>o</sup> 7:30 South.  
Monday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine. Saw Plenty of Small fish. the K.C.,  
& Fleoka in sight. the latter sent a Spade she had promised  
us onboard after dark. Still Running before it, day times.  
Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine. Saw two of the Strangers astern.  
Kept off before it again. Lat<sup>o</sup> 6:30 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 9:31 East.  
Wednesday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine. Leaving her off before it again.  
No sails in sight. At 3 P.M., John & Wing, raised  
white Water on the Starboard Beam; We hauled  
up for it, and soon made out a Large Body of  
Sperm Whales going quick to windward  
we got, the Boats ready as soon as we could and we  
chased until Sundown, nearly out of sight of the  
Ship to Windward & the highest we got was  
about 3 ships length of them. We then took sails &  
Carrs but did not get back to the before half past  
eight o'clock P.M.; When our Darned fool of a Skipper





A Sperm Whale. January 1858. 111

God forgive me! Insisted that the Whales were working to Leeward, and kept off two Points, W by North, all Night. although we had chased the Whales 10 or 12 miles dead to windward of the Ship & they had seen nothing to start them. We had very light winds all Night. The Whales as nigh as I could Judge, were going about W, S W. close on the wind, at Sundown. Lat:  $5^{\circ} 23'$  South. Long:  $9^{\circ} 35'$  East. Thursday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & good breeze. Luffed to the Wind at daylight & commenced beating to windward. Saw the Athapocsett on our Lee. At 10 minutes of 12. James Patterson Raised A Large body of Sperm Whales, four points on the Weather (Starboard) Bow going on the wind to the Southward and Westward. We stood on until about 2<sup>h</sup> P M, & brought the Whales 4 Points on the Starboard quarter 5 Miles off. We then tacked Ship again. At half Past three P M, we had them on our Port (Weather) Beam, three Miles off. We then lowered the Larboard & Waist Boats, & went in Pursuit. About half past four P M, the Larboard Boat came up with them & struck A Large bow Whale, who hove to as well as the School, until he had taken three or four Sets on her, when off she started, & some how or another he cut the Line with his Lance, & she walked off with both Harpoons and about 25 fathoms of Line, before the waist Boat could get to her. They did not get onboard until dusk, and the Captain was in A Terrible Passion, for it appears by the Boats crew's account, that he not only lost his own Whale, But, when the Whales hove to the Boatsteerer wanted him to drag some more But, he would not. And the Captain told him, he should never have A chance to Loose another Whale for this Kessel. Lat:  $5^{\circ} 12'$  South. Long:  $9^{\circ} 40'$  East. Night fine & good breeze.





## 112 Small Fish, And A Small Row.

Wednesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine. For the last five days we have been cruising close to where we saw the Whales, But saw nothing but small fish, Yellow Tail, Dolphin, Bonita & Albacor, which we can catch any moment by throwing a hook over, baited with a piece of White Rag. We caught one Albacor to day that weighed 178 Pounds, & salted him. Lat: 5:24 South. Long: 8:14 East. From the 27<sup>th</sup> until the First of February saw nothing but a couple of Whalers, which we did not speak. And plenty of small fish of which we caught a large quantity to salt down for the Gals at St Helena. Lat: 6:28<sup>m</sup> S. Long: 8:21<sup>m</sup> East. And we are now on our way beating to windward, to Wood & Water at Equimina, & then Stuzza for St Helena. From the First until Friday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine, Beating to the Southward. Catching fish more or less every day. We caught five Large Albacor to day, that salted down nearly two barrels without their Heads. Tuesday 9<sup>th</sup> Dead Calm. Employed hooking Sharks & cutting off their Heads. Wednesday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light breeze. The Captain and the Chief Mate had a great row to day, throwing each others faults at one another, raking up all old grievances & some pretty hard threats on both sides, & ended by the Captain swearing he would put him on shore the first Land we made, which Mr Egerton dared him to do. And it all commenced about our leaving the Whale Ground to go in Port when there was no occasion for it whatever. Lat: 8:22<sup>m</sup> South. P.M. we caught & salted down 330 fine Yellow Tails, for the Gals. From the 10<sup>th</sup> until the 17<sup>th</sup> Fine. Saw a few Fin Back Whales, Porpoises, & Grampuses. The ship completely surrounded with small fish, & as we have got as many as we want to salt down, we only catch them as we want them to eat, & any kind we want.



Second Arrival At Equimina, Feb 1858. 113

The Captain Flogged Purse, at the Wheel to day, with the  
Flag whip for marking on the Wheel. Lat  $10^{\circ}25^m$  S. Long  $12^{\circ}35^m$  E.  
Thursday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine, & light winds, saw plenty of large live  
Squid, in schools. Killed a Hog that weighed 74 Pounds, and  
gave them half of it Forward. Lat  $10^{\circ}55^m$  S. Long  $12^{\circ}39^m$  East.  
From this until the 24<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds, saw a  
little of every thing but, Sperm Whales, or Blackfish.  
Lat  $12^{\circ}48^m$  South. only 22 miles to Northward of Equimina.  
Thursday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine & good Breeze. At 11<sup>h</sup>, Lat  $13^{\circ}11^m$  S.  
one mile to the Southward of our Port, which was plain  
in sight. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M. we came to Anchor close under the  
S.W. Bluff in 16 fathoms of water. We then cleared  
away the Starboard Boat & went on shore, where the  
Captain engaged his wood of  
we found that the Mattawissett had been here and  
eight of her crew had deserted, three of whom still  
Remained, & two of them came on board with us to night.  
Friday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine. Starboard watch on Liberty. I ram-  
bled all over the Plantation & took my fill of what  
fruit I could find & Sugar cane also, (See Equimina  
Page 377) some of which I brought on board for the  
Monkey, who has got the scurvy, & I forgot to mention  
that we buried the other one yesterday morning. We  
all came off at sundown pretty well tired out with  
Rambling & as steady as Deacons, no Rum to be got here.  
Saturday 27<sup>th</sup> Starboard Watch on Liberty, & our watch  
on shore chopping Wood. the Captain on a Gunning Ex-  
cursion with Don Enas & others, & the Second Mate Fishing.  
Sunday 28<sup>th</sup> And Last. On Liberty. I took Dinner with Don  
Enas, to day by invitation. I brought off at sundown, four  
Large Citrons & a Large Bunch of Bananas, a Present.  
Monday 1<sup>st</sup> day of March, All hands. Sent the Starboard  
& Waist Boats in for Wood, with the Starboard Boat, to



# 114. At Equimira, March 1858.

haul them off when loaded. We got two boat loads off before Breakfast, After Breakfast we sent a gang to chop Wood & I got off two Boat Loads more with my own Boat. The Captain went on another Gunning Excursion & Staid all Night. Tuesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Larboard watch on Liberty. I got off three Boat Loads of Wood to day. The Captain was on board about an hour to day, with two Don Portoguese, & let them have 66 feet of Boat Boards, Two Gallons of Paint Oil, Some Yellow Paint, & a Paint Brush. And I understand that he shot nothing last night, But, One of Don Enas's Wreches. Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> On Liberty. I took all my Red clothes with me, & Washed them; Then went to Fishing & caught 2.1. The Larboard watch got off two more Boat Loads of Wood, & a Small raft of Water, five Casks. Let Don Enas have a Barrel of Pork. And served out Tobacco to the Ship's Crew I took three Pounds at 35 cents Per Pound. Shipped three then George L Thaviland, George M Purse & Edward Kermore. Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> Got off three more Boat Loads of Wood, which is the last & makes 12 Boat Loads in all, for which The Captain says he Paid Seven Dollars a Boat Load. The Larboard watch then went on Liberty & We got all ready for Sea, having three Boat Loads of Wood & 6 empty casks on deck. Sent on shore a Spade Pole, a Large Bag of Bread, a Lump of Chalk, & a Strengthening Plaster. Brought on board, 10 Bunches of Bananas, 4 Bushels of Sweet Potatoes, 2 dozen Citrons, 15 Oranges, 2 quinces 2 Apples & one custard Apple. At Sundown the Watch all came on board with their wash clothes. Friday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. All Ready for Sea. After Breakfast, the Captain went on shore, Taking With him, 10 Pounds of Butter, Two Spade Poles, One Axe, & One Pound of Tobacco. He came off again at 10 A.M.; We Received from shore to day. 36 Iron Poles or Harpoon Staffs, One Peck of Tomatoes, four heads of cabbage, 10 Egg Plants, 6 Custard Apples, 15



Bound For St Helena, 1858. 115

Lemons, 12 Pine Apple Plants, for John Bagley at St Helena. and A Keff of Greens for dinner. 12 Bottles of Wine, and five Gallons of Aguardiente. At one P.M., we hove up the anchor, & stood to sea, At 2:30 P.M., we had the anchors secured, & the watch went below, Night fine & light winds.

Saturday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, & calm. Land & one sail in sight.

Sunday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Variable Winds, Saw nothing.

Monday 8<sup>th</sup> & until the 13<sup>th</sup> we had Light variable winds & calms. Employed at various little Jobs about the Rigging & Scrubbing Paint work. To day we got A Strong South East wind & kept her away West by South Lat<sup>d</sup> 15:14 South. Long<sup>d</sup> 5:40 East. Night fine & Clear.

Sunday 14<sup>th</sup> Strong Trades. I was taken down to day with the Coast Fever, & am very unwell.

Monday 15<sup>th</sup> Weather the same. & I am worse

Tuesday 16<sup>th</sup> The same, I felt better to day, But was broke out all over from head to foot like small Pox. Lat<sup>d</sup> 16:07 South. Long<sup>d</sup> 1:13 West. Night fine & Clear.

Wednesday 17<sup>th</sup> St Patricks Day. Weather the same Course W. N. W. I went on deck to day to get the Air & my sores are beginning to heal almost as fast as they came, & not one in the Ship can form any Idea, what disease it is that attacked me, But it is evident it is not the African Fever. Latitude 15:57 South. Long<sup>d</sup> 3:08 West. Night fine & Strong winds.

Thursday 18<sup>th</sup> Rather squally with rain. Saw some Merchant Vessels. At half past nine A.M., got an observation which made us 44 Miles from Land. At 10 A.M., Saw the Land ahead. After dinner we had all hands, got the anchors off the Bows & bent the cables; Saw Numbers of Merchant Vessels, some bound in the same as ourselves, and others, having obtained what they wanted, leaving again.



## 116 Old Farmer Bagsley Again.

At half Past four O'clock in the afternoon we let go anchor in 17 fathoms water, & it had scarcely touched the Bottom when up Popped Old Farmer Bagsley's head, over the Gangway like some Genii that was summoned from the Bottom of the Sea by the Shock of the Anchor. The Captain Went onshore with him Leaving us to take care of the Vessel. Numbers of the Ladies from the Shore visited us late as it was, as well as Bomb Boats, Wash Women, &c. There was about 35 Vessels Laying to Anchor Several of them Whalers, & the Rest Merchantmen. Night set in with drizzling Rain which is nothing unusual here. Let Anchor Watches two in A Watch.

Friday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, We were out at daylight, and heaving up our Anchors, warped inside of all the Shipping and Moored her with Both Anchors, in 13 fathoms of Water, Paying out 40 fathoms of Buck Cable. We then Got Breakfast, & got our dredge Boat from overhead and Put her Overboard. The Captain came on board about Ten O'clock, With his shadow (Old Bagsley) & some other Gentlemen Beggars, & Gave away all his Fruits. Plants, Parrots, Birds &c; Then went onshore again. The Mate, Mr Edgerton going with him to get his Discharge, saying he would do no more on board of this Bark. The Captain came off again about 2 P.M., and gave orders to get all ready for Breaking out our Oil tomorrow & this took up the Rest of the day.

Jennys Lady came to see him & carried away his Parrot. Mine is the Only one that is Left now, & he is A Beauty to Behold! having been sick for some time Past and he has Plucked at his feathers until he is as Bald as an Egg.

Saturday 20<sup>th</sup> We hoisted out 20 Casks of Oil and Cooped it ready to send away on Monday. & got through by three O'clock P.M., when we took the rest of the day



In Port, St Helena, March, 1858. 117

to Ourselves. The Captain & Baggley came onboard, to whom  
he gave a Tin Pail full of Butter. He then left Money  
with Mr Warner for all hands to go on Liberty tomorrow  
with the exception of four to pull in the Boat & the  
Steward. So the men decided who should stay onboard, by  
drawing cuts for it. Two dollars each for the Boat  
steerers & One dollar each for the hands. I also took  
two Calico shirts at a dollar a piece. The Almira  
Crosby, of Edgartown, Full, sailed to day & our Mate  
Mr Edgerton who got his discharge, took Passage for  
home in her. The Other Whalers Laying here are The  
Ann, Hamilton, Sag Harbor, 1000, Whale. Condemned.  
Hilinket, Taber, Bedford 31 Months 600 Sperm. Apton,  
Clank, Bedford, 29 Months 950 Sperm. Clara Bell,  
Robbins, Mattapoisett. 31 Months 1100 Sperm. R L  
Barstow, Devoll, do, 19 Months 550 Sperm 1000 Whale  
Pacific, Ward, N London, 20 Months, Full. Montgomery  
Chapman, Bedford 31 Months 450 Sperm. Helen  
Augusta, Worth, Edgartown, 22 Months, 600 W. Sperm  
Minerva, Bolles, 34 months, 2000 Barrels of Whale, Bedford  
A Friend of Mine was off to see me today by the name  
of Rich, & invited me to take dinner with him tomorrow  
which I readily acceded to. The Evening was fine &  
most of the Crew were off gaming to night, and the  
& the Second Mate caught a heap of Mackerel off the  
Stern of the Kessel. They are a small kind of Mackerel  
and are very numerous here, & you can catch them at any time  
Sunday 21<sup>st</sup> Rather cool, & some Rain Squalls  
After Breakfast we went onshore, and I went to  
Church in the Forenoon; Took Dinner; & Spent the  
The Afternoon with Mr Francis Rich & Family,  
From Whom I obtained quite a fund of information  
concerning the Island. I slept at the St Helena Hotel.



118 At St. Helena, March 1858.

Monday 22<sup>nd</sup> Busy Breaking out Oil & we sent 32 casks onboard the British Brig Reliance, of Whitty, who is taking the Ship Ann's Oil to Sag Harbor for Two dollars & 25 cents a Barrel, & as our Oil will just make out her cargo, she takes it for the same Price. We got done about 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., and had the Rest of the day to ourselves, to Fish, or go gambling.

Tuesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Rather Squally. We got all our Oil Broke out to day, & sent 25 casks more onboard the Brig. Making 57 casks in all, & containing 297 Barrels. We had a lot of Lady Visitors this evening so we cleared the quarter deck, & setting the Fiddler to work, we hoed it down in good shape I can tell you. Some of them went onshore at 9<sup>h</sup> P.M., and a few remained all night. The Captain paid us a Visit to day attended by the Farmer, & gave away Two large Pieces of Pork, Four Hams, 10 Pounds of Butter 12 Pounds of Flour, & Two Pounds of Tobacco. A Bushel of Peaches came onboard that were green, Rotten, & bitter & even the Monkey would not eat them. Threw them overboard.

Wednesday 24<sup>th</sup> Rainy & Squally. Laid our Ground Tier to day as far as we had casks to do it. The Captain gave us Permission to go onshore evenings watch, & watch, & to be off at 9<sup>h</sup> P.M., or at Six o'clock in the Morning as we saw fit. he gave away some Salt Fish, & some Salt Beef & Pork.

Thursday 25<sup>th</sup> All aboard in good Season. & We spent the Day setting up Shooks, & Stowing them. And waiting on the different Ladies who visited the Ship. The Reliance sailed to day with our Oil. I Watch onshore.

Friday 26<sup>th</sup> All Aboard, This is the Annual Fair day here, but, we had no chance to see much of it. We got hummed for want of casks to day, so I took a boat & went onshore to see the Captain, who I found at the



At St Helena, April 1858. 119

Fair strutting about like a Peacock, with two of Old  
Bagsley's Daughters, one on each Arm, & baying everything  
they took a fancy to. Go it! thinks I, Old Wilcox says for all!  
I told him how we were situated, but he said, we must do  
the best we could, for he could not attend to anything  
before Monday! Well Sir; Replied I, we may turn in!  
for we can do nothing more without basks. In the after-  
noon however, while he was giving the Misses  
Bagsley's a Boat sail Round the Harbour, he dropped  
alongside & told Mr Warner, to let the Men go on Liberty  
Tomorrow & Sunday, and he would attend to Business  
on Monday. A few Ladies on board & Larboard W. on shore.  
Saturday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine. Starboard Watch on Liberty &  
I drew Two dollars & a half to day.  
Sunday 28<sup>th</sup> Larboard Watch on Liberty. And  
hearing that a number of Whores & Whores had  
been invited to dine on board, I remained on shore.  
Monday 29<sup>th</sup> All on board, But, Charles Jackson,  
who ran away in a Brig, that went to sea yesterday.  
We got some Shooks from the Montgomery, & a  
Pipe, & five sixty gallon Basks from the Shore. we  
employed the day stowing the hold to the best advan-  
tage with basks that made very poor Stowage.  
Tuesday 30<sup>th</sup> Employed Stowing the Hold, and at  
night one watch on shore as usual. The Larboard tonight.  
Wednesday 31<sup>st</sup> We finished Stowing the hold to  
day, at least all the basks we had, & I understand  
we are going to get no more. I drew One dollar from  
the Captain to day. Starboard watch on shore to night.  
Thursday 1<sup>st</sup> April Fools Day. We scrubbed her  
inside & all ready for Painting. Bought a Thining  
Machine & an Opera Glass for fifty Dollars from the  
got half of a small Sheep, the first fresh Meat we have



# 120 At St Helena, On Liberty, 1858.

ever had onboard at St Helena, & a Bushel of Potatoes.

Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> S, Watch on shore I drew 4 dollars. L, Watch Painted one side of the Ship. Saturday 3<sup>rd</sup> S, Watch on shore and our Watch Finished Painting her. Sunday 4<sup>th</sup> S, Watch on shore, drew 4 dollars more. Monday 5<sup>th</sup> L, Watch on shore got another Bushel of Potatoes to day. Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> S, Watch on last Liberty. Drew four dollars in bank and bought things at our Chandlers, to the Amount of <sup>\$.</sup>7:52<sup>c</sup> more. Three men ran away to day, E, Rutledge, S, Purse, & E, Benn. My Poor old Parrott kicked the Bucket to day. Wednesday 7<sup>th</sup> L, Watch on last Liberty; W, Perryman ran away. I drew Lots With W, Genney to day to see who should go as Second Mate; And he got it. Mr Warner, he shipped as Chief Mate, & Samuel Mc Nutt as Harpoonier. Also one Man John Anderson before the Mast and we have got a Dutchman by name Johnny Johnson, stowed away. Making in all 21 hands fore & aft. Got 25 cents to day. Thursday 8<sup>th</sup> Got all ready for Sea. Friday 9<sup>th</sup> The Captain came from the Country to day & Brought on board. A Barrel of Pease, A Gunny bag of Rice, A Can of dried vegetables, A Large Earthen Jar of Pickles, 30 Cabbages, Three Gunny Bags of Potatoes, a dozen Beets, & a dozen Turnips, A Bushel of Peaches, Two dozen Bottles of Porter & Andale, A Can of Black Paint, A Coil of Spun Yarn. A Bag of Sugar about 30 Pounds, four Large Harpoons for hauling up Sunken Whales, & 90 fathoms of 3 inch Manila Rope, & three small Glass Jars of Pickled Onions. We then got one Anchor, & hove the other short, & loosed the Sails. When as he had only given information this morning, Orders came off to day 24 hours longer to look for our Runaway men. The S, Hicks; Ablet; Washington; Thanaupha; & Salon, came in late, I left a letter at the Salon as she is Bound home. Two young Ladies, Perceiving that we did not sail, came onboard & staid with their Sweethearts all night. The Captain & Bill Genney spent this last Night on shore.



Leaving St Helena, April 1858. 121  
Saturday April 10<sup>th</sup> A fine & pleasant day, and  
one that will long hold its place in my memory.  
All hands were called at daylight to get under  
weigh (The Captain & Second Mate. being onshore) and  
in a few moments, all made their appearance.  
I could not help remarking, how cheerful & happy  
they all appeared to be, and well they might! for  
Our Captain let us have what money we wanted,  
and gave us Liberty, until we were fairly tired of  
it ourselves. besides allowing our Sweethearts to visit  
us Onboard, and if they chose to remain all night.  
Now as only one half of us could be onshore at a  
time, while the rest took care of the vessel, you may  
be assured, as we had very little to do for the last two  
weeks, we were there, that some of the dear creatures,  
could not find it in their hearts, to see us so lonesome  
so they would come onboard when we did, to keep us  
company, & go onshore with us, as they said, to take care  
of us, & keep us out of bad company. So it was no wonder  
that you could see nothing but smiling faces, from  
aft. We loosed our topsails & set them, having all  
the rest ready to set at a moments notice. We then  
hoisted the Mainmast, being all good singers we struck  
up a shanty song & I can tell you that we made the  
whole harbour ring again, it was such an unexpected  
thing from a Whaler, that there was scarcely a  
ship in the harbour, but, the sides was crowded by the  
crews, looking at, and listening to us. Just as the Sun  
peeped over the Horizon the broke ground filled away  
took a last look up the Valley at things familiar to  
us all and then with one accord gave three hearty cheers  
that was heard all over James Town. We then hoisted  
and clapped on to the Cat fall and up she came to the top



## 124 Sabbath Day Reflections.

with two or three down falls, which would create a good laugh, at the expense of the unfortunate weight, who chose to kiss the decks for partime. It was very amusing to me, to listen to the different Groups of men about decks, each one launching forth in Praise of his Lady Love at St Helena, endowing them with every Perfection, that is to be found in the Feminine Gender. The night was long & wearisome to me, For to tell the truth I felt really home sick, & in fact was almost sorry we had come to this place, For so well did I enjoy myself while here, that sad thoughts will intrude themselves, in spite of all my Resolves to keep them away. Adieu to your Mighty Rock! Tomb, of the never to be forgotten Napoleon! Adieu to ye! fairest of the Gamistocks, Pleasant walks, and Conversations. I must bid you Adieu, for one long year, when I hope to return, to enjoy your sweet society, and Friendship. Sunday April 11<sup>th</sup> 14 Months from home, We had very strong breezes, so much so, that we took in our light sails, but still kept on Eastward. I think I am not the only one, who was glad, that this was the Sabbath, for the excitement being over, every one looked dull, and Moping. Poor Good natured Jack how few there are who understand you; how many there are who ascribe everything that is wicked, and loathsome, to the Poor Sailor! but seldom, if ever, they take time to think, how much all Christendom is indebted to the Seafaring class of their Communities. In furnishing them with the Produce, and Luxuries of Foreign Climes, keeping in constant circulation, the Rise, & Progress, or the decreasing Greatness, of each portion, of this Inhabitable Globe, & Transporting Friends, and relatives, to each others Embraces, who are far far away.



Four Little Strangers. April 1858. 125

they do not stop to think, that perhaps, he may have been months, on the bosom of the mighty deep, immune from all society, as much as if he were in a state prison, & then when he does reach a port, probably he is far from his friends, and home, Father, Mother, Brothers, & Sisters, for those relatives, poor Jack has, as well as others. It is then he is to be fittie, mayhap he gets a days liberty to run on shore, when like a Prisoner escaped, he makes the welkin ring. Crowding all the enjoyment he can, into this short time of his own, & for this, he is termed, a Ignorant, disagreeable, Drunken, & Licentious Character, and not fit to associate, with Christians. But let there be an example of distress, or a tale of Poverty, & suffering, then see who is first forward to the Rescue, in the former, & how quick his hand finds its way to his pocket, in the latter. Still Jack! you belong to a condemned class of the people. So hold your tongue, while your very holy, and sanctified Christian Brethren, blows the trumpet of glorification. The day was passed in quietness, reading & writing, for we all obtained a fresh supply of reading matter, at St Helena. & to give it turn to Affairs, in the Evening. Our Row gave birth to four fine figs. three males, & one female, and as a matter of course all hands had to be present, to offer their congratulations, to Adam Suckey, on her safe delivery, & if she could have understood, all the encomiums, that was lavished on her pretty little family, I am sure she would have felt as Proud, as a Pig with two tails, But would have broke <sup>her</sup> heart, at Jacks last words, as he gazed on her progeny. D-d fine Pig! they will make some good sea Pies, one of those Days.



# 126 A Heavy Squall.

nothing more worthy of note transpired, with the exception, of getting the Boats & whaling craft in order until, Thursday 15<sup>th</sup> when we crossed the Meridian, in the latitude of Eleven degrees South, having had very strong breezes, (which still continue) ever since leaving St Helena, & to day, we saw a School of Blackfish, & killed a Hog, that weighed 96 lbs. half was sent forward, & the other kept for the Cabin. I forgot to mention, that we sold at Auction, the things left left behind, by our five runaways, & they brought in, the enormous sum, of Six Dollars & ninety cents, on Tuesday last. On Friday 16 we saw our first Spout for this season, which proved to be a pen back. Saturday and Sunday, were fine, with strong South winds. On Monday 19<sup>th</sup> we saw several Finbacks in the forenoon, and had quite mild weather, but after dinner it commenced breezing up, so that we took in the light sails. At 2 P.M. a heavy squall struck us, which caused us to let everything go by the Run, & get her before it as quick as possible. We then took in every thing, but, close reefed Topsails & Fore topmast Stay sail, and let her come up to it again. The Squall lasted two hours, with very little rain, but, numbers of small whirl winds to be seen in all directions, and luckily none of them came in contact with the vessel. This Squall took us rather unawares, as it is a thing very unusual in those latitudes, & the gave no warning, until the squall struck us, and then fell rapidly. Lat = 6:28<sup>m</sup> South Long = 6:18<sup>m</sup> East. At half past four it moderated, so that we got whole topsails and courses on her again, and at sundown we double reefed the Topsails, took in the Courses, & Gib, & set boat crew




St Helena Not Forgotten Yet. 127  
Matches. Three or four our Crew, & the three PPs in  
particular, are not quite so lavish in their Praises, of  
the Fair Portion of St Helena's Inhabitants, as they were  
a week ago. but like discarded Lovers, their Blessings  
has given Place to Curses, and their Praises, turned to bitter  
invectives. However, there is none off duty as yet, and  
I hope there will not be any, for our list is none too  
full at Present. We repaired the Flying jib, & bent  
it again to day, before we had the squall.  
Tuesday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds, steering to Eastward,  
sent down Fore topsail & repaired it & bent it again.  
Divided our Iron Poles, got all our craft out, and found  
we had 60 Harpoons, & 17 Lances, all told, each of us  
took 15 Harpoons & 4 Lances, to get in Readiness, for  
Thunfishing, & I only hope, we may have a chance, to  
use them to advantage. Wednesday 21<sup>st</sup> Dark looking  
weather, & we had another Squall, that caused us  
to close Reef, and lasted about two hours, with  
heavy rain, so we spread Dishes all over the Deck  
and when the rain was over, washed Deck & made  
all sail again. The Afternoon and most of the  
night, was calm with ~~thunder~~ & lightning.  
So we shortened sail. But at Day light on Thursday  
we set whole Topsails again. It was Squally all  
this day, and about 2 PM it caused us to reef down  
again. At 4 PM, saw some white water, that  
caused a little excitement, but, turned out to  
be no Account. At Sundown, we shortened sail  
as usual, heading to Eastward, when we can. for  
the last three or four days, we have had the wine,  
all round the Compass. I took two of the Ladies  
men in hand to day, to cure them, as the Captain's  
Medicine, does them no good Whatever.



# 128 The Albacor. April 1858.

Friday 23<sup>rd</sup> This was a dark & cloudy day, but, at light breeze & smooth sea, we changed the color of the water to day, to a dark green, & we were soon surrounded by a School of Albacor, Boneta, and Yellow Tails. & we caught two of the Former, one large one, & one small one. I have mentioned those Fish, a number of times in this Book, but, have never attempted a description of them, which I will do now, as well as I am able. The Albacor is a Fish, varying in size, (When about the Ship) from four Pounds, to two hundred Pounds, with large head, mouth & Eyes. The Body very nearly round, & a gradual taper from the Head, to the tail. The Back of a dark Brown color, with a fin the whole length of the Fish, which is tipped with a Beautiful Yellow. And which it can erect, or shut down at its Pleasure. The tail is also Tipped & edged with yellow. The Sides or Belly, is of a Bright Zinc color as far as the Dorsal, where it grows darker, and has a row of little silvery looking Paddles, Tipped with yellow and Purple. One each side and close to the Gill, is a long Fin, which is also Tipped & Edged with yellow, the



as I can draw one, with the exception of coloring. They go in large Shoals, and whenever they chance to fall in with a ship, they keep ahead, and on each side of her, sometimes for months, and at others not more than one day. They subsist on Squid, & Flying Fish, & I have seen them when in Pursuit of the latter, jump from ten to fifteen feet in the Air, & seize their Prey, and it is no uncommon occurrence, for the Flying Fish while trying to escape them, to Fly on board the vessel, where they are soon accommodated with a Frying Pan, and some hot fat. I have frequently caught large ones, with small ones in their Stomachs, when other feed



## The Skip Jack, or Boneta.

129

was scarce. The manner of capturing them is as follows. we snood a Large Cod Hook, on to a good strong line, then cover the hook with a white Rag. You then take your station on the Jib Boom, & Troll the hook, just letting it touch the water, when the Albacore taking it for a Flying fish making his escape, dashes at it with open Mouth, and only finds his mistake, when it is too late. If a large one, he must then be struck with the Grains, and many of them are so large, that we are obliged to use a Harpoon to secure them. The Flesh is white with a yellowish cast, and is very dry when cooked, Excepting the Cape, and Head, which is very fat, & sweet, & most people like them, in fact when they are plentiful, you can catch them by throwing a hook over from any part of the ship, & we then use no other part, but, the Cakes & heads. throwing the bodies overboard. The Boneta (or as the sailors term them Skip Jacks) are much the same shape as the Albacore, Their Habits and the manner of taking them are the same, But, the largest of them will not exceed twenty Pounds. The Back is Black, with a ridge fin like the Albacore, but, a great deal smaller, and of a blueish cast. The Belly is a Bright Silver hue, with several fine Jet Black stripes, lengthwise of the fish, on each side. There is also a Row of small blueish colored Paddles, from the Skirt to the tail, like the Albacore. A small short fin close to the head on each side, & a double fin on the breast, right under the Gills, (I forgot to mention that the Albacore has it likewise) The flesh of the Skipjack or Boneta is white, with a blueish cast. It is hard, dry, and of a Tartish taste, and is seldom eaten, exceptive have been for a long time without fish. They are the most numerous, of any



# 130 The Yellow Tail.

fish that follow vessels. The Yellow tail, are small fish, from half a Pound, to three Pounds in weight. very narrow & deep, with a comb, or fin, the whole length of the Back, from head to tail, as also, from Skirt to tail. A small fin on each side, & double fin on the breast, it is impossible to describe their color, for they change it like the dolphin at their pleasure, to almost every hue you can mention. but at times when I like to see them best, they will turn a Beautiful Bright Gold color, with glossy Jet Black spots, about the size of a Pea, all over their body, & their head a lovely intermingling of Purple, and Ethereal Blue. Their Flesh is moist & sweet, & far preferable to my taste, to either of the others. Their habits are similar to the Albacore, & Boneta, with one exception, they will bite at a piece of their own kind, when fast on a hook, if it does lay dead in the water. and the others will not. So much for the fish. Now for ship work again. The day continued mild throughout and at sundown we double reefed Topsails, hauling up courses, & down jib, & Spanker, & lashed the wheel. Set the Fiddle, Banjo, Tamborine, Triangle, & Bones in motion & had music and dancing, until Past 10 O'clock. Our Latitude to day was  $6^{\circ} 14'$  South. and Longitude  $8^{\circ} 13'$  East Saturday, 24<sup>th</sup> Thick & cloudy, & at half past six, another squall came on us with heavy rain, that lasted about an hour and a half, but, as we had made no sail, we laid her off before the wind, & let her run until it was over. We had some good curry Albacore, fore and aft for Breakfast, and it was capital. After breakfast, we killed a Madagascar Terapin, that Latherson had got at St Helena, and had Terapin Soup for dinner, with curry fish & Rice, Potatoes, Pickles,





# A School Of Killers.

131

and Mingo Worsell, which made at dinner, that I King might envy us. The Afternoon was fine & clear, nearly calm, & at Sundown we have her to. We had a fine Moonlight night, so we wound up with Music, and dancing, and a few songs. Sunday 25<sup>th</sup> Was a lovely day. Made all sail on her, and kept away E. N. E. until about 5<sup>th</sup> A. M., when I raised a School of Killers, (which fish I will give a description of some other Time) So we have to, and sent the Starboard & Waist Boats in chase. but, after an hour or two, they returned without success, & we kept off our course again. Lat<sup>e</sup> 5:13 South Long<sup>e</sup> 8:56 East. The rest of the day & evening was fine; But, Night set in rather darkly, with plentiful flashes of lightening. About Seven O'clock of Monday. 26<sup>th</sup>, It commenced to Pour, instead of rain, and continued so, until two in the Afternoon, accompanied with sharp flashes of chain lightening, and very heavy Ralls of Thunder. We filled the Scuttle Butt with water, and all hands was Busy, washing out their clothes, & Bed clothes, while it rained, and as we had all sail in, although it was nearly calm, we had a fine time of it, sousing one another with Buckets full of it, until we got tired of the fun. About three O'clock it cleared off, & we had a strong breeze from the westward, which continued until Sundown, when it died away nearly calm, & as we had a good Moon light, we wound up the evening with Music. Tuesday 27<sup>th</sup> Was fine, clear, a light breeze, and a smooth Sea. The Captain turned Cooper to day, & went at it in good earnest, repairing Old Cask. And he does it Great deal better, than I expected, As he never worked any at the Trade, But, he has got



132 The Lost Found. April 1858.

the Carpenter, two or three of the Foremast hands, and sometimes, the Mate or Second Mate helping him, we saw several Schools of Porpoises some small fish and a couple of Finbacks This day. Lat<sup>d</sup> 4:10<sup>m</sup> South and Long<sup>d</sup> 9:26<sup>m</sup> East. The night set in fine, moonlight & music, Dancing & singing. About 10 O'clock a School of Blackfish passed us bound to the South West.

Wednesday 28<sup>th</sup> Commenced fine, But, about 2 P.M. it thickened up and we had an hours rain. I caught a couple of fine large Dolphins to day, and Sherman caught one large Albacore Just before Sundown. We Broke out a Barrel of Pork to day, and when we opened it, we found it was a Barrel of Cucumbers. that we have hunted the ship fore and aft for, more than a dozen times, and come to the conclusion that it was left behind at home. The Barrel was marked Pork, instead of Pickels. They were in fine order, & we put them to soak in Fresh Water. We was glad of the mistake, for if we had found them before, they would have been all gone now. Got no latitude to day but calculated we were in about 3:50<sup>m</sup> South and 10 degrees East Longitude. kept all topsails on her to night & headed to S W on Port tack. Thursday, Friday & Saturday the First Day of May Fine weather, we saw nothing, but, a few Finbacks & Porpoises, & to day, there is plenty of drift wood, & grass, supposed to come from the River Congo. we have been standing to Southward and Westward since Wednesday & are Beating to windward between the Longitude of 78 & 8 degrees East & are to day in the latitude of five South. The Old Man, Mate, and Second Mate, with the Carpenter, and a couple more hands from Foreward, have been hammering away



# Great Work At Coopering. 133

away at Coopering all the Week, and have made out to finish (after a Fashion of their own) about as many as one Cooper would in two days. It has kept us Breaking out & staving back the whole Week and I could not help remarking to the Skipper to day that It reminded me of the days of My Childhood. How So cried he, Why replied I; when I was a Boy I lived in New York City. Now It was very common in those days, & which I suppose it is yet, for the Poor Class of the Community, to look out for the Cheapest and most Commodious, habitable dwellings they could find, which as a general rule they hired by the Year and paid the rents by Monthly instalments. Taking Possession on the First day of May. So as you must leave your House in time for some one else to take Possession of it on that day. The Landlords find out, a week or ten days previous, if their Tenants are going to leave & forthwith stick up the following notice. This House To Let Inquire &c. This you will see all over the city & it gives every one a chance to have a House engaged to move right into it. Now as My Family were not overstocked with the means of obtaining all the good things of this world; My Father being a Laboring Man, My Mother God Bless her with my eldest sister taking in washing when they could get it, a Couple of Elder Brothers also working at trades but Boarding at Home, it was natural, for My Parents, to look out in time for the Nearest, and most Comfortable House to their work, that would come within their Means. So about a week before the First of May it was Overhauled & stow away again the washing was taken in on this week, but, It was back every



134 May Day, 1858.

thing they thought they would not want again that week, so as to be in readiness to start at sunrise. On the Long looked for first of May which was to carry us to our New House, and it used to be a great day for me I can assure you. But so steady & regular would everything be carried on, on that day with our Family that we generally had our New Home Regulated & the Afternoon as a Holiday to ourselves, while the Old Folks would congregate to gether with some of their new neighbours & relate all the inconveniences of their last residence & what hopes they had of their Present one. While the Children were Busy forming new acquaintances getting each others names by heart & Promising all sorts of Fidelity and good Fellowship to each other. The Old Sir! have taken this Afternoon as a Holiday, relating things of the former part of the Voyage, & our hopes for what is yet to come, Whilst the men Forward are grouped together like the children of their time musing themselves in the best manner they can, casting a glance aft occasionally like we little ones used to long ago at our Parents to see if there was any likelihood of our being interrupted. This week's work as I was saying Sir Reminds me of my Childhoods days. The Night was fine and as we are beating to the Southward we only take in the Light sails of evenings now & days. Sunday 2<sup>nd</sup> This a Beautiful day & a nice Refreshing breeze. On the Eastern Board. Saw some Porpoises. We had a ship of the dried Preserved Vegetable Food that the Old Man bought at St Helena some liked it & some did not.



Bark Keoka, of Westport. 135

For my own part I think it a very healthy and nutritious food for sea use, being a compound of different vegetables cooked & dried & pressed into air tight tins, and when properly soaked to give them time to swell to their original size, they are nearly as good as those fresh from market.

Friday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. Nothing but the same old routine of duty going on excepting the old fellow & his coofering, all this week. We have seen a few Finbacks, Grampuses, Porpoises and small fish & very few at that. Yesterday we saw a Merchant Brig the first vessel we have seen since leaving St Helena. As soon as evening comes we generally start our Musicians a going and it helps to pass the time away. Our Latitude to day is 5:29 South and Longitude 7:37 East and here we have been cruising for the last week Back and Forward in Black Water.

Wednesday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear with light winds. Nothing & doing nothing, but, coofering, since last Friday. George the Purser off duty with a sore leg. On Monday I caught eight Yellow Tail which made a treat for some & kept which is the only excitement we have had for a fortnight. We are now trying all we can to beat to the Southward but make very little progress on account of the currents & light winds. Lat<sup>n</sup> to day 6:02 South and Longitude 8:05 East.

Friday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & light breeze. At daylight saw a sail to leeward. After breakfast we kept off for her, and at 5<sup>th</sup> she spoke her. She proved to be the Bark Keoka,



136 A Gammung Scene, And How It  
Captain Grinnell, of Westport. She had taken on the  
11<sup>th</sup> of April, in the Lat of 13 South. & 10 East. A  
Large Sperm Whale, from which they saved enough, to  
stow down 108 barrels. They had very rough weather,  
and were two days and a half cutting him in. Lost  
part of his head, all the Jaw, Bunch of his neck,  
and Part of the Body. They Parted two Black chains,  
most had Penants, Ten Chains, And one Black  
Strap. The Blubber got so blasted, before they could  
boil it; that they lost a great deal by it clogging,  
in the Pots. According to all Accounts, he was a  
Monster, and if they could have saved him, he  
would have yielded over 150 Barrels. he is the  
only whale they have saw, since we Gammung before,  
last Winter. but, had taken 14 blackfish, that made  
52 Barrels. The changed Boats crews, & staid all day,  
until 10 in the evening. As she had been in  
Port, and gave liberty, in Fish Bay, we Passed the  
day very agreeably, relating each others Adventures  
on Terra Firma. & Making exchanges of Books, & many  
little notions, that one of us would have Plenty of,  
and the other none. In this manner, where there is  
a lot of Whale Ships Cruising, all Parties can manage  
to obtain little notions from each other, by way of  
Exchange. and in fact, <sup>if</sup> one has nothing that the  
Other wants, they are no ways backward, about  
supplying your little wants, Free gratis. People  
who have never spent months to a time, on the  
water, can form no Idea of what Pleasure, we derive  
from a Meeting of this kind, which we term a Gam.  
It is like a Holiday onshore. Even if we are all  
Perfect strangers to each other, we are happy to see  
each other, for you are sure to meet some one, who




Is Enjoyed. Assault & Battery. 137

is acquainted with others, of your acquaintance, Or she has either left Home since you have, if not Perhaps she has Jammed with other Vessels that have. Then we get the news from home, & likewise hear what other vessels are doing. And in this manner, they very often hear from friends, and relatives, in other ships, that they supposed to be comfortable to home. We stood along together all night, & this Morning Saturday Their Captain came Onboard of us, & changed Crews Again. We spent the day Garning, Trading, & taking Presents. Feasted the Strangers, & ourselves, on the Best the Ship afforded. (which is always done on those occasions) And in the evening had Music, dancing & Singing, until 10 o'clock, when we parted with mutual Good wishes, for good health, and good luck, And the Pledges of the Captains, to be Neighbourly, if we should fall in with each other again, for at present we are bound on different routes, although we may meet again, before going in at Humplacking. We would have parted with this Bark, if he had not. Previously engaged to mate, with the Brig Leonidas, belonging to the same Owners. The Theokas Officers, were Messrs Cogswell, Baker, & Snell. Lat: to day was  $6^{\circ}40'$  South, and Longitude  $10^{\circ}17'$  East. Saw one Finback, and a School of Porpoises to day, which was quite novel. Sunday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & nearly Calm. The Theokas was in sight, until 4 P.M. when she disappeared in the Western Horizon, & we kept on to Eastward. Monday, Tuesday, & Wednesday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm day times, and light breezes Nights. Saw numbers of Porpoises, & a few Finbacks, & I caught eight Yellow Tails. Last Night, The Captain pitched into John Johnson, & Beat him, accusing him



# 138. The Bark Tropic Bird

of Grumbling, and to day he shifted him into my watch, taking one of my men to replace him. Thursday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. I struck and saved a Fine Porpoise  This morning, just before daylight.

Finished up his coopering to day, having been at it since the 27<sup>th</sup> of May, repairing old casks, and setting up ten shooks. Friday we sent down the Foresail & Repaired it. Lat<sup>n</sup> 8:35<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 11:16<sup>m</sup> East and we made it strike off to westward, having bit up in this Longitude, long enough for one time.

Saturday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Nearly Calm. I caught 20 Yellow tails to day, and could have caught as many more, but, we had as many as would be eat, before they would spoil. The Ocean appears to be full of Porpoises to day, but, none come near enough to strike. We also saw a large Turtle.

Sunday, Monday, & Tuesday 25<sup>th</sup>, Fine & light winds, with Southwesterly current. Saw Nothing.

Wednesday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. At daylight, saw a Vessel on our Starboard quarter, we tacked for her, and at 8<sup>h</sup> A.M. Spoke her, She proved to be the Bark Tropic Bird, Capt<sup>n</sup> King, of New Bedford, thirteen & a half months, 200 of Sperm Oil. She had letters for the Captain, Mr. Kenney, and Mr. Nutt. We gammed until 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., when we parted. As her crew & Officers were all Portuguese but, the Chief Mate, I did not enjoy my gammon very well, and was glad when it ended. Their Captain offered to let us have two men, if any would volunteer for us. But when he called them Aft, there was none that wanted to leave him, which shows, he must be a good Captain.



# A Porpoise And Sun Fish 189

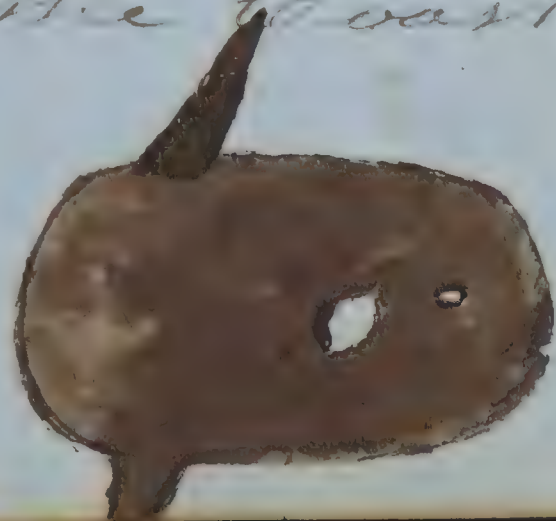
They had Onboard, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Mate of the *Himrod* of Sag Harbor, who was put on shore from the *N* in little fish bay, & as he was destitute, Captain Thing took him onboard, until he should fall in with a ship that wanted him. Our Captain agreed with him, to take him as a Foremast hand, untill he could fall in with a better chance and failing of that, to discharge him at St Helena. So he packed up his Traps, but, when we got ready to go, he Backed out again, & I was glad of it, for I think it would have been disturbance to have had him in the Forecastle here. Night was fine, with stiff Breeze, so we shortened sail and bore her to, the *T B* being on our weather Beam. Thursday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & light breeze. Steering East. Our Lat<sup>e</sup> when we spoke the Tropic Bird yesterday was 8:59 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 10:30 East. She was nowhere to be seen to day. At sundown we shortened sail, and in the Morning kept on East again, with the news that we were bound into Ambry.

Sent down the Fore Top sail and repaired it. Saturday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds, made sail to Eastward again. At 2<sup>h</sup> P.M. we were in the Lat<sup>e</sup> of 8:22 South & Long<sup>e</sup> 12 22 East. distant 45 miles from Land, so we stood in under short sail, and at 10 P.M.



A school of Porpoises came round, so we Struck & saved one.

Sunday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & Pleasant, saw the land At Daylight. So we stood in within about five miles of it, and then kept her off down the coast. We struck & saved a large Sun Fish saved some of his Flesh for Suffer it was so rank, we could not eat



to day but it.



## 140 At Ambriz Africa.

At sundown we came to anchor, in 15 fathoms of water, about 4 miles from the Beach, and laid there all night, 20 miles South of Ambriz. I wrote three letters to day, One to my Brother William at New Orleans, One to Robert M'gint my Brother in law of N. O., and one to Patrick Curly of same place. Thursday 31<sup>st</sup> Fine, All hands out at day light. To get under weigh, was but a few minutes work, and away we flew down the Coast. At 12 O'clock we came to anchor, in Seven fathoms water, off Ambriz. about three miles from shore. A small Portuguese Schooner, & the Merchant Bark Hazard of Boston lay here to anchor also. The Captain of the Port Boarded us, and we then lowered the Starboard boat, and went on shore, where we stayed about half an hour, when I was sent on board again, for some Saws, Axes, Adzes, Secos, Plants, & the Willow Tree. to be sent to Equimina. I got on shore again about 4 P. M., & Remained until sundown, when I took the Boats crew, & came off, leaving the Old Man on shore for all night. While on shore, I took a ramble up on the hill, where the town is situated, and it appeared to be, a healthy situation, being about 400 feet above the level of the Sea. It is quite a small place, belonging to the Portuguese, & settled about 175 years ago. There is two American trading factories, one Belonging to Mr De Silva & Mr Sparrowhawk, and the other, to Mr Brookhouse. There is also a Dutch, and an English Factory, here also. We left our letters with Mr Brookhouse, who said he could forward them in about three weeks time. The harbour is very poor, being formed by a reef, running down the Coast from a head land, about a mile, but,



## Bark Hazard, of Boston.

141

as it is covered with water all the time, In rough weather it does not keep the surf from breaking all the way across the harbour. There is but two houses on the beach, the Custom house, and a store house, all the rest being about a mile off, on top of the hill. I saw quite a large river in back of the town, but where it empties into the sea, about 3 miles to Northward of the town, it is so choked up with the sand, that it is hove up by the breakers, that even a small boat cannot enter it, I saw plenty of cattle here, but they are very dear, Potatoes, Fruit, & vegetables, they have not enough for their own consumption. Flour being 25 Dollars per Barrel, & scarce at that Price.

Tuesday 1<sup>st</sup> day of June, Fine & Calm. At 8 AM the Captain came Onboard, And at 10 a breeze springing up, we got under weigh, and bid adieu to Ambriz, standing down the coast, until Sunday when we came to Anchor, in 7 Fathoms water, five miles from the Beach. At daylight on Wednesday we hove up again, and got under weigh. The Hazard being close to us, Our Captain went Onboard of her, and we staid until 11 AM, when she came to anchor Abreast of Ambrizet, (in Lat<sup>n</sup> 6:51 South and Long<sup>n</sup> 13:00 East being 60 miles to Northward of Ambriz) and we left her, and came on board, having got some December papers from her. We heard by her, that our Carpenter, whom we discharged in St Paul de Loanda, had recovered, and that the Shipkeeper, had died. We stood on down the coast, passing a number of Fishing canoes, returning from their days toil. At Sundown we came to Anchor, the same as usual, and tried for fish without success.



14.2 The Barks, Washington & Harawha.

Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> Of June, Fine and light winds. At day light got under weigh again. Saw plenty of canoes bound out fishing. One of them came alongside with three strapping Great Congo negroes in, that Coal Tar would have made a white mark on them. They had nothing in but their fishing tackle, and a dozen ears of Green Corn, which we bought, for some bread, and they tasted quite natural at dinner. They wanted us to stand in sight of the coast, and anchor, saying they had plenty of Pigs, fowls, Potatoes, Corn, and other kinds of Vegetables. But the Captain said he did not like to trust them, as it was too near Congo, and told them he would be back in three months, which I feel sure he has no intention of doing. The natives were as naked as they came from the Tomb, and appeared to all talk Portuguese, as well as Congo. At 4 P.M. we spoke the Old Washington, Balcock, of Sag Harbor, laying to anchor on our old whale ground, of last year, in company with his Brother, who has the Harawha of Greenport, & are whaling. They had got here this morning, & had 4 boats in shore cruising, but had seen no whales as yet. We kept on until about three miles from them, when staving away calm, we came to anchor in 7 fathoms water, and in sight of the mouth of the River Congo. We saw two more vessels to anchor to leeward of us, supposed to be Merchantmen. Tried for fish without success.

Friday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. We got under weigh at daylight and were soon crossing the Red waters of the River Congo. We could see



## Port Habenda Again.

143

well up the mouth of the River, but, there was no vessels laying in sight. The current sets out of the River very strong, and the water is nearly Blood Red. We passed plenty of canoes, and at half past four, we came to anchor at Habenda in four fathoms water. There was a Dutch and an English trading Schooner laying here. John Anderson, our old trading master of last year came off, and we went onshore with him, where we were met by King Pukatah, King Bach, and King Back. They escorted us up to the Palace, amidst the howls, and yells, of about a Hundred as Black Hokes as it has ever been my fortune to clasp eyes on at one time. The ladies crowded around us, and tried hard to have us pay a visit to their huts, But, Oh Lord! A Pole Cat or its affinity, was at war of Roses to them, we staid about an hour, bargaining for fruit, and vegetables, to be brought to morrow, & then came on board, got supper, and wound up the day with Music and dancing. The Tropic Bird, left here this morning for Loango, having refused to pay the Port charges, and they would not let them have wood or water here. Saturday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine and calm. The canoes came drooping alongside by sunrise, and continued coming and going all day, with Pigs, Goats, Fowls, Ducks, Bananas, Plantains, Green & Ripe Corn, Green Beans, Oranges, Limes, Pine Apples, Tomatoes, Peppers, Eggs, Palm Wine, Fish, Hats, Baskets, Broom Stuff &c. and a few Water Melons. Potatoes, or yams were not in season yet. Though we got enough for one sheep, likewise a sheep of Canada. At 8 AM the Landward watch went onshore for a Run,



And at one O'clock they came on board. Our Watch then went onshore, and remained until near sundown. I took a good Ramble all over the Place, as well as time & the crowds of Stiggers, and Stigger Wenchies would Permit me! Everything looked Green and refreshing, and I had two or three good rolls in the Grass, which was growing to the height of four or five feet. It appeared to me, to be splendid land for Potatoes, Corn, or any other Vegetables, But, They are too lazy to raise it. What they do raise, is done altogether by the Women, who merely put it in the ground, and if it comes to anything, well and Good. If not they pull it up & Plant some more. The Pine Apples, Oranges, Limes, Bananas & Plantains, require no care, but, what is supplied by Nature. Their Huts are similar to our hen huts to home. You can scarcely stand up in them, and it is a large one that you can stand up in, and covers a square of ten feet. The only Furniture or utensils I saw in them, was some sort of a Log, or Bench, to sit on one or two Earthen Pots for cooking, three Stones for a Fire Place to set the Pots on, a few Bamboos laid lengthwise on the Earth floor, with a single Grass Mat to lay on it for a Bed, Being neither wind, or water tight. The sides of them stuck full of all sorts of misshapen little wooden images, which they call Giddy Giddys, and have the Superstition, to believe they will Protect them from Sickness, & all kinds of Treachery from their Enemies, & they never leave their houses without taking one of their Giddy Giddys along with them, for protection.



## Hauled Over The Coals.

145

They are Great thieves, if they get a chance. but, they go so nearly naked that there is but a poor chance for them, to steal anything about Their Persons. They however, managed to steal our Crow Bar, and all our Chain hooks, last time we were here. At sundown, we all came off, and I thought I would die of laughing, to hear the men, chaffing each other about the woolly headed, sweet scented damsels, that each accused the other of having kissed. Some of them, being without their knives, others stolen of it shirt, frock, or some other article, that they <sup>were</sup> known to wear when going onshore. And as it was well known to them all, that the soot black Angels favours, could be purchased for any old half worn garment, a half worn knife, or kerchief, or even two or three gilt Buttons, each one, demanded an account of the article, or articles, that it was found another came away stolen of, And such another Patched up mass of excuses, I never heard. But as it was known there was neither Rum nor fruit to be bought onshore, & no one having anything to show in return for what was missing, most of them, after a while, confessed, that pitying the condition, of the poor girls, they had made them presents out of pure charity, without accepting an equivalent. But they might as well tell it to the Mariners, for sailors, never could be brought to believe such nonsense. At sundown, they drove all the natives out of the ship, excepting two, who the King, said must stay, as watchmen, So the Captain set two more of our men, to watch them all Night.



## 146 Oranges, And Pine Apples.

Sunday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm. A few canoes came off to day, & we traded for what they had. We agreed yesterday with two natives, to go with us, & some of the men let them have a shirt each to wear, but, to day, they were amongst the shipping. We could not get any that would go, although we waited for that purpose until 1 P.M., and offered to leave security to bring them back in four months. There has four or five ships taken some of them off, promising to bring them back, and did not fulfill their contract and thus have made it bad, for those who is in want of them, & would bring them back. At 1 P.M. we got under weigh, and ran down the Coast about 20 miles farther, where we came to anchor and made all snug at Sundown, in 15 fathoms of water, five miles from shore. See Kalenia (Page 367)

Monday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm. Got our Anchor, & let her drift with the current, which is setting to the starboard. After Breakfast, We got down our Oranges, & counted them. There was About 1600. We took 80 each in the Steerage, making 240. Gave them 1036 forward, making 74 for each Man, and The Rest of them, The Captain, Mate, Second Mate, & Steward took care of. We then counted the Pine Apples, & found we had 175. We sent 105 forward, which made 7½ for each Man. We took a dozen each in the Steerage, making 36. The rest went to the Officers, & Steward, having had the first pick of them, as well as the Oranges. We had besides this, 26 bunches of Bananas, 2 bunches of Plantains, 17 Pumpkins, a dozen Water Melons, (only 2 of which was ripe, & we sent one of them forward to the Men.) 440 Limes, about 50 Eggs, a Large



# Our Kabenda Recruits. 147

Basket of Casada, 3 Pecks of Shelled Corn, 200 heads of Green Corn, 1 Peck of Shelled Green Peas, 50 Pounds of Fresh Fish, enough Cabbage for 10 Heads, Some Red Peppers, Tomatoes, & Palm Cuts. Together with lots of Thin Hats, Giddy Giddy &c, that the other bought for themselves. But, what I wanted most, was not to be had here, that is, Shells. All we Traded with them was, Iron hoops, Fish Hooks, Yellow Soap, and Empty Bottles. And I don't think all we let go, was worth over 10 dollars. We also got 15 Fowls, and two large Ducks. Pigs, or Goats, they would only exchange for cloth, & we had none of the article to spare. I Bought me a fine Jackknife, from the King, for three Empty Bottles. About one o'clock to day, we Passed an English Steamer, at Anchor abreast of Chalimba. At Sundown, we Anchored in 15 fathoms water, about 8 Miles from land, and right abreast of a River, the name of which I do not know. We did not make over 18 or 20 miles to day, having very little air. (Excepting foul air from the effects of Bananas.)

Tuesday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine & nearly Calm, we hove up anchor, & made all we could to Northward, which was very little. We saw two English Side Paddle Steamers. And one large French screw Steamer, Bark Rigged, bound up the coast, with two native Sunches in tow. Broke out For Bread, and Flour, and Soap, which was served out to all that wanted them, but, as yet I can get along without any. Wednesday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm. Hove up anchor, and let her drift. Saw a Large English Screw Steam Frigate, she Passed close enough to see that her name, Conflict, was on her stern, what I never saw



## 148 Running Down The Coast.

on an English Man of War before. A English Schooner, & A French Side Raddle Steamer, Brig Rigged, also passed us; All bound up the Coast. About 11 A M we got A breeze, and At 3 P M we Passed by Loango River, and Trading station. It lies in the Lat<sup>d</sup> of  $4^{\circ}39'$  South, and the Long<sup>d</sup> of  $11^{\circ}42'$  East. We could see A couple of French, and One English Flag, flying at the Stations, as we Passed along. At Sundown we came to Anchor, in 10 Fathoms of water, 5 miles from land. I forgot to mention, that we had four fowls for dinner yesterday, and the other 11 we killed to day, giving seven of them to the men forward, & kept the other four for ourselves. They were quite A treat, Roasted, & Curried. Thursday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. Up anchor again, & kept away down the coast, about 5; & from that to 8 Miles from land, Our Grounding, varying from 8, to 15 fathoms. Saw A Number of fishing canoes. At Sundown, came to Anchor in 10 fathoms water, and eight miles from the land. Friday 11<sup>th</sup> Had A smart Shower of rain just before daylight. At daylight, having A good breeze, we up Anchor, & kept away again. At 7 A M we saw A Sail ahead, who hove too for us. At 9 A M, she hailed us to heave to, & she would send A boat on board. We hove to, and they came on board. She Proved to be H B M Eighteen Gun Brig, Hercules. The Sailing Master, who Boarded us, appeared to me to be not more than half Baked, first he examined our Register, and then our Articles, but, seeing so many men for such A little Craft, he did not know what to make of it. Besides this, there was A Number of



## Taken For A Slave.

149

Consular certificates, for men we discharged & others we had shipped, attached by seals to the Articles, which the Poor Ignoramus, could make neither head nor tail of, so he sent the Boat for his Captain. All hands were then mustered aft, even the other heads were called down. He then asked all their names, & found them on the Articles, & certificates. But, it was laughable to look at. When he called Coffins name, he asked him what he was, What an I! Why I am an American! No, No! what trade are you. I am Carpenter. When he came to me, he asked my name, & then said What are you? A Jersey Blue I replied, Whats that? A State of New Jersey American. But what are you onboard this ship? Dnd little account, but, still Coxwain of the Skiffers Gig. You are impertinent sir! Thank you, I feel proud in being able to imitate an English Officer! he let me alone, But, the rest had got their cue, & there was fun enough I can tell you. They dare not take our hatches off, & our old man began to get a little huffy, telling them they had exceeded their authority now. They however still staid, and sent the Boat back to the Brig again. They then walked back and forth by the main hatches, listening if they could hear any Niggers below, until our old man got out of all Patience. He told them it was the first good breeze we had, had for five days and he wanted to improve it, so he would lift the hatches for to satisfy them. Otherwise they might stop for a week, & he would see them damned first. So we took off the hatches, & let them look at our oil casks, but, as they were all empty they did not appear to be satisfied as yet. The old man



150 A Sawing Match. June 1858.

Then told them, he was going to square away, & if they attempted to interfere, he would haul down the Ensign & throw the ship on their hands. So they concluded to leave, though I am certain, they believe us to be a Slaver in disguise. We ran until Sundown, and then came to Anchor, 6 miles from Land, 8 fathoms of Water. Lat  $\approx 3:50^m$  South.

Saturday 12<sup>th</sup> Thick & Foggy nearly all day. up Anchor as usual, but, very little wind. Saw a Brig inshore of us, which we called a Merchant man. At Sundown Anchored as usual.

Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm. After washing decks, the Old man inquired who had the next to the morning anchor watch. John Andersson replied I had it Sir, then said the Captain, what made you go below before you were relieved? I called Dan twice Sir, and he did not turn out. Why didnt you call me then? I didnt like to call you Sir. No but you liked to go below & leave the deck without being relieved, so now you can stay on deck all day to day. Bye Bye Sir. And after this, continued the Captain, let each man give the one who is to relieve them, ten minutes to relieve the watch, & if he is not up in that time, why call me, & I will see about it. But dont you, none of you, ever leave the deck again, without being relieved. If you do, I will punish you, & severely too. Would you have a man stay on deck all night? Replied Andersson, I would have you stay until you are relieved, and I will have it too! What all Night said Dan? Yes all night, if you are not Relieved. I am damned said Andersson, if I stay



## A Regular Set to.

151

all night, for you or any other man! Shut up your head Sir! No I won't shut up my head Sir! You won't! and with that the Captain made a grab for Anderson, and Anderson calling him a big fat headed Bugger, clinched the Captain and at it they went, hammer and tongs, Pulling hair, Punching, biting, & scratching each other, until the Captain called on Mr Warner to take him off. (For all hands stood looking on, & no one interfered) The Mate then separated them, both bleeding freely, & the Captain told the Mate to put him in the Rigging. With that Anderson pulled off his shirt, & no one went near him, Give me fair play! Cried he and I will fight you like a Man. Come on then Replied the Captain! and Mr Warner take the dog away. They were then in the Port waist, and the Captain Pulling the Remains of his shirt off, which Anderson had made ribbons of, they squared off for each other, making but one pass, when they again clinched each other, and commenced pulling hair, scratching, biting, & striking, when they could get a chance, until they got each other nearly tuckered out, & Anderson sung out to the Mate repeatedly, to take the Captain off, but no one touched them, until, as if by mutual consent, they let go their holds. Anderson ran to the deck tub, & began bathing his face in water, saying he did not want to fight any more. You don't eh! replied the Captain, but I haven't done with you yet. Well Sir replied Anderson, you are Captain, and I am only a sailor, & you know it is not a Right thing, for us to fight here. Well then keep



## 152 The Fight Finished

your jaw between your teeth you damned Irish man! Replied the Captain. There you are! There you are! shouted Anderson, that shows your Principle, & shows how much of the gentleman you are, to throw at Mans Country up to him! Suppose I should call you, a damned Yankee Bugger, would not that look well, hey! A great many more angry retorts came from each to the other, & at last, Anderson said he was an English Subject, & he would have satisfaction the next English cruiser that came alongside. The Captain then told him to go forward, and do as he was told, for he did not care for his English cruisers, he was the Captain of his own ship, & would be obeyed. You dont care for them! replied Anderson contemptuously, why you were pale as a sheet, & ready to ~~st~~ your self, when they were onboard the other day! and since it has come to this, I wont stay on deck now all day for you! You wont! said the Captain wont you! No I will see you done first & then I wont! replied Anderson. Well I will make you replied the Captain! and he then ordered the officers, to seize him up in the Mizzen Rigging, so they called Anderson, who came aft without showing any resistance, saying he would like to have the Captain give him three dozen, but, mind said he, it will be the dearest job you ever done in your life! They then seized him up to the Mizzen Looms, the Captain and him abusing each other, all the time. The Captain then got a fathom of threead rattine staff, & laid it whiffed at both ends, taking the Right of it in his right hand, he struck him sixteen times



# A Flogging Match.

153

across the small of the Back, & kidneys, the ends of the rattlin stuff, coming round on his belly. the poor fellow roared for mercy, & they had to give him some water; to keep him from fainting away. the Brutal wretch! our Captain, after making him promise everything he pleased, told the mate to let him down, & sent him forward, his back, kidneys, & lower part of his Belly, all Bloodshot from the Blows of the rattlin stuff. It was the most Brutal flogging, I ever saw, for when flogging was lawful in the American service, it was only lawful, to flog on the Back, between the shoulders. The Captain however was pretty well used up, having his face well marked, and scarcely able to use his right arm. After Breakfast, he Bathed his arm repeatedly, & kept his berth all day, complaining of the Rheumatics, the cowardly Brute after trying his Best to whip the man, & found he could not, to seize him up & flog him, I would not thought so much of it, if he had put him in Irons, & I think we will hear more about it Bye & Bye, I hope so anyhow. About 9 A.M. a light breeze sprang up, & we got under weigh, but, by the time we had all sail made, it died away calm, so we laid drifting until 4 P.M., when we let go anchor again, & putted the sails. Our Captains Rheumatics, was so bad, that he could not turn out for his supper, and I know I am not the only one by a dozen, that would like to see him unable, to ever turn out again. Anderson, and myself were kept on deck all day. for I was the One that he called, But as God is my Judge At the last day! I do not recollect hearing him, if he did.



# 154 A Game Of Cross Purposes.

Monday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & light breeze. Up anchor at daylight. At 12 O'clock, we were abreast of Myumbia, (or Myumbia or yumbia) which lies about the latitude of 3:30 South. Saw the Tropic Bird ahead, by 5<sup>th</sup> P.M. we got down to her, & came to anchor, five miles from shore, in ten fathoms of water, & abreast of Red bluff. Captain King came on board, & our Kate went there, and they continued their visit, until 9 in the evening, conversing on different subjects, and especially about the Flamingos, which they say ought to be here by this time. This being the place where the San Francisco got her oil two years ago. The Old fellow got the Band apt to play for him, but as fast as one got his instrument tuned, another was out of tune, & when they would get a going together, every one played their own tune, & finally they dropped off forward one after the other.

Tuesday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & nearly calm all day. Both ships got under weigh at daylight. Our Old Seamount was in a Devil of a Pet, because we would not shanty, when heaving up the anchor this morning. So he gave the Kate orders to let nobody do any sewing, or mending on deck to day, or any other day, that we did not sing at the windlass. As I could not sew, I went to work on some Iron, to make myself a pair of Gaiters. Saw Plenty of Bonfraises yesterday, & to day, likewise Devil fish, & any quantity of small fish. It dying away calm, about 4<sup>th</sup> P.M., we both came to anchor, five miles from the shore, in 10 fathoms of water, and about three miles apart.



# Gamming

155

I forgot to mention, that the Tropic Bird had been in the Myumbra, for wood, & they say, there is plenty of Yams there, but, not ripe yet. They had about 20 Parrots on board, that they had bought there.

Wednesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & very light winds. We both got under weigh, & drifted down the coast some 15 miles or so, and at sundown, came to anchor, about half of mile apart. After we stowed the sails, The Captain Went on board of her, to spend the Evening, and I went also. I got a Knife, some thread, & some Fish hooks, & let them have some Fruit, (as they could get none in Myumbra) some Rocks, and a Pair of Stockings. The Captain got some fish for bait, and he gave them our stone key, which every one in the ship is glad of. I undertook to mend a Pair of Pants to day, in my watch below, & the Captain stopped me from it, and ordered me below, saying, we would get tired of not singing, before ~~he would~~ he would get tired of keeping us from sewing, But I told him, if there was no sewing done by me, until I sung at the Windlass, My Posteriors might become a Looking Glass for the Ships Company. All hands fore & aft, swear they will sing no more for him, but, I don't know how long it will hold out. He prolonged our visit until 11 O'clock this <sup>evening</sup> when we bid each other good night, with fair promises of being neighbours, while handy by. Thursday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine with very light winds. We both got under weigh again, & stood down the coast, until five O'clock in the afternoon, when we both came to anchor, in 10 fathoms water, & miles from shore, & Rocky bottom. This Boat



# 156 The Wrong Fish Hooked.

with Captain, and Boats crew, came on board, and brought a dozen fine fish, as at Present. We had our lines out, but, I only caught two large Red Porgies, and two Conger Eels before dark. About Nine O'clock, I caught a Large Snapper, about 20 Pounds weight, a Beautiful Fish. Shortly afterwards I caught another, still larger, & in slinging him in on deck, over the Waist Boat, the other large Cod hook, that was attached to the line, caught in the Back of my hand, between the little and the third finger of my left hand, pulling me after the fish, & sinking the whole business of the hook in my hand. I cut the hook clear of the line, & went for the Cabin, where both Captains consulted on it, & had to split my hand open, before they got it out, cutting off one of the cords of the little finger in the Operation. Captain King was Obligated to leave ~~to leave~~ the Cabin, while Our St. fellow, Operated on me. He then came down, & they dressed it with Balsam of life, and applied a large Bread Poultice over it, as the hook was very Rusty. It being then 10 O'clock, we Parted for the night, and I took to my bed, Blessing the Fish. There was thousands of herrings all over the Ocean to day, as well as many other kinds of fish.

Friday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. At 6 A.M., Saw two Hissinfabicks, lowered Larboard and Waist boats, & gave chase, the T.B. lowered those boats, and gave chase also, About 7 A.M., the Waist Boat came up with them, & the Fleet got one Iron in slightly, which soon drew, and the Boats came on board again, got Breakfast, and hove up the anchor, made sail, and Cut off



First Hump Backs, For 1858. 157

to leeward again, and soon raised another, both ships down boats, and gave chase, but, he was too soon for them. My hand is very sore to day, but, I tried the Boat once. About 11 A M there came a canoe alongside, with five Negroes in her, and wanted us to stand in a little higher, and come to anchor, saying they had Yams, fowls, Pigs, and Peasants to trade, but, we would not go. After dinner, our Old Man went on board the T. B. to spend the day taking the Nutt in My place. About two P M another canoe came off to us, and we sent her to the other ship, who soon hauled in shore, making a signal for us to do the same we stood in within 3 miles of the Beach, and came to anchor, in 8 fathoms water, with a reef half way between us, and the shore. the two Captains then went on shore, in the Tropic Bird<sup>2</sup> boat. At 8<sup>h</sup> in the Evening, the Boat came off, leaving the two Captains on shore to pay their respects to the Chief fair ones, for there is neither white Men or Women in Little Settee Village, as this place is called. It lies in Lat<sup>d</sup> 2 40<sup>m</sup> South, and Long<sup>d</sup> 9:37<sup>m</sup> East.

Saturday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, with a very strong breeze. Our Noble Captain, got on board this Morning as early as a Bear, about 9 o'clock. but, he had not been on board five minutes, when we raised two large Hump Backs, so the Skates went off in chase as well as the other ships boats. Without success however. Our boats got back by 11 A M, but, the last of the other ships boats, did not return until Past three P M. While the Boats were



# 158 Captains, Pack Knife, & Hatchet.

Away a canoe load of Niggers came off, who saluted our Captain, as Captain Pack Knife (by which name he had passed on shore) saying they had been to see, Captain Hatchet, (Hing) and he had paid for his woman, & made them a good present besides. while some of them, kept crying out, Ah! Captain, you likee Woman too much! the old fellow tried to get rid of them, as quick as possible, & he did succeed before the boats got on board, but, not until he had given them five bottles of Rum, a Pound of Tobacco, (which his crew are suffering for) a dozen of Pipes, some bread, and a Silk Handkerchief, and a new Calico Shirt. Big pay for a night with Niggers! About 4<sup>th</sup> PM we saw two more whales, but, we would not lower for them.

At 5<sup>th</sup> PM the canoe came alongside of us again, all hands drunk, and bringing about a Peck of Taro, half a Bushel of sweet potatoes, One Pumpkin, and 4 quarts of Green Beans. And for this fat lot, he paid Six yards of white Cotton cloth, One Pound of Tobacco, One dozen of Pipes, Three Empty Bottles, and Two Bottles of Rum. It being now sundown, we started them off. They said they would bring Plenty tomorrow, if we would stop. That they had a good load this time, but, Captain Hatchet had took them all.

Sunday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine, and a Strong breeze. Whistles and off again, although we saw the canoe (and it is the only one they have got in this place) coming off loaded, but, we had no time to stop for Potatoes, for we only came here to let our Poor Suffering Captains, have a nights



# Selling Provisions.

159

Debauch, to renovate their nerves Poor Creatures.

We ran down the coast all day, with a good breeze. At 4<sup>th</sup> Lat<sup>m</sup> 2:18 South. At Sundown we came to Anchor as usual, & found we had a very strong Lee Current, & No Fish. My hand is getting along beautiful, but, I cannot make any use of it yet, for any Purpose.

Monday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & good breeze. At daylight we up Anchor, and away again, At 9<sup>h</sup> A.M. two canoes came alongside, to whom the Captain sold thirty <sup>add</sup> pounds of Beef & Pork, some Sugar & Bread, for <sup>& Coffee</sup> Seven Dollars in Cash. About 12 another one came alongside, who wanted us to Anchor & Trade, but, he only got laughed at for his pains. One thing I have remarked, that the Canoes come off the ships very often, as much as ten miles, But, they never bring off anything in their canoes, (not even as much as a drink of water for themselves) until they have got your Promise, to trade, and for what reason I never could tell. At 4<sup>th</sup> we were in Lat<sup>m</sup> 1:26 South. Saw no whales today. Cast a New Hand Lead, 10 Pounds weight, and made a new Lead Line, 28 fathoms in length. At Sundown, came to Anchor, 13 fathoms, Sandy Bottom, and 9 miles from the Land.

Tuesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine, & good breeze. At daylight, we got under weigh, and at 12 O'clock, we were abreast Cape Lopez, which lies in thirty six South. At Sundown, we came to Anchor, in 18 Fathoms water, about 20 miles from Land. The Trofic Bird being close to us, Capt<sup>n</sup> King came aboard of us, and Mr Warner went there, Until 9 in the Evening, when they returned to their own ships.



## 160 The Island Of Corisco.

Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine, & good breeze. Took our anchor and away we went. We supposed, we crossed the line about 8 o'clock, and are now in the North Atlantic Ocean. We saw, and lowered for Whales, twice to day, from both ships, and the last time, Patterson darted at one, but, did not reach him. Saw a Merchant Brig, and Schooner, close in under the land, which might be slavers, for what we know. At sundown came to anchor, in 14 Fathoms of water, five miles from land.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine, & good breeze. Saw some Whales, and both ships lowered once, but, without success. they still however, appear to be all working to the Northward. At sundown, we both came to an anchor, on the North shore, at the mouth of the River Gaboon, which lies between the lat<sup>e</sup> of 20, and 35 miles South, and between the **Longitude**, of nine & ten degrees East.

Friday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine, & light breeze. At daylight we got under weigh again, and steered away to the Northward. At 12 O'clock, a Canoe came alongside, and showed us a Recommendation, from Captain North, of the Helen Augusta, who recruited here last year. So we stood in, & came to anchor, in five fathoms & a half of water, on the N.E. side of the Island, about half a mile from shore, with the Intention of getting some Yams, and Potatoes, & giving us a days run on shore, each way. The Island is called Corisco, & lies nearly in the Centre, of the mouth, of Corioco Bay. The T.B. came to anchor, about two miles astern of us, and I don't know whether he intends, to get anything here, or not.



# A Visit To The Missionaries. 161

Saturday 26<sup>th</sup> June, Sent off a large canoe, over to the Island of Gobi, for Potatoes, & yams, giving them for trade, Some Powder, Soap, Calico Shirts, Salt, Salt Fish, & an old Basket. After Breakfast, the Starboard watch got ready, and went on shore, landing on the N E side of the Island. Myself, and the Second Mate, Struck a Path, with the intention of crossing the Island, But, after wading through numberless puddles of water, we at last came to an impassible Swamp, and were Obliged to retrace our steps. We got back by 1<sup>st</sup> O'clock, and then took the Beach road, with the intention of traveling round the Island, a distance of fifteen miles, and call on the Missionaries, at the three different stations. The first one we came to, was on the North Side of the Island, a Mr De Heer, a native of Holland, But, a Naturalized American. He informed us, that he had Emigrated to the United States, in 1850. In 1855 he Entered on his Mission to this Island, with his Wife, and One Daughter, and had Another Daughter Born, on the Passage out. His wife fell a Prey to the Prevalent fevers of this Coast, about a year After his arrival here, and his children beginning to show some Symptoms of decay, he had sent them to the United States again, and he said, he felt it very lonesome now, But, it was Gods will, and he would not Murmur. After Passing about half an hour with him, in conversation, we bid him Adieu, and started for the Head station, on the West Side of the Island. This Station, was Occupied by a Mr & L, Hacker, of Pennsylvania, and his Lady, they had been here for several years, and appeared to be in Age, About 40 years. They had a Delightful



## 162 Crangusimba Station.

Situation, on a slight Eminence, and in full view of the Ocean, a large wooden dwelling house, with out houses, and a school house, for females. Surrounded by fruit trees of different kinds, suited to the climate, a Boat house on the beach, with two fine Boats. And a Church for divine Service. We saw also a Grey horse the only domestic animal on the Island, with the exception, of Pigs, and Goats. They were very glad to see us, as they had seen none of their Countrymen, for nearly a Year. They pressed upon us to take dinner with them, and then escorted us over the Premises, and through the Schoolhouse. Where we saw about 25 young girls, from the ages of 6, to 20, very neatly clothed, and all very busy braiding their hair, and Mrs Mackey informed us, that she always gave them Saturday Afternoon, to prepare for Sunday. They also informed us, that they had no hopes of doing anything, for the Crown People, and the only way they could get scholars, was to take them, and board, and clothe them, their own Parents, not even contributing the slightest compensation for it. And continued she, you would scarce believe it! their Parents bring such food as the children like, but, not one Particle will they leave, until they are paid for it. Some of the children she said, liked to come to School, but, the most of them, like our children to home, would much rather play. This Tribe, is called the Benga Tribe, and consists of about three thousand Persons, This Island alone, has a Population of 1200. The Tribes in general, along the Coast, he informed us, average, from three, to five thousand each Tribe, and all have a different Language. They have children



Agoba Station. June 1858 163

from several different Tribes on the Coast, with the view of Educating them, and then sending them amongst their own Tribes. We spent a couple of hours at this Interesting Place, and obtained some Papers as late as March. We then bade them adieu wishing them Success in their Endeavors, and in return, they wished us a Successfull Voyage. The Children all shook hands with us, and bid us Good bye! in Good English, and made us promise, if we ever Returned to the Island, to pay them another visit, which we readily agreed to do. Mr Mackey, then Accompanied us a short way, and told us he had, had some Pigs, and Bullock at one time, But, the Natives had made several Complaints about them, so he killed them off, as he did not wish to create any ill will from the Natives. We then Started for the Other Station, and on our way fell in with a Native, who had some Charts, one of which was a Chart of Ferdinand de Po, where we intend to Cruise, and Mr Jenney, Succeeded in Purchasing it, for a White Silk Pocket Handkerchief. We then continued on our way, and about three o'clock, Arrived at the Other Station, on the South East side of the Island. This was Occupied by Mr T. S. Ogden, and Lady. A young Couple from New Jersey. They were Overjoyed to see us, particularly Mrs Ogden, and when I informed her, I was from her Native State, her Joy appeared to have no bounds. They had Only Arrived here last January, and had no Family. They had a Pleasant Situation, much on the same Scale as Mr Mackey's, with the one Exception of Fruit Trees, which were only just as it were, set out, They kept us busy conversing



164 Mr & Mrs Ogden.

different topics, I insisted on us taking Tea with them, & tried to prevail on us, to stop all night, but, although it was our wish to do so, we were obliged to refuse them, as our Orders were, to be on board by Sundown. Their School consisted of Males. Fine hearty little fellows, well conducted, and most of the Oldest Scholars, speaking good English. Mrs Ogden, smilingly informed me, that she thought it would be a long time, before she should learn the Native tongue, as their Scholars all learned English so quick. And furthermore remarked, that they were not only quick of comprehension, but, had remarkable good memories. I could not help telling her, that it would be very hard for me, to spend my days in this solitary place, away from friends, & country. Ah! she replied, there is nothing could tempt me to it, But, for the Good of the Mission, and my duty to God, and my fellow creatures. I have my Dear Husband with me, besides my numerous Family of Native Children who show a great deal of Affection, and Love towards us, and one another, & I have not much time to complain, even were I so inclined, Which may God Forbid! I should think it very unpleasant for you, continued she, to be away from friends, and home, on your long voyages, of your own Free will, seeking for Naught, but Worldly treasure, Still, God in his wisdom, has allotted us, each our different tasks to perform, And May he in his Mercy, Grant, that when called upon at the last day, we may be able to Exclaim, Lord! we have strove to perform our tasks faithfully! to which I replied with a hearty Amen.



## Our Return To The Vessel.

165

We spent the time very agreeably until five O'clock, when as we had a long walk before us, we parted with them, taking with us their well wishes, & giving them ours, with promises of another visit should we ever return here. It seemed like leaving dear friends at home again, so well acquainted had we got in the short space we tarried there. And Mrs Ogden could not refrain from tears, when we parted with a friendly shake of the hand. They sent one of the Scholars to show us a short cut, who after putting us on the right track, shook hands with us, as did a number of others who had followed for curiosity. We then made tracks I can tell you, as it was getting late, and we got back opposite the ship a little after sundown, having circumnavigated the Island, a distance of 15 miles, since 11 O'clock in the forenoon. We found the Boat waiting for us, all the rest having previously gone onboard. We were tired enough I can assure you, but I would willingly travel the same distance again for as much enjoyment as I had this day, and it will long be remembered by me, and I think also by Mrs Ogden, as we were the first whites she has seen since her arrival here. The Island is composed apparently of a heap of sand, nearly snow white all through. I saw no dark colored soil, or loam. The Island is well watered, and very fruitful. They raise abundance of sweet Potatoes, both for their own use & to supply Ships. The Woods was alive with beautiful Feathered Songsters, as well as large quantities of Grey Parrots, and White Pigeons.



## 166 Corisco, Its Productions.

Mr Mackey told us, he had tried in vain to raise Onions, & Peaches, neither of which would grow. The Island he said, was capable of producing six times as much as it did, both in Vegetation, and Live stock, such as Pigs, Goats, Fowl & Ducks, but, the natives as yet could not be got to cultivate the Land very extensively, still they were slowly improving from year to year, & yet continued he, they are very imprudent, for if they see anything aboard the ships, which touches here, that takes their Fancy, they will part with their last Breeding Pig, Goat, Duck, Fowl, & even the seed they have saved for the ground, but what they will have it, even if it is of no manner of use, but to ornament their Persons. In Passing through several of their Villages, I observed that their houses, as also their Persons, were neater, and cleaner, than any I have seen on the Coast, Most of them having some European utensils, such as chairs, Tables, & Earthenware. & very few, if you call for a drink, but what can produce a Pitcher and Tumbler. The Name of this Tribe is Benga, and the Head Missionary Station is named Crangusimba. The Traffic Bird, still lies to anchor about 2 miles to the N E of us, but have sent no boat in as yet. So now Good Night for I am very Tired.

Sunday 27<sup>th</sup> A Beautiful day, & I am somewhat stiff from the Effects of my walk yesterday. After Breakfast, the Larboard watch went ashore, with the exception of the Abate, and one or two others, who preferred taking their liberty.



# Mr Mackey, & Ogden's Visit.

167

onboard. The Captain hearing the & Mr Kenney, speaking in such high Praise of of Mr and Mrs Ogden, took advantage of an invitation they had sent him, & left the Ship with his boat, and a boat's crew, at half Past ten A M, to pay them a visit. The rest of us spent the day Reading, and writing, & sleeping, only two or three Canoes having come off, without any trade worth mentioning. The liberty men all came off at sundown, some of them having walked all the way round the Island. The Captain got back about seven O'clock in the Evening, having paid a visit to the Ogden's, at, & Goba Station, and Mr Mackey at Evangelisimba Station, but had not time to stop at Mr De Theers who resides at the Alongs Mission. Night was fine & good Moonlight

Monday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine. After Breakfast the Mate took seven hands besides himself on a Birds Egg, and Iron Pole Expedition, to a small sandy Island in the Bay, about nine O'clock Over trading Canoe returned, bringing about nine Bushels of sweet Potatoes, and also the Basket, Soap & salt fish, which would not trade. At half Past 11 A M, Mr Mackey, accompanied by Mr Ogden, came on board to pay us a visit, and Brought about 6 Bushels of sweet Potatoes with them. They staid and took dinner with us, we having killed & roasted a Duck, and had some Preserved Meats Besides. After dinner the Captain let them have about half a Chest of tea, Six Ham's, (all there was in the Ship) Twenty Balls of Lamp Wick, Some Mercurial Ointment, & a Bottle of Quinine, (for which last article they paid him five Dollars in Cash) For the Tea, Ham's



168 Leaving Corisco. June 1858.  
Lamp Wick, they let him have the Potatoes, and  
Paid him the Ballance in Cash. (how much it was  
I do not know, but it was considerable.) I sent some  
Shells, and a few Sweet Oranges, to Mrs Ogden  
as a Present. They Bid us all good bye, and left us  
about half Past two O'clock P.M. At three P.M.  
Mr Warner Returned, having Got about 200  
Gulls Eggs, and 50 Iron Poles. The Captain then  
took the Boat, and Landed, sending her Back.  
The (the Boatsteerer) then divided the Iron Poles, &  
stowed them away. At Sundown the Captain  
hailed, and we sent the boat in, he brought  
of two ducks for an excuse, for well we all  
knew what he went after. We then Got supper,  
and as the Captain had heard, (at least he said so)  
that some of the men intended to run away,  
he made us Boatsteerers stand the watches to  
Night, without any Company.

Tuesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze. At daylight  
we up anchor, and as the Missionaries had told  
him, it was the Rainy season at Ferdinand de Po  
we kept away to the Westward, for Princes Island,  
Which lies in the latitude of  $13^{\circ}33'$  North and the  
Longitude of  $7^{\circ}27'$  East. we saw a number  
of Humpbacks before we lost sight of the  
land, all bound to leeward. At Sundown we  
single reefed the Topsails, and stood boat crew  
watches. Night fine &c

Wednesday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze. Dried  
our Potatoes. At 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  P.M. saw the Land, and kept  
away for it. At 6 P.M. came to anchor, in  
St Antonio Bay, half a mile from shore, and in  
13 fathoms of water. Saw a Portuguese Brig



# Princes Island.

169

come out of the harbour, & stand away seaward. saw three or four Humpbacks Breaching, and finning, out side. The Custom House Boat Boarded us, but as he did not talk English, we must go onshore tomorrow, to learn the Rules. Stood anchor watches, two in a watch again. Thursday, 1<sup>st</sup> Day of July Fine. Caught 4 fine fish, called Cavallies before breakfast. After breakfast, The Captain Went onshore, & I went also. We had quite a Pull, I should think all of five miles from the Ship to the Town, it is quite a large bay, much in this shape.

The Town is quite a large Place, Built like Most Portuguese Settlements, the Houses Being Built of Mud & Stones, & Whitewashed outside.

I saw several Catholic Churches, & was Informed that that the Island contained over five thousand Inhabitants, a Mixture of Portuguese & African. There are two small & shallow Rivers, one each side of the Town. But as I had but little time for examination of the Place, I will try and give a better description of it if I get onshore again. I traded away a New Shirt, a new Pants, and a New Pair of Shoes, for about Six Pounds of the Native Leaf Tobacco, Twisted up. It is poor stuff, but Better than none. We only remained a short time, when we stood off & returned on board, Two of our men (Coffin & Haviland) being pretty well over the Bay. The Man left the Ships Papers onshore, & says that he will have nothing to pay for staying here, so he intends to stay a week, & see if the whales come in. We saw several Blowing outside to day.



## 170 St Antonio Bay.

Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Strong breeze. After Breakfast we sent two Boats Round to Seaward of the Island, to see what kind of a Place it was, & if there was any whales there. The rest of us got the Starboard Anchor off the Bow, & bent the cable. About two P.M. the Boats returned, & Reported it very Smooth to Seaward, & one or two small Bays, with brack water but had seen no Whales. At 4 P.M. we got the ship under weigh, & beat up from figure one in the sketch, to figure 2, & came to Anchor again, in nine fathoms and a half water, gave her 45 fathom of cable, got Supper, set the watches, & turned in. I forgot to mention, that yesterday the Captain Bought 17 Large yams, & 6 Coconuts (with which the Island appears to be covered) for one dollar, from a canoe that came alongside, (although it is against the law to allow one alongside) & then got another lot of 10 Coconuts, & half a dozen Sour Sops, for half a Dollar.

Saturday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & blowing Strong. Saw several Whales outside, but it was too rough to go after them. At 8 A.M. the Old man took a boats crew, & went ashore to copy a Chart of the Island. At 10 A.M. the Spanish Steamer Vasco, Muniz, De Balboa, 1100 tons, & 350 Horse Power, came in, from Ferdinand de Po, and had in tow the Spanish Government Schooner, Corto Grenada. They came to Anchor, & Exchanged National Salutes with the Fort. At 2 P.M. the Captain came on board with his Chart. At Sundown the Engineer of the Spanish Steamer, (a Scotsman) came on board to get a pair of Boats for his Captain, Our Skipper let him have his India Rubbers to



# Fourth of July Excursions. 171

take back, and see if they would do. They gave him an Invitation to dinner tomorrow, at 4 P.M. Night was fine, and every appearance of a fine day tomorrow. Sunday 4<sup>th</sup> Day of July. Got on early breakfast and then went outside with the Boats, But, it came on to blow so, that we were glad to Put back for the Ship, and we got on board again by nine o'clock. The Captain then gave the Second Mate & boats crew, liberty to go on shore for the day, but, gave no money. He then got ready himself and we went on board the Balboa, Steamer. There we got Permission to look at her, and the Engineer furnished us a Guide, to show us the Vessel. She was brig rigged, with a flush deck fore and aft, and propelled by side Paddles. All her Machinery was of English manufacture. She mounted 4 32 Pounders, 2 on a side, and two 68 Pounds, one forward and one aft, on Railways, & they were all Spanish Cast. They appeared to be all busily employed, as if there was no such thing as Sunday. We took the Engineer & our Captain on shore, where we remained until half Past 3 P.M., running all over the town, in and out of every house, where the People were very Sociable, and Accommodating, & would take anything in the way of trade, even to an old half worn Shirt, or Jackknife. At half Past three, we took our Gentl to the Steamer, and came on board of our own vessel to get our own dinner, I then took 15 Pounds of bread on loan for the Engineer, and we took him and our Old Man on shore, where we remained until half Past 10 P.M. We went on an expedition to steal some Coral stones, off of a Stone wall, for the



172 The Bark Pearl Of New London.  
Engineer of the Steamer, in which we succeeded,  
and he gave us \$1 dollar & seventy five cents. we  
got on board our own ship, after leaving the  
Engineer at the Steamer, about half Past 11 P.M.  
the Other Boat got on board about nine P.M., and  
most all in both Boats were pretty well busy.  
We got a few late papers from the Engineer.  
One whale came in the bay to day while we  
were all away, and the Mate said, if he had An-  
other Boat he thought he could have caught him  
Monday 5<sup>th</sup> Strong breeze. We up anchor at  
daylight, and ran to the leeward, and came to anchor  
on the N.E. side of the Island, a while from shore,  
and in 8 fathoms of water. We then got breakfast  
and the Mate took a boat and went sounding  
all over the Bay. he returned about 10 A.M.,  
reporting the water quite deep, getting no less  
than three fathoms and a half, within a ships  
length of the Beach. The Captain then took the  
boat, and went on shore, where he bought a  
good sized Pig for \$2.50, and two fowls & half a  
dozen Coconuts. Some canoes came alongside  
in the course of the day, and the Captain got  
over 100 large Yams for four dollars, 6 fowl for  
one dollar, & 100 ears of Corn (Green) for a bar  
of Soap, and two biscuits, besides a lot of Onions,  
and Banannas, for some bread. At 11 A.M. I raised  
a sail beating to windward. At 4 P.M. we up  
anchor & moved half a mile farther in shore.  
At 5 P.M. the Stranger came to anchor, and  
the Captain came on board, she proved to be the  
Bark Pearl, Geoffrey Haster, of New London.  
she had whaled it here last year, in company with



# Traded With The Pearl.

173

The Helen Augusta. The gammed until 11 o'clock and I believe they have partly agreed to stop here and trade with each other. We saw three or four whales to day, but, they were too far off shore. Tuesday, 6<sup>th</sup> Strong breezes. After Breakfast the Captain went onboard the Pearl. Lots of canoes came off to day, but, we sent them all to the Pearl to trade. After dinner we killed our old Saw. The Captains, both of them, came onboard of us about Two P.M., and got some Segars & Money, and then went ashore, where they remained until near Sundown, when they came onboard again, bringing with them a Saffron colored Portoguese, who staid until 7 in the evening, when I had to take a boat & land him. The Captains staid onboard of us, & the Whales onboard the Pearl until half past ten in the evening, amidst the murmuring of those who needed sleep. We saw three or four whales to day, at long ways off, outside. Wednesday, 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. At sunrise we took the Starboard, and waict boats, and gave the Pearl a tow into the N<sup>W</sup> light of the bay, within the Eight of a mile from the Rocks, where she came to anchor in six fathoms of water. We then went onboard, got breakfast, and hove up our anchor, when her boats came & gave us a tow in close to the Pearl, where we down our hook also. I then got the line in the Boat (as if we were going outside to look for whales) and went along side of the other ship, got Captain G, and went ashore, where we remained until dinner time, whilst the Captains amused themselves with the Nigger squaws, leaving the Second Mate to



# 174 Pleasure Excursions.

go outside alone after whales, and he would have been a fool in my opinion, to strike one, if, he had a chance, being out of sight of the ship, and no other boat with him. At noon we shoved off, and went on board of the Pearl to dinner, sending the Mate Mr Chaffell on board of us with his boats crew. We gammed to night until 10 O'clock & what they can find to talk about God only knows, for I Dont. We saw no Whales to day, for we stood no mast heads. Thursday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine, The same old Routine of Gamming, and, Skiffers Pleasuring on shore. P.M. Our Saffron Colored Friend came On board, and took both Captains away to dinner. At dark they came on board again, & Mr Serrey with his boats crew went on board the Pearl, where they gammed as usual until 10 in the Evening. Friday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine. Another Casper Colored, Elijah Portague, came on board, and the Captain set him every Dish, Plate, Cup and Saucer, we had, on the set we had in use, and all the base knives we had, and forks also, with the exception of what we have in use. We then went on board the Pearl, & sent the Mate Back to us. After Dinner we went on shore with the Skiffers, and they kept the Black squaws Company until five P.M. when we came on board, got Supper, and again went on shore, where we remained until after 5 P.M. They had a sort of a Chigger Fandango, most disgusting to look at, both men and Women being stripped nearly naked, and going through the most obscene Performances, too disgusting to write. The only Music they had, was a sort of a Little drum, a hollow Piece of wood,



## Trading, And Pleasuring.

175

both of which they beat upon, & a large Conch Shell, which they kept constantly blowing upon making an unearthly noise, clapping hands, and keeping time with both feet & body, to what they called Music. I was heartily tired & wet, the having to get wet, hauling the boat through the surf every time she lands, so that our noble Commanders, need not wet the soles of their feet. It is a scandalous shame, they appear to me to care for neither voyage, or the healths of the crews under them, but only for their own Pleasure. Saw no Whales to day, still here we lay, although the People on shore tells us, that there will be no whales in the Bays, before August, and I can't see why we should not go over to the Coast, where we left whales, & then, if they want to! why, let them come here again in August. But No! he acts to me as if he did not care, whether he got a Voyage or not. The ground up our Gam and Excursion, as usual by 10 P.M.

Saturday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine. After Breakfast the two Chief Whalers took their Boats, and went round to St Antonio's Bay on a Fishing Excursion. At 9 A.M. Our Saffron Colored Trader of Yesterday, sent us 100 Gams, and a good sized Barrow Rig, in the way of trade. At ten Captain G. came after Our Beauty, and they went off on a Pleasure trip, the opposite way from the Whalers, but, I plead I had headache, and so got rid of this days Adventures, for if not bodily sick, I am Heart and mind sick of this Voyage, which has been thrown away, by having an Ignorant conceited, and careless fool, to conduct it. But



# 176 Selling Out Our Stock

Thank God! the way he is selling off Provisions, and every thing else, the Voyage will soon draw to a close, unless he refits her, & if he draws to do that, I for one will leave, whether he discharges me or not. About one P.M. the Captain came off to the Pearl, with only two men to pull them & sent the Boat back for the others, who they found waiting for them on the Beach. About half Past 3 P.M. the Boat got back, without any fish but as they had some Green Coconuts in the Boat, I surmised they had been fishing on shore, after they had got out of sight of the ship. After Supper the Boat came on board of us, and we had fiddling and dancing until we closed our Gam, at half Past nine o'clock.

Sunday 11<sup>th</sup> 20 Months from Home. A Fine Day. At 10 A.M. Captain Geoffrey came on board of us, & sent our Boat to Gam with the Chafiel. After Dinner the Captains went ashore, & remained until dark, while as for myself, I turned in & had a good Sleep. When he came off, he brought a Music Box to overhaul, & put in order for some Donna or another that he fell in with ashore. It may be good Business for him, But, in no way Profitable to the rest of us, or the owners, either I know. The Pearl, sent half her crew ashore to day, for a run, and five of them took a run for St Antonio, a Distance of 17 miles. Whether they have started for good, or only for French Liberty is more than I can tell. Night fine, and we ended our Gam by 8 in the Evening, quite decent!



## Glorious Times.

177

Brought one Chicken to day, for six biscuits.  
Monday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine, with strong breezes, & very heavy, Northerly swell. Killed a Pig, the last one we bought here. The old fellow very busy at his Music Box repairing, all the Forenoon. At 3 P.M., Capt. G. came on board, and took the old man off with him on shore, where they stripped a Coconut tree, of 75 Coconuts, & came off again, leaving part of them with us, & sent the warner on board the Pearl with the rest. We bought 42 Yams to day for Salt Albacor, and a Bunch of Dates for Bread. We ended our Gam by a P.M. this evening, which I consider quite reasonable for Uncle Dav.

Tuesday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine. About 10 A.M., Mr. Chapfel came on board of us, and Capt. Russell went to the Pearl, taking with him the last, and only Spruce Pole we have left, to make it present to old Geoffrey for a Boat mast. And also about one half of the Pickles we bought in St Helena. I saw that after dinner, they took their usual trip on shore, But, I should think David would first cure himself, of the Disease he has contracted now, before he gets it worse, or distributes it amongst the poor women of this Place. But, he is lying here, and I suppose I have no right to say anything, or think anything loud either, so I think as much as I like on Paper. I would come Whaling all my life, if I could only have as fine times as we are having here, and make a little money besides, I would not be covetous, a reasonable trifle would suffice me. Nothing to do! not even worst heads, to be stoop! Read, Sew, Fiddle, Sing, and



178 Jack, as good As His Master.

Dance, Night & Day! Day & Night. When one boats crew gets tired of Pleasuring onshore with the Skippers, all we got to do, is Back out, and give another Boats crew a chance. Go it Davy! I think Old Wilcox's voice, will Tingle in your Ears, more than the Change will Tingle in any of our Rockets, off of the Proceeds of this Voyage. If I was young, I would not care so much, But, It grieves me to be forced to throw away my time in this manner now. The Pearls men all got back from town to day, & you might hear them, & the Old Skipper Tawing all over the Bay. The amount of it was, they told him they had had no liberty <sup>for</sup> eight months, & as he had given them nothing to go onshore with, they had sold some clothing, went to town, and had a good time, would go again first chance they got, and would not have come back so soon, only their funds gave out. That they thought they had just as good a Right to go to Pleasuring as he had. They had shipped to go to Whaling voyage, not to lay at anchor, and Pull him round for his Pleasure. after some considerable Law on both sides, they crossed it without Bloodshed on either side. We Prolonged our Gam until nine O'clock to Night. Wednesday is the Time. Loosed the sails to air them, Saw one Whale about two miles off, But Paid no notice to him. Bought 32 Gams for Salt Albacor. After dinner the Captain cleared away his boat to go look for Pennywinkles, on the Rocks, (as he said) for fish bait, but, we did not see him again before 9 1/2 o'clock to night. I thought as much when he started, so as it was my watch below I would not go, But turned in as soon as Possible.



## Foraging Expeditions.

179

Thursday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. After Breakfast, the Larboard and Waist Boats, went round to windward of the Island to look for whales, accompanied by, the Mate of the Pearl. As soon as they were out of sight, Old Geoffrey came on board of us, and the two skippers went hard at it Playing Back Gammon. They made up to have a boat sail after dinner, so they set me to work to put another cloth in my tub, which I got done by dinner time. Just as we were about to start, the Boats came in sight, coming back. They soon got on board, our boats having about a Bushel of limes, and a lot of Coconuts, and four Saps, The Pearls boat having her share likewise. The Mate both told me Privately, that as soon as they Rounded the Point out of sight, they went onshore to have a good time, for they would be d-d! if they was going to slave themselves, and boats crews, whilst the the Captains were Whoring, & Spasming onshore. As soon as our Boats were hoisted, the two Captains Took the Pearls Boat, and went onshore, and we saw no more of him until Sundown, when he came on board, bringing a Barrow Pig, for which he said he paid £50, and a little Mollatto Boy, who belongs to some Portuguese Wench onshore, and wanted to see the Ship. He was only about four years Old, & was very quiet although he staid all night. About four O'clock this Afternoon, the Brig. Hopeton, Delano, of Siffican, thirteen months out, 19 barrels of Sperm, and 12 of Blackfish came in to an Anchor, about 20 rods from us, soon when the Captains came on board they had to have a Gam with her until 10 in the Evening. They



180 The Brig Hopetoun Of Scipican.  
Then came on board of us & staid about an hour  
concocting plans to drive the Hopetoun away.  
But, I think as the old saying is when Liquor is in  
wit is out. The Officers of the Hopetoun are  
Mr Lewis, Haathaway, and Maurie. The latter  
he got from the Tropic Bird, and was formerly  
second Officer of the Chimrod of Sagharbor.  
Friday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine, At Sunrise Captain Delano  
came On board of us, and after breakfast him  
and our skipper went to the Pearl, and from  
there all three went on shore. They returned  
to the Pearl about 3 P.M. and took dinner  
there. They sent on board of us Three ducks, Two  
Fine Turkeys, Ten Fowls, some Pumpans, and  
A Bunch of Red Bananas, the Sweetest of the  
Banana kind I have ever Eaten. While they were  
gone, I bought 11 large Yams, for A Piece of Salt  
Albacor. At Sundown they came On board of  
us, and gammed until 11 o'clock. five of our men  
staid on board the Pearl all night, and five of  
theirs remained here. Several whales came in to  
day, and the Hopetouns boats gave chase, But,  
neither us or the Pearl would lower, trying  
to Persuade them, that it was no use to chase  
the whales here, they are so wile. They however did  
not get on to them, although they lowered twice.  
Saturday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine. Washed decks, and then broke  
out A Cask of Bread, with five Hundred and  
Sixty four Pounds of Bread in it, and let Capt<sup>n</sup>  
Delano have it, together with four Shots of  
towlne, for which Capt<sup>n</sup> Russell took an  
order on their Owners. The three Captains  
then went on shore, and by 12 o'clock they

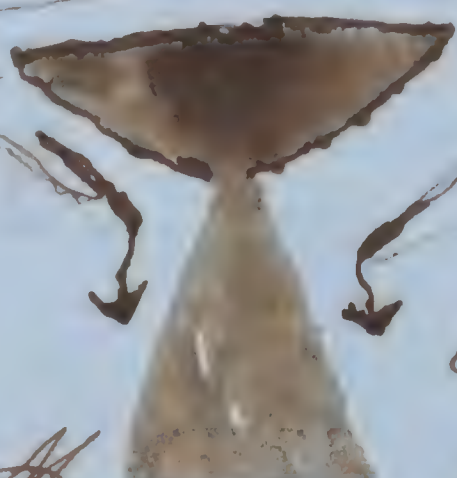


A Grand Concert, And A Row. 181  
went off to the Brig. Capt. Delano having got  
a good lot of Yams, Beans, and Potatoes. We let the  
Brig have some coal, and the Pearl, let him  
have her Bellows, to make some Big Irons.  
for Pulling up Sinking Whales. Our Captain  
let him also have one of our Big Irons in exchange  
for two Torgal Irons and two Calico shirts.  
At Sundown The Captains, and most of the  
Officers and crews of the other two Vessels, came  
Onboard of us to hear our Musicians give what  
he called a Concert and they kept it up until  
half Past ten at night.  
Sunday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine, had a general Gam all round  
to day. After dinner, the Captains went ashore  
in one boat, and the Mates in another. While  
they were off it came & half came in to the Bay  
and there was a time I can tell you. The Pearl  
had two, we had two, & the Brig had three boats  
in chase, in no time! If Either vessels Boats  
had been alone, we would have got her, as it  
was we drove her off. At night we had another  
Gam, and I got a Shade, some Tobacco, & some  
Fishhooks from the Brig. Jack Platt, got drunk  
as a Lord! & had a Row with the Mate of the  
Pearl. He was so far gone that we had to  
leave him there all night, to get sober again  
Monday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine. The Captain went after  
Jack, at daylight this morning & insisted on his  
making an Apology to Capt. Leoffrey & his  
Mate, which Jack did. After he got onboard, he  
called all hands aft, and Told them, that if ever  
another Man got drunk while on duty he  
would Flog them. We then got Breakfast, and



## 182 Commencement of Whaling

hoisted our Colours for the Brig, who got under weigh, bound for Ferdinand de Ro. As soon as she was Hull down, we went off on a Cruise with three Boats, round to St Antonio Bay. Saw a large double Banked French Frigate, but, no Whales. We got back by dinner time as wet as drowned Rats, boat Sailing with Capt<sup>n</sup> G. & his second Mate. But, we beat them both. I carried away, both my Backstays, & fore Sheet cleets, so had to Repair damages when we got back. At 2 P.M. we went on board of the Pearl. At 4<sup>h</sup> it came & calf have in sight, & we all gave chase, but it had got so late, that we did not chase far. Round up our gam by eight to eight.

Tuesday 20<sup>th</sup> June, At daylight, The Two Captains and 2<sup>d</sup> Mate of the Pearl went one way, and the two Mates, & Mr Gunney went the other. When they got back, we found that Mr Warner had been fast to a large whale, and got him almost dead, when the Irons drew and he went off. we then came on board  where we saw two more vessels coming in. They both got to anchor by 2 P.M. One was the Tropic Bird, Capt<sup>n</sup> King. She had got nothing, since she left us, at Corisco. The other was the Bark Mary Gardner, Nicoll, of Sag Harbor two years out, 630 of sperm. They both came on board, & we gammed until 9 o'clock.

Wednesday 21<sup>st</sup> June, We got breakfast at daylight, & went off in the Boats, three each way. The other Ships, lowered three Boats each & the Tropic Bird got a small Bull Whale, she got him alongside by 12 o'clock, & then



Tropic Bird, And Mary Gardner. 183

hove up her anchor with the intention of leaving  
& but her whale while drifting to leeward. About  
4 P.M., another whale came in & we gave chase  
with nine Boats and three of us, one from each  
Ship, ~~had~~ darted at him, but, none of us reached  
him. The Tropic Bird seeing us at it, made sail  
beat up, and came to anchor again, about dark.  
Our boats got on board by sundown, & as I am  
pretty well tired, I shall only tell you, that  
the Kitt darted at a small whale to day also,  
but, did not fetch him.

Thursday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine, We were out, & after whales at  
daylight, & the other two ships likewise. At 10<sup>th</sup> A.M.  
Starboard boats crew went on board, & got the Bark  
under weigh & beat up to the East end of the  
Island. The Pearl also came with us, & we both  
anchored to Northward of Castle Rock. We then  
lowered again & went cruising after whales  
until Sundown when we came on board, got  
supper, and the Captain of the Pearl came  
on board & gammed until 9 O'clock. Two of his  
then ran away, last Night. The Kitt darted  
at another whale to day.

Friday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine, Off all day Chasing Whales  
again & I darted at one without Success. Saw  
Plenty of Blackfish. At 4<sup>th</sup> P.M. we came on  
and the Old man went gamming until 9 O'clock.  
Saturday 24<sup>th</sup> Off again at daylight after whales  
About 10<sup>th</sup> A.M. Captain Geoffrey fastened to a  
large Cow. The Started off to windward, and  
ran against a heavy rough sea about 20 miles  
when the loggers head tore out, and they were  
Obliged to cut from her. We got back to the



## 184 Whaling, Thorning.

Ship by 4 P.M., got some dinner, and then went gamming  
till Sundown, when he sent me back with the  
Boat, and the Pair of them went to visit the  
Mary Gardner, who is going tomorrow. Captain  
Geoffrey found one of his runaways ~~there~~, and  
he is now in Irons aboard the Pearl. They got  
back by 10 O'clock from their gam, and we all  
turned in tired enough I can assure you  
Sunday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine. Out again at daylight, and  
away looking for whales, we got back to the  
ship at 11 A.M., having seen but two who showed  
no chance. We had scarce got inboard when a  
cow and calf, were reported coming in to the Bay.  
Away we went again, with six boats after her.  
The other two ships sent their boats also, and  
such another time as we had, I never want to  
see again. Although there was 11 boats in chase  
until 5 P.M. none got near enough to dart  
but Mr. Chappell's Boat sturver, and then she was  
so deep, he never touched her. We then all came  
onboard, and got dinner & supper together. Capt<sup>n</sup>  
Geoffrey came aboard, and gammed until 10  
o'clock, and I wish, as well as many others, that  
they would stop onboard their own ships, and  
let those who have been hard to work all day get  
their nights rest. If they would, they would be  
thought of great deal more of.

Monday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine & Stiff Breeze, Although we  
we saw several Whales to day, for some reason  
or another we did not lower for them. I however  
found Plenty of Employment repairing different  
things about my boat, that were completely  
worn out since we have been here. For as



## Sporting Evenings.

185

Fine as it appears where we lay, you no sooner get out from under the lee of the Island, than you find it stiff breeze and a rough sea, so much so that carrying sail on the boats racks every thing about them. It is very hard fatiguing work, this Hump Backing and especially in this place, where I have not the slightest hopes of doing anything, and it seems to me they must be crazy in staying here, But! the end of the season will show! And God knows! I will never come another one if I can help it. The Tropic Bird, lowered once to day, without success. The other, Gardner who still remains here contrary to our expectations. After dinner the Captain went on board the Pearl, & Mr Chappel came here. About 5 P.M., both our noble Captains went ashore as they said on a Trading Expedition, But, did not return until 10 at Night. Myself, Mr Chappel, and Mr Warner, had a long Chat about the Island of Ascension, and the Ruins there. This Island lies in the Lat<sup>e</sup> North, and Longitude West. And as we had all been there on former Voyages, we passed a very pleasant evening conversing about what we had witnessed whilst there.

Tuesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine. We sent off the two Whales, and our second Whale, looking for Whales and the rest of us staid on board. I don't know what is going to happen! This is two days hard running, that I have not had to leave the Bark. We will get a Whale tomorrow, Surely! The Boats got Back by 4 P.M., having seen several Whales, & we saw several more from on board.



## 186 A Whale Line Music Box.

About 3 P.M., the Mary Gardner got under weigh,  
bound for Fernando de Po; having got a Chart of  
it from Captain Geoffrey this Morning. All  
we want now, is to see the Old Tropic Bird  
start, but, she sticks like wax; chasing Whales  
every day. Captain Geoffrey came onboard  
this Afternoon, and staid until 8<sup>h</sup> in the Evening.  
about 9 A Canoe came alongside Bringing a  
Raw Boned, Yellow Pig, Black Spotted, and a Regular  
Racer. Also, a Box of Segars for Lord Russell.  
He gave them four or five Pieces of Beef, a  
Couple of Pieces of Pork, and some new Clay  
Smoking Pipes. It was only to day, that I found  
out, that the Music Box Capt<sup>n</sup> Russell Brought  
onboard, on the 11<sup>th</sup> of this Month, he had  
Bought it for 20 Dollars, and Paid for it in  
Whale line & other stuffs of the Ships Stores.  
Wednesday 28<sup>th</sup> Rather damp, But, good Whaling  
weather, Saw two or three Whales handy, But,  
for some reason or another did not lower.  
after Breakfast the Captain went onboard  
the Pearl, who got under weigh, and ran down  
close to the Tropic Bird where she came to  
an anchor. Our Captain then came back,  
and we got under weigh, and ran down  
close to her also & came to again. While we  
were at this work one of the Tropic Birds  
Boats struck a large Whale, But, he ran them  
into deep water, and they lost him, again. One  
thing I have Particularly Remarked this Voyage  
And that is, as often as we have Anchored, and  
in strange Places at that; We have never had  
a Buoy to our Anchor. But once, and that



Alone Again, July 1858

187

Once, it was a Piece of Pitch Pine Plank, that sank as soon as it struck the Water. At 11 AM we saw some Whales about five miles off, & lowered away for them; Although there was some within a quarter of a mile of us in the morning, But we could not afford to Break up our Gam to lower for them. And I must say, that if ever a Man was in want of a Straight Jacket, That Man is, Our Captain! He got back, about 4 PM, and hoisted the two Larboard boats, got something to eat; and then the Captain took his boat, and went a Gamming to the Pearl. I told him I did not want to go; that I was sick of Gamming, and another thing, I had some clothes to wash, and mend. Well stop then! (cried he) Nobody Wants you! He did not get back before 9 in the evening, But, if he staid half the Night, there is no sleep to be got aft, until he returns; and it puts a Man in a fine humour, after working hard all day; with the Prospect of the same before him Tomorrow. It is just a year to day, that we got our First Humpback, off Congo. About 3 PM, the Traffic Bird got under weigh, and stood away to the Northward, and I imagine she is Bound for Ferdinand de Ro. Good Night! Thursday 29<sup>th</sup> Light, misty, rain squalls. As soon as it was light enough to see, we saw three Whales between us, and the Land, from which we lay, about a quarter of a mile distant. And a quantity of whales outside of us, from half a mile, to five miles distance from us: I was greatly surprised to find we were not going to lower for them. And still more so, to hear the Captain saying



## 188 The Hump-Backs Holiday.

They did not intend to lower for anything, But, cows & calves. We stood mast heads all day looking for a cow & calf. But he will neither allow us the Spy Glass or Opera Glass, which he calls his own, (although it was bought with the ships money) to take afloat. And although we saw above fifty whales to day from afloat; we could not tell whether there was any cows or calves among them or not, without a glass. After Breakfast the two Captains went onshore, where they remained until two O'clock. They brought off about a Bushel of Green Beans, and a couple of dozen Coconuts each. They then sent Mr Warner onboard the Pearl, & they remained here playing Back Gammon until 8 in the Evening when we parted for the night. There was over a dozen Whales playing all round the ships the whole afternoon, But, they paid no attention to them, although all hands are growling like a Bear with a sore paw. While they were onshore this forenoon, Mr Warner & Mr Tenney rigged Stages under their Boats and painted them without turning them over, on account of the dampness of the Weather. Good Bye to the Voyage! Say I; I have given up all hopes of it now.

Friday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & nearly calm. After Breakfast Captain Rissel, Captain Geoffrey, and their second mate, took their boats, & we went round as far as St Antonio bay, looking for Whales as they said, but as soon as we got round (passing several Whales on the way) they pulled up to the town where we all landed. The other two Boats crews went up into the town, But, as I had strict orders not



## Rum & Its Effects.

189

to let any of the crew leave the Boat, as we were not going to stay over 10 minutes; I had to stay exposed to a broiling hot sun until nearly one o'clock before I seen the noble gentlemen again. It appears, they had been to a house, carried on by Sparrowhawk De Silva and Co, of Boston and made a draft of some money on the Owners how much I do not know; But I saw the Skipper pull out his hands full of gold and silver and show it to the mates who were on board of us when we got back. What he wants it for, God only knows! for I am sure we have plenty of good yarns, & we can get sundry little notions from Canoes every day; who don't want money; But, want old salt that comes out of the wheat barrels, any old scraps of wheat that is left from table, Pipes, Old Canvas &c. After we got some dinner, we went on board the Pearl, and as we got alongside found the Captain of her fighting with one of the other, each one swearing the other was drunk. It ended however by them siezing the man in the Rigging, where they kept him a couple of hours to cool off and then sent him forward to his duty again. About 4 P.M. they got Supper and both Captains went ashore in one of the Pearl's boats, and as soon as I got my Supper, I took our boat, and came on board my own Kessel. The Captains got back from their Pleasure Trip by 10 o'clock in the evening. Plenty of Whales in sight all day but we did not trouble them, and I don't <sup>know</sup> as we are ever going to trouble them again. I cannot help thinking how pleased Mr Wilcox would feel, if he read this Page.



## 190 Exploring The Coast.

Saturday 31<sup>st</sup> June. All hands out at daylight, and got breakfast. They then sent four Boats, the *Whites* & *Second Whites*, round to the West side of the Island looking for Cows & Calves. As soon as they were out of sight, the two Skippers lowered their boats, and started for a small rock, about two miles out, on the N.W. side of the Island to get bait, to go on a fishing excursion. We passed a gam of four Whales on the way, so close that we had to sheer out to keep clear of them. I wanted him to go on and strike, but, he said they were all bulls, and he was going to strike nothing, but Cows & Calves. We then went out to the Rock, where he landed me & I got some Rock Oysters, four Crabs, a lot of Birds Eggs, and a couple of Birds that I knocked over with stones, what we call *Koddies*. We then started back for the main land (passing some Whales Breaching) where we landed our table Captains, who cut along the Beach, and through the Villages, occasionally showing themselves, and beckoning to us to pull along up the Coast. This lasted over two hours, and we took them in again, about three miles from where we landed them. We then sailed along the Coast another mile, & landed them again about 11 o'clock. We saw no more of them until about 4 P.M., when they came back, Captain Geoffrey having two Chickens, and our Skipper eleven hens Eggs. While they were gone, I landed two of my men, to climb some Coconut trees for the Nuts, They got 16 off of one tree & wading off through the Surf



# Attack, And Defence.

191

Put them in the Boat. They then climb another from which they took 29, But, before we could get them all off, down rushed a Big Congo Nigger with a knife over two foot long, Brandishing it above his head & Spattering Portuguese at a Great rate. One of thy men (Thenne) was very much frightened, & rushed to his arms into the water to get to the Boat leaving his Ship mate to his fate, who only laughed at the Negro and with a large Coconut in each hand put himself in an attitude of defence crying out! Come on with your toad sticker go I do to Wretch, and I will settle your hash. I however soon satisfied him by giving him four Cakes of bread I had in the boat & Promised him as much more if he would come to the ship in his canoe after it. He was much pleased at this, and told me to take as many more if I wanted them. But, we had 45 which was quite sufficient. The men had great sport over Thenne for his cowardice, & he felt so bad about it, that I was obliged to stop them. I laughed until I almost cried, myself at him, & I don't think I shall ever forget it. We got on board at half past four, where we found a canoe with some Rock Cod. The Captain Bought two for a large Piece of Salt Beef, and we had them cooked for Supper. After Supper, the Captain Went on board the Pearl, & sent Mr Chapel here, and they gamined until 9 o'clock

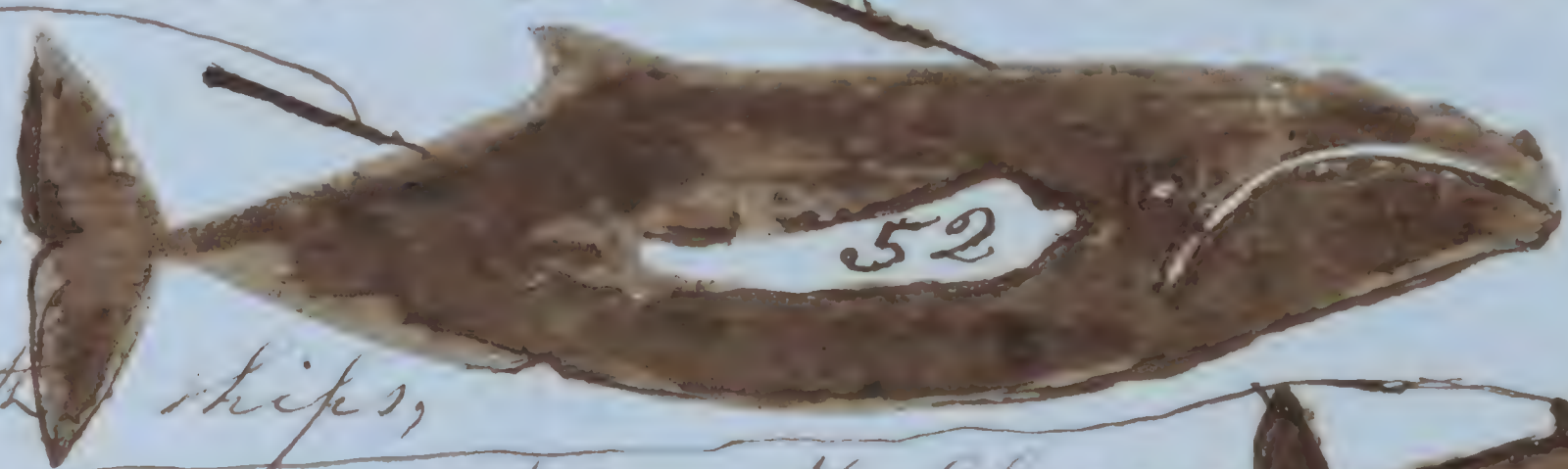
Sunday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of August, Blowing very fresh. Saw a number of Whales, but, scarcely looked at them. The old man bought one Chicken to day.



192 A Whale At Last. August 2<sup>nd</sup> 1858

After dinner, Captain Geoffrey came on board of us, & together with our captain, started on an Excursion on shore. They had got about two miles from the ship, when up popped A Large Cow Whale, with A small calf, close to the ship. We lowered away two boats, & the Pearl lowered two more in chase. I set the colors, and the Captains returned, But, before they got back, the Pearl's boats had pulled over the Whale, & gallied her. We however lowered away, as did Capt Geoffrey and We chased until near Sundown, But she had got too wide awake for us. We then came on board and sent Mr Warner on board the Pearl. The two Captains got supper on board of us, and then started to finish their Excursion on shore. They did not get back before half past 11 o'clock.

Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. At Sunrise here was A Cow & calf close in shore of us, we lowered down from both ships,



about 20 minutes after, Mr Chappell struck the cow. In a few minutes - more Four boats were sent to the cow, and one to the calf, Mr Chappell killed the cow, and Mr Warner the calf, which sunk, and we let it go. The old cow floated, so we towed her to the ship by nine o'clock, and had her all cut in by one o'clock. We then started away at her, and got her all into Horse Pieces by seven o'clock in the evening, when we got supper and started the try works. My first watch in the Pearl's boats, was chasing more Whales while we were A cutting, but, did not strike



# Cutting, And Boiling. 193

any. All hands are in fine spirits, for this our first Whale, is a noble fellow for a humpback Whale. God Speed the Fishing. We caught a Number of fine fish while we were cutting in, that had gathered about the Whale, to pick up the small pieces that escaped. Tuesday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & Clear. My boats crew had to stay onboard to bail, while the Mate, and Second Mate, went off with the Pearls boats, to look for Whales. They saw a couple of cows & calves but could not get near them. The Boats got back by 5<sup>th</sup> P.M., and after driving what oil we had turned up & clearing up decks a bit, we got supper and set the Watches from Seven, until Seven in the Morning. We shipped a cooper to day, who was before the Mast onboard the Pearl, and the Old Man gives him the Fortieth lay. His name is William W. Westworth. Our Whales Carcass which sunk alongside came up to night about eleven O'clock & floated off to sea. Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine. We finished boiling at 11 three O'clock this Morning and she turned up about 57 Barrels. We got all cleared up and decks washed down by Seven O'clock. We then got breakfast, and both ships moved away, three boats going one way, and three the other. We saw but one cow & calf and she was going quick. We saw plenty of other Whales, but, would not trouble them. Both Captains landed, and cut down a cocoanut tree for the Masts. We then went onboard, and got to the Ship by 2 P.M., leaving the two



# 194 More Blubber

Captains onboard the Pearl. We got dinner and then drove all our Oil Casks 12 in number. The Captains gammed until 11<sup>h</sup> P.M.

Thursday, 5<sup>th</sup> June. Three boats went each way again to day, The two Captains, and Mr. Geoffrey, seeing nothing, went up to town to buy some Geese, and Hogs, as they said, but after remaining there or three hours, time enough for several of the men to get most gloriously drunk, we all came away as rich as we went. We got onboard by three O'clock, & found them busy stowing down our Oil which we did not finish to day. There was some loud talk about Mr. Nutt losing a whale by darting too quick, and the Captain gave him strict orders never to dart again until he was told. We bought a Hog that came alongside to day.

Friday 6<sup>th</sup> Out at daylight, and off again, The Captains got back by one O'clock, got dinner & seeing nothing of the other boats. We went in search of them (Mr. Warner staid onboard to day finished stowing down & cleared up decks. Our whale stowed down 52 Barrels.)

About 5<sup>h</sup> P.M. we came across them with a large bow whale in tow, Mr. Geoffrey being struck the calf, and Mr. Chappell fastened to, and killed the cow.

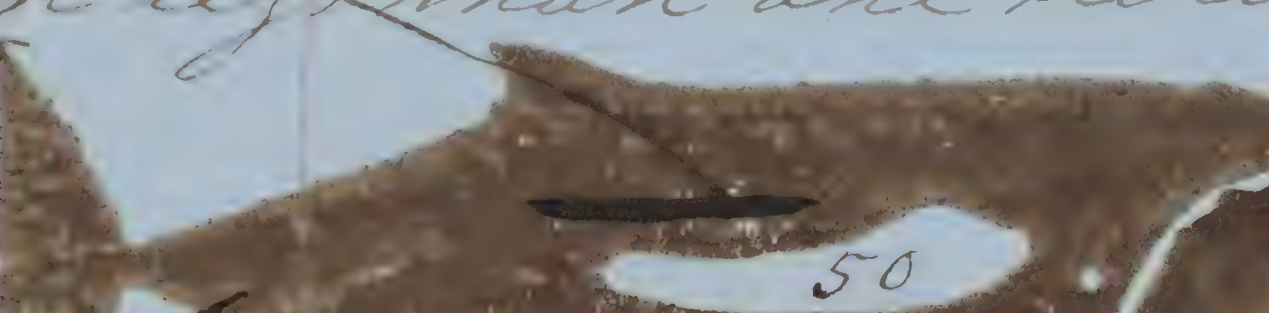


Sent Mr. Chappell onboard to get some dry clothes & place some Oars he had broke, and return with Mr. Warner to help tow the Whale.




195

in less than an hour; the



50

and had



under w

was no s

At



126 Keoka, And Helen Augusta.

light, got something to eat, and divided the time from 2 until 5 one hour, and A half back; So I threw myself into the bunk, and tried to sleep as fast as a horse could gallop, I believe I succeeded, for when all hands were roused out at 5, I felt as fresh as a daisy. We then got another Fluk chain on to the Whale, and made all sail on the ship to tow him in to Anchorage Ground, which was about 20 Miles under our lee. We saw the Pearl beating to windward in shore of us so we feel sure that Mr Warner & Tenney has got another Whale. We did not get in to an anchore until 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. At half past 3 we commenced cutting, and got her all in by Eight O'clock, when we got supper, and all hands turned in for the Night. While we were cutting in Captain Worth of the Helen Augusta and Captain Grinnell of the Keoka came onboard. Both of these Ships got in this morning and anchored close to Castle Rock, They are flaking, and have taken five Humpbacks, on the coast, and at St Thomas Island. (I forgot to mention, that we spoke the Merchant Bark John Gilpin on Friday last, laying to an anchore in St Antonio Bay one year out & homeward Bound.) we saw our First Whales carcass also onshore close to the Port.

Monday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine. Turned out at Six O'clock and furled the sails first thing, We then got up the Wincing Machine, Tubs, and Sunkcasks Then got Breakfast, After Breakfast we began at our Blubber & Starter the Works, by 12 O'clock we had him in horse Pieces and the Decks washed.



Another Prize. August 1858. 497

Got dinner, Broke out some Casks, Wheat, and Water and at 3 o'clock let the Watch go below. at 5 the watch was called, when we got supper, then Coafired our Oil & let the watches from seven o'clock until 7 in the Morning.

Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> Got breakfast at 7 o'clock, & then sent Mr Chapfel & Geoffrey to try for another Fish. The booled down at 10<sup>h</sup> A M, our Whale yielding us Sixty Barrels. Just as we finished the Old Pearl hove in sight boiling. She soon came to an Anchor close to us, & Mr Warner came onboard. We learned from him, that on Saturday last, Mr Penney struck a calf, & that shortly afterwards, he fastened to the old

one who ran him to windward of the Island, where he

turned her up and she sank in thirty fathoms of water. The whale had struck over & under the boat knocking off his false keel, broke three Cans, and struck James Platt in the side & right arm, injuring him severely although I believe there is no bones broken. As soon as the Whale was dead, Mr Warner cut off, and taking three of Mr Penney's Cans, started for the ship, leaving Mr Penney by the whale. He got on board the Pearl (not finding us) by 8 in the evening where they attended to Platt. Sunday Morning they got the Pearl under weigh & beat up until sundown, when seeing they could not fetch the Whale they came to anchor, & sent a boat with a barrel for a Buoy to the Whale and all returned to the Pearl, where Mr Penney used



## 198 Full of Business.

his boats crew turned in for the night. The rest of them boiling on their first Whale, and the Captains Boatsteerer set the ship on fire, by throwing a Bucket of water into a Pot of Oil that had caught fire, which caused it to fly all over the ship. The Captain had given her up & told all hands to gether aft. But, through the exertions of Mr Warner they got the fire subdued, the Principal (or most serious loss) being the Main stay. At daylight on Monday they went up to the Whale with three Boats, hauled him up, towed him to the ship, and cut him in by dark. They then commenced Boiling again, and this morning they got under weigh to come down to us. As their Blubber was Blasting very fast, we went onboard, and towed two rafts of it to us, enough to make 25 barrels. we hoisted it in & began boiling again, setting the watches from seven to seven. James Platt is so much better that he can walk about a little. The Helen Augusta got a Whale to Day, In St Antonio Bay. Wednesday 11<sup>th</sup> Finished Boiling by 10 o'clock and the Pearl Finished also. We then got under weigh, both of us, to beat up to West Bay where they think the Whales are more plentiful. It was very rugged, & we were obliged to lash our Oil. We however washed decks Rough as it was. The Pearl got in about 7 P.M. But we would not Risk it. So we stood off & shortened sail, dividing the Night into two watches. The Night was Squally with some Rain. Heard Plenty of Whales.



West Bay, August 1858. 199

Thursday, 12<sup>th</sup> Fine. Found ourselves well to leeward, so we made all sail to beat up again. Captain Russell sick with Rheumatism. We stowed our oil down to day & it stowed down Seventy Nine barrels Two gallons & a half. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M. We came to Anchor in 15 fathoms water in West Bay, and close to the Pearl. After we got the hold stowed off, we furled the sails, and Captain Geoffrey came onboard of us staying until nine o'clock in the evening.

Friday, 13<sup>th</sup> Fine. Captain not able to turn out this Morning! But no sooner was the Boats off than up he got and went to Pantry to stuff himself. He then came on deck, and set me & three others, which is all there is, (Antonio and James Platt being off duty) to Lye the Ship down fore & aft, as if she was to be exhibited at the World's Fair. We did not get through until 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., when the Boats came onboard, and we got dinner. The rest of the day we spent working on our Boats. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M. our Poor Sick Captain went onboard the Pearl where he got Captain G. and they went on shore until eight in the evening, and then came onboard blowing what a Fine time they had with the Portuguese women. It appears that he forgot all about his Rheumatism.

Saturday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine. Sent off two Boats from each ship. At 9 A.M. I went onboard of the Pearl with 10 Boats crew and helped them to get underweigh, to go back to our old Anchorage to leeward of the Island. I got back by 10 A.M., and from that until 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. was busy Building



## 200 Goat Island Anchorage.

A Swinging Bunk for the Cooper, that would turn up day times, on the Port side of the Steerage against the Forward Bulkhead. At 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. Our Invalid Skipper had to go ashore again, where he Remained until After Sundown. when we got on board Mr Kenney had Returned leaving Mr Warner on board of the Pearl with his Boat, and Boats crew, to Remain all Night. The Old Man turned in grunting & groaning and Employed the Steward for half an hour Rubbing him with Pain killer, and from my heart I wish it would in his case, prove than killer! The rest of us had to stand two hour Anchor watches, & a hard days work before us.

Sunday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. Had all hands out at Daylight to up Anchor. After heaving Short we got under weigh (first getting Breakfast) The Anchored Again about 11 A.M. at our old Place after towing her about half way. We then went Gamming to the Pearl, got dinner there, and then both Skipper, accompanied by Grinnell of the Teoka went ashore Sporting the Rest of the Day while we were obliged to lay off in the boats, in the broiling hot sun, to wait for them. At Sundown they went on board the Pearl to supper sending Mr Chapfel on board of us, and I came with him. Capt Grinnell having started for his own Ship in St Antonio Bay. We learned from him, they had got another whale since we have been gone, and it is still on the Bottom the Hecla Augusta laying by it. We Gammed until 11 o'clock to night which I consider highly fine work.



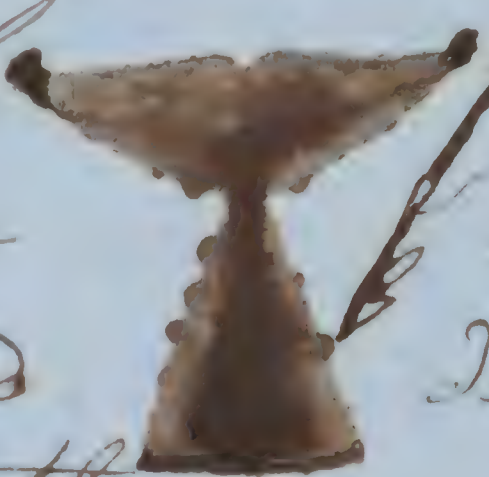
# Hard Luck All Round. 201


Monday 16<sup>th</sup> Pine. Three boats went each way. Our side (which is the two Captains & Mr. Geoffrey) went one way & the other three went the Opposite. We got back about one O'clock having seen no whales. We got dinner & went the Opposite way. About three O'clock we met Mr. Chaffel returning. Mr. Warner having struck & killed a large bow about 20 miles from Land. We returned with him & got the Pearl under weigh, as he had left Mr. Fenney & Warner towing the Whale. We then took Mr. Chaffel & boats crew onboard of us & let Captain and Mr. Geoffrey go out with the Pearl. At six O'clock Captain Worth came from the weather side of the Island to pass the Night with Captain Geoffrey but the Pearl being gone we offered the best accommodations we could muster for him & his boats crew which was thankfully accepted. We learned that he had lost a Anchor & half a Cable this morning by its hooking on to a Rock. About nine O'clock Mr. Warner & Mr. Fenney came onboard, stating that the current was so strong that at Sundown the could but just see the Island, and as they had no hopes of saving the whale they waived him and let him go, having five Irons in him, four of ours, and one of the Carls, we then all bunked in the best way we could for the Night.

Tuesday 17<sup>th</sup> Pine. We were out at daylight and got breakfast. Captain Worth then left us & we put off all four boats for the



## 202 Miserable Luck.

West side of the Island. About 17<sup>th</sup> Oct we saw the Pearl come to an anchor in West bay having seen nothing of the Whale. We were in chase of it low and calf until one P.M. when it set in thick & our Boat went to the Pearl where the Captains amused themselves playing Backgammon until Sundown when we had to pull to our ship in a heavy rain storm at distance of twelve miles. We made out to get onboard by eight O'clock, and well soaked with rain into the bargain. Very Encouraging this! for the crew; what do you think? Wednesday 18<sup>th</sup> Squally with rain. Plenty of Whales to day, BUT, very wild. I got one Iron into a Small Bull  but it soon drew & he went off. We saw the Pearl's boats to day and don't know whether she has done anything or not. At Sundown we came onboard got supper and turned in, leaving plenty of whales all round the Ship & as far as you could see.

Thursday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, Plenty of whales to day again. About noon Mr. Jernrey fastened to a calf  and we pulled up to strike the Cow, when through mistake I threw my Iron into the Calfs side & killed him instantly. Mr. Warner struck the Cow, who made off as soon as she found the calf was dead, his line parted & he lost two Irons. Mr. Chappel struck another whale afterwards but the Iron drew and he went off. The Pearl came down to another Bay about five miles from us and we gammed



# One More Fish.

208

with them until after nine o'clock to night instead of letting us have a nights rest like a Christian.

Friday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine, Plenty of Whales Mr Chapfel Struck & the Iron drew again. About 2<sup>h</sup> P M Mr Warner struck a good sized bull Whale soon after Mr & Mr Stett both got



past to him, Mr Warner got loose from him again, and Captain Geoffrey and Mr Chapfel got past to him; he was both vicious and cunning and we did not get him dead before nine o'clock at night, and about 12 miles from the ship, he sank in forty fathoms water, & we left the two second mates by him, & came on board where we got by eleven o'clock at night, as wet as drowned rats. Mr Chapfel then slung two empty barrels, and went back to the boats who bent their lines on to the barrels and they all came on board where they got by 2 o'clock this

Morning, Saturday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine, we were all off chasing whales until three o'clock without success, When Captain Geoffrey who had been looking for the Buoy barrels all day came back saying he had been there, and saw plenty of killers, and they had eaten the whale up leaving the barrels to float away to sea for he could not find them. Our old Man would not believe it; so away we went our boat, and Capt<sup>n</sup> Geoffrey to have an extra pull of 12 miles dead to windward and back again; for we found the barrels as right as when we left them there. Coming back we fell in with a Cow & calf just as the Sun



## 204 Hard Work.

Sat. As there was a good Moon the Captains  
 agreed to try and take her, so Captain Geoffrey  
 went on, and (Joe Enis) his boatswain darted  
 at the calf & seized him. I believe he did it on  
 Purpose; for I know I should if they had  
 taken me on to him. We got onboard by seven  
 o'clock, and both tired, hungry, and Sleepy.  
 Sunday 22<sup>nd</sup> A beautiful Day. Our boats  
 were chasing two cows and calves, from  
 daylight until three o'clock in the afternoon  
 but could not get near enough to dart, and we  
 saw one of the other ships in St Antonio Bay  
 Boiling. The Pearl got under weigh at daylight  
 and beat up to the dead Whale. They tried to  
 pull him up but one of the lines parted and  
 they came back with the Ship. As we expect  
 the whale to come up himself to night, the  
 sent Mr. Lemmye and Mr. Geoffrey's boats to  
 lay by him, so that if he does come up, one can  
 return for the ship, & the other hold on and  
 set a light. We also sent Mr. Warner and boat  
 crew onboard the Pearl to be in readiness  
 to get <sup>her</sup> under weigh if the Whale comes up.  
 Our boats crew staid onboard and divided the  
 night into six watches, & then enjoyed a good  
 nights rest, Blessing our lucky stars that we  
 were not obliged to lay out in the Boat all  
 night like the Second Mates & their Boats crews.  
 Monday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine. We turned out at daylight  
 & the old Man made us cover the decks with  
 stakes. We then got breakfast, and leaving orders  
 for the Cook, Steward, Antonio, & the Boy to  
 wash her off at 10 o'clock, we lowered away.



# A Pull Round The Island. 205

our boat & started for the dead whale. We got up there by half past nine, and found they had hauled up the whale, and was ~~then~~ just taking him alongside the ship, who had gone out to them. Mr Warner & Mr Jerney went onboard our ship & turned in for the day. We stopped with our boats crew and helped to cut him in. We commenced cutting while running and came to anchor about one o'clock, half a mile from our ship & close to Goat Island we then got dinner & finished cutting in after we got done, we staid and gammed ~~until~~ eight o'clock in the evening, and I begged some Salve of the Captain for my sore hands, which are getting bad, and our noble Captain thinks the Medicine Chest was put in the ship for his use only! Anyhow it is hard work to get a bit of Salve or anything else from him, still he pretended to be very angry with me for begging it onboard of another ship. Saying he had plenty of it. the only answer I made him was I have got plenty of it now too Sir!

Tuesday, 24<sup>th</sup> A Fine day. Our Boat & Mr Jerney started round by the way of St Antonios Bay and passing the other ships, (one of them was in the act of taking a large Bow Whale alongside that they had caught yesterday while we were wasting our time, not even looking for one) we continued onwards until we fell in with a Cow and Calf, but one of the Heokah Boats being handy, rushed them with their Cans, which started them off.



## 206 Shifting Ground Again.

We then pulled into a small bay where the old man landed for a while. We then put off again and pulled to the Dutchmans Calf which is a very high Rock at the weather end of the Island; we then set our sail and falling in with two whales, gave chase, until we came across our other three Boats, (Captain Geoffrey having staid aboard to finish boiling) who cut the Whales off and they started to windward. We then squared away & fell in with one more Whale who was a Good Linger, him we soon drove off & squared away again. About five o'clock we got to the Pearl, having made the complete circuit of the Island about miles. They had the whale boiled out and he turned up 37 barrels. We staid and took supper and gammed until eight o'clock. We then went aboard where we found Mr. Lenny laid up with a stiff neck, being taken while off in the boat. Wednesday 25 June. We called all hands at daylight and both Barks got under weigh. We beat up to another Bay about five miles to the Southward of St Antonio (where the Thetis and her Partner lay) and came to anchor in twelve fathoms water, half a mile from the shore. We then got dinner and loosing away from both ships (with the exception of Mr. Lenny) we beat up to the Dutchmans Calf, and seeing nothing but the other ships boats, we came back to the ships where the rain was coming down a perfect deluge, a canoe was alongside from whom we procured half a dozen fish for a piece of salt Beef. The night was very wet.

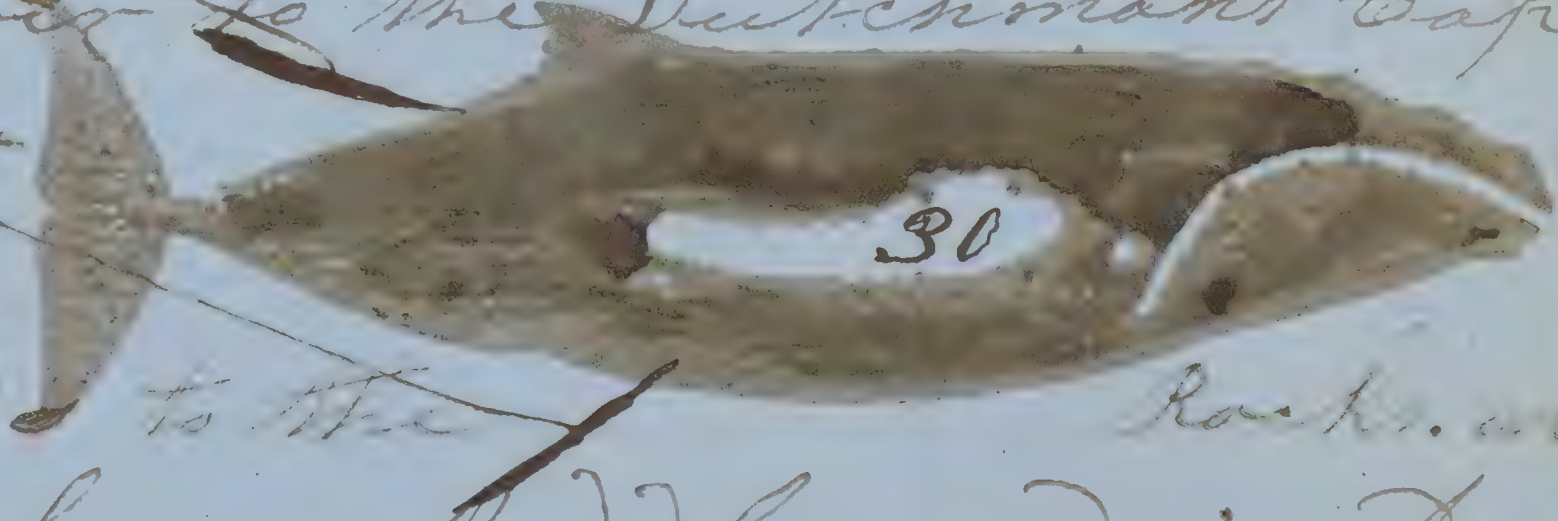


# Whalers Tricks.

207

Thursday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine, But very strong breezes. We were off at daylight with five boats, Captain Geoffrey having staid on board to stow down our last Whale. We pulled up to the Dutchmans Calf & laid to anchor under the lee of it all the forenoon. We saw but two small Bull Whales all day. Mr. Cogswell of the Keoka played a fine trick on our old man to day; pretending to be chasing a cow and calf, he led us off about three miles, and then laughed at us. We got on board by four o'clock P.M., where the Old Man bought 20 Yams for a Dollar from a canoe alongside. Him & Captain Geoffrey then took our boat and went on shore, where they remained until Sundown. We then came on board of our ship, got supper and had to set up until eight o'clock to pull the Geoffrey back to his ship; Bad Luck to the Pair of them! I wish I had never seen either of them.

Friday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & light breeze. five boats started off at daylight & we saw five of the other ships boats pulling up too, but seeing nothing they continued on and went round the Island. Our Captain staid on board to put two new timbers into our boat. At 9<sup>h</sup> A.M. we left the ship & pulling alongshore at spell, we set our sail and stood over to the Dutchmans Calf where we raised a bow and calf.



30

Closed in to the Rock. We rolled up our sail, took our Paddles, and in a few minutes was within long dart of the calf who saw me & pitched, the Captain told me to



208 Attachment of The Hump Back  
try him & I let fly. By good fortune the Iron  
Struck him & stopped him for an instant and  
that instant introduced him to my Second Iron  
She took the calf on her Fin and started to  
windward. The calf soon grew too weak to  
keep his hold, when the affectionate Mother who  
would not leave her young, would take him  
on her head for a while until he would fall off  
then push him onward with her nose. Three of  
our boats soon came to our assistance, when  
taking Mr Warners Iron into our Boat, we  
haunted up by the calf, & darted it into the bow  
by this time, the calf was unable to go any  
farther, but lay quiet on top of the Water  
& the Mother would not leave him, until  
the other two boats fastened, and we had  
her spouting thick blood. She then ran  
round to the weather side of the Calf where  
she turned up & sank in fifteen fathoms  
water about 10 Rods from the Dutchmans Calf.  
We killed the calf & cutting our Irons out  
I got them all ready again & my line recoiled  
We sent Mr Geoffrey on board the Pearl for  
a couple of Barrels to bring him, and left  
two Boats, (Mr Warner & Senney) by the Whale with  
the lines. As it was only one o'clock the two  
Captains & Mr Chaffel set our sails, and  
sailed out a little ways from the Calf, when  
we raised another bow and calf bound in  
for the Rocks where we struck the other  
one we all hauled our wind and stood in  
after her. When she got in to the surf she  
billed off and went along shore. Captain



To Her Young.

209

Geoffrey being the nearest boat squared away and sailing on to the calf (Joe Enis) put an Iron into him. She took the calf on her fin like the other one & in ten minutes time was two miles to windward of us, the calf then falling off, they weakened it before she could get it placed on her fin again. Us and Mr Chafpel then came up on each side of her, and we each threw a couple of Irons into her. we then worked away at her until we turned her up about four o'clock. Capt Geoffrey killed the calf and cut his Iron out.

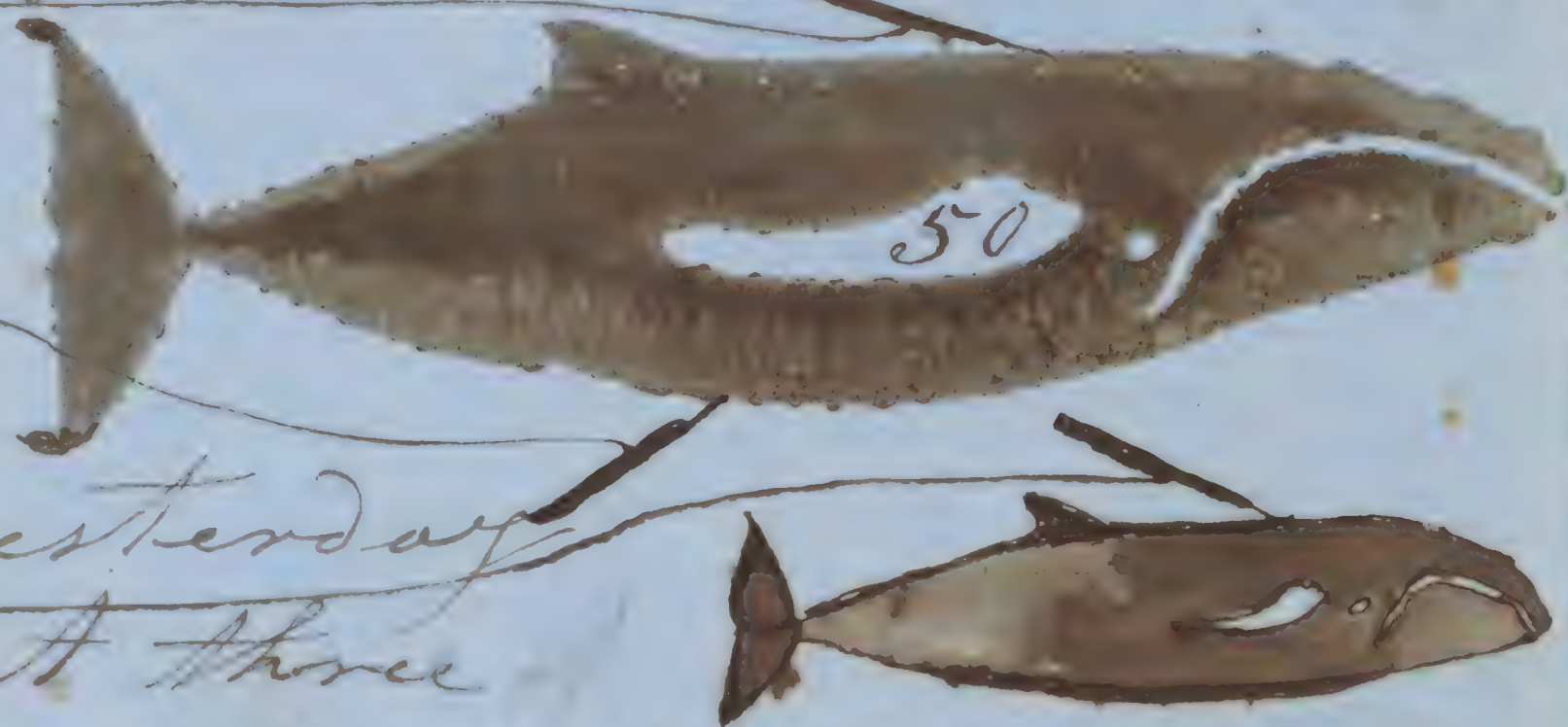
The Cow. Floated and we took her in tow, being about ten miles from the ship with a fair wind, but head tide. The other three boats got to us by Sundown, and we did not get him to the ship before one o'clock in the morning, being both tired and wet to the skin as we had some heavy showers while towing. After we got her fast to the Pearl we went onboard of the Old Doctor (and never was she more welcome) shifted our clothes, got something to eat and turned in. Saturday, 28<sup>th</sup> June. Was out at six this morning, got Breakfast, and Mr Warner & Jenney went out on a cruise. We went onboard the Pearl to help them but in the whale about nine o'clock it began to pour down rain and continued so all day. We finished cutting by 10 o'clock and back to our own ship where after getting my boat to rights and getting my dinner, the Captain





## 210 A Sunkers Whale.

sent me with his boat, along with Mr Chaffell and Geoffrey to meet the other two boats, haul our other Whale up and tow him to the ship. We got nearly up to the Cape, when we saw one boat returning we stood out and spoke her and found she had both boats crews in her, they having struck another cow and calf, Mr Warner striking first; and in the same place where we struck the two yesterday. We carried them about three



miles to windward of the Cape, turned up and sank in 35 fathoms of water. They then took all the things out of Mr Jenney's boat and left her for a buoy to the whale with a half set & were now returning to the ship. We continued on, and after a long trial finding we could not haul her up, we anchored her, in case she should come up herself during the night. We then returned I got onboard by six o'clock, where I found they had got another boat from overhead & rigged, ready to help us tow if we had got the whale up. It was still raining very heavy and, what is singular, two miles from the land there has not been a drop all day. We got supper & all turned in early to night. The Old Pearl cannot start her works yet, for the heavy rain that falls.

Sunday 29<sup>th</sup> Turned out at daylight & found it still raining heavily. The Pearl had rigged an awning over her try works and was boiling.



## Towing A Whale.

211

We got Breakfast, & sent Mr. Kenney with the Starboard Boat, & the Warner with the boat we took from over head (his Boat being formerly badly stove by the whale yesterday, so that it took two men to keep her free while they were pulling on board.) to haul our first Sunken bow up. Two boats also went from the Pearl. I then took Captain Geoffrey's boat, and went up to the boat, by our last Fish, Bailed her out, and put a Barrel on one of the lines for a Buoy, (I had a crew made up from both Vessels) I then sounded & found there was 33 fathoms water. I then returned to the other four boats who had got the Whale up and were towing. We towed until one O'clock in the Afternoon, when finding we gained nothing we anchored the Whale, leaving one boat by him. And went on board, where we found it had been still raining ever since we left; although we never had a drop after getting two miles from the Ship. We got the Ship under weigh & was soon clear of the Rain. We got out to our Whale, had him alongside and fleeked by Dusk, The More ship & made all sail for our Anchorage again; having Mr. Chappell and his boats crew with us. The Whale swelled so much that we were obliged to Scarf him to let the wind out of him. We got in and came to Anchor about 11 O'clock off the Weather Point of St Antonio Bay got supper and set the watches two in A Watch from 10 quarter to twelve until 5 in the morning Monday 30<sup>th</sup> Wet & disagreeable. We commenced cutting at daylight & got breakfast at ten O'clock, turned to again & finished it by noon.



## 212 A Man Killed By A Whale

and such another dirty, stinking, disagreeable mess I never was in in my life. The Pearl got done bailing & got under weigh about 10 AM to beat up to a little bay opposite the Dutchmans Cap & the weathermost one where you can get any shelter from wind & sea. We got dinner & then hove up & beat up also, cutting our blubber on the way. We got in about nine o'clock, Captain Geaffrey having come off to Pilot us in, & anchored in 15 fathoms half a mile from shore, got supper gave her a whole cable scope, and set the Fry watches from 10 o'clock until 7 in the morning.

Tuesday 31<sup>st</sup> June. The Pearl boats started at daylight to haul up our whale of Saturday. We were busy fitting our boats & repairing the Mining Machine, one of the others having shipfed the rope the wrong way, and cut the Bess all to pieces. About 11 o'clock the boats came in sight towing the Whale. We sent two boats to help them, towed him to the Pearl & leaving one boats crew to help cut, we got him in by sundown, came on board got our supper and set the watch from 7 o'clock until 7 in the morning. Still Boiling. While we were away, Captain Worth was on board of us, They also took a large cow last Friday and while fast, another Whale made a blow at the boat with his tail, cutting her in two killing one man & hurting another severely. They also informed us that an American man of War lay in West Bay, who had told him the United States had opened the Slave trade again.



First Line Lost; 200 Fathoms.

213

and had recalled the cruisers from the West Indies & the Coast of Africa. I can scarcely walk to day with Rheumatic Pains in my Legs.

Wednesday, 1<sup>st</sup> Day of September. Fine, finished Boiling by 8 o'clock & after all our hard work we got but 35 barrels of very dark Oil out of our whale which if saved when first killed would have made over 50, The Beards whale which we got the same day, made 55 barrels, But the one she is Boiling now being another Stinker I don't know what she will make. After breakfast, two boats went from each vessel, Captain Geoffrey busy Boiling & our Boats crew Scrubbing ship until 2 P.M., A Piece of useless work & A stranger would think we had done taking whales. For my own Part I almost wish that it may be so! For at three o'clock we lowered away, and met the Warner returning to the Ship, thence, A Line & two Irons. While we were busy scrubbing the Geoffrey had struck a calf within 1 mile of the Ship, But we could not see him, how could we! We had work of more consequence to attend to, than to look after boats, or Whales either! The Warner however got to him at last & fastened to the bow, but the little calf was dying from the effects of the Harpoon, and no sooner was he dead, than she started the bow with Lightning speed to the Windward and as there was a rough sea on she soon took his line & Irons, leaving his boat nearly swamped. We saw another Calf & calf afterwards & chased until sundown and we carrying away our Spirit had to chase with oars while the rest sat on their sterns and let the





## 214 News From Fernando Po.

wind blow them along, none of <sup>us</sup> however got near enough to her to fasten, so we all came on board. Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine, The Pearl finished Boiling and their Whale turned up 45 barrels. Sent two Boats back to day, Old Geoffrey staying on board to stow down & we staid to mend the Harpers boat that got stove last Saturday. Geoffrey got through however by one o'clock P.M. & went off with his boat to try his luck as he said when he hailed us. They all got back by Sundown having seen but two or three Bull whales during the day. Old Geoffrey came on board of us & staid until Eight o'clock playing Backgammon. Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine, got Breakfast at six o'clock and all six boats went off cruising all day but saw nothing but a few Bulls. we all came on board by five P.M. & the Old man went gamming on board the Pearl until eight o'clock. Saturday 4<sup>th</sup> Exactly the Same, gamming & all. The Helen Augusta got a Whale to day, and we spoke her Second Mate, who told us that the Tropic Bird & Mary Gardner had got back from Fernando Po, having struck 29 Whales there and only saved 20 barrels, the Sharks being so numerous as to eat a Whale completely up in one hour after he was turned up. The Brig. Heferton had come back also having killed 13 Whales & never saved a horse piece. Sunday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. We made three Parties of our boats to day, two & two, But we saw nothing but White bulls, and them we could not get near. in the afternoon we went onshore & got some Cavacoanuts & wound




A Bill Fish. September 1858. 215

up the day gambling with the Pearl until eight o'clock in the evening. Captain Geoffrey made me a present of some Pain Killer, and David tried to kick up a row with me for taking it, but I would not have anything to say to him, for it was his old cry that he had plenty of it, if I wanted it! How-kind the Is!

Monday 6<sup>th</sup> Raining in the fore part of the day. My left shoulder very bad with Rheumatism, half of us went round to West Bay the day where we saw but one Whale. Both Captains went onshore & staid a couple of hours, and we then returned to the Dutchmans Calf where our Captain landed, which is the fourth time he has been onshore there within a week. Our other Boats had seen but a couple of Whales & they were going very fast. We all came onboard by five o'clock P.M. & so wound up the day.

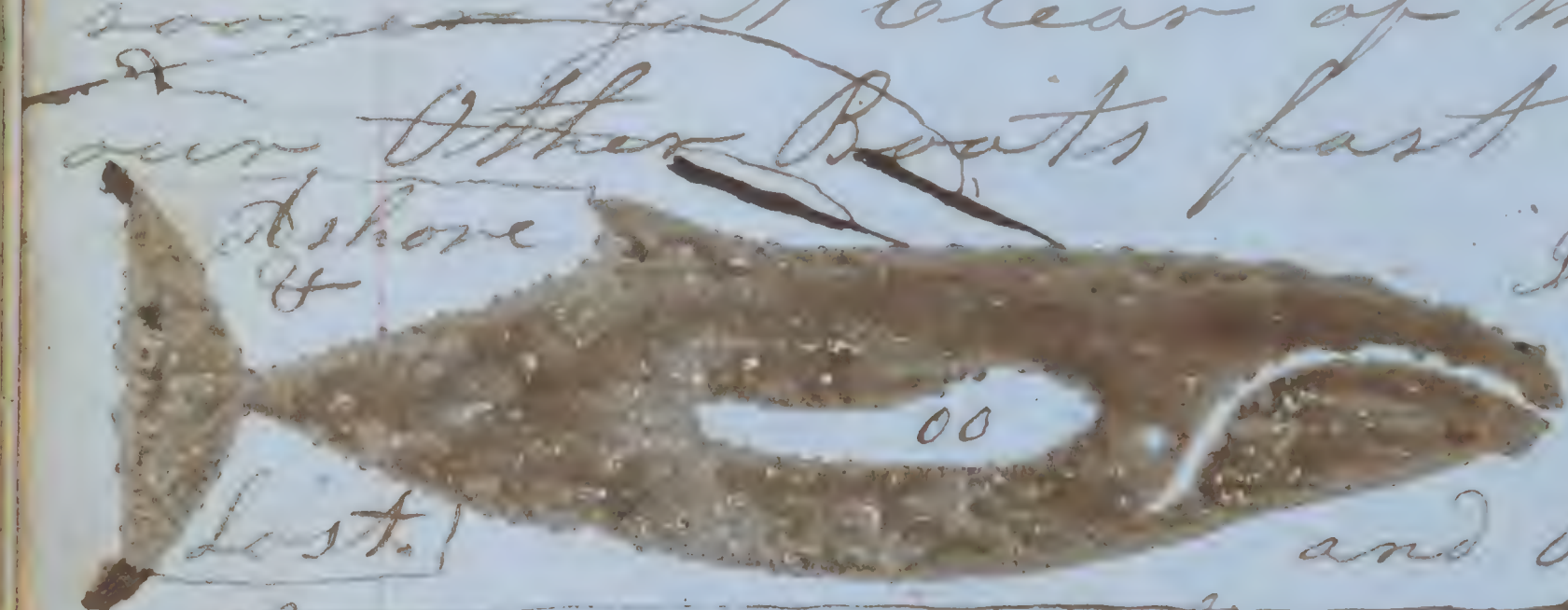
Tuesday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine, Sent off five Boats, and we staid onboard, and stowed down our Oil. We got through by 3 P.M. & Captain Geoffrey coming onboard, the two Captains went onshore and staid until Sundown, leaving me with three men to break out the Fore hold for Bread and Flour. We brought off about 40 Coconuts we killed a Pig to day and had fresh for supper.

Wednesday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine, Chasing Whales all day & saw two or three Cows & Calves. We caught a fine large Bill Fish  in our boat to day that would weigh over 300 Pounds. we all got onboard by Sundown, and divided our Fish with the Pearl.



# 216 A Whale Onshore.

Just after Dark Pulver darted an Iron into a Shark about 10 feet in length, that was swimming round the ship and we hauled him in on deck and killed him, then threw him overboard. Thursday 9<sup>th</sup> Light winds and showery. We started off again at six this morning, and seeing nothing, we came on board about 10 O'clock & the Captain had a Shave. He then set the Shipkeepers to cover the decks with stashes & scrub her down. We then went over to the Dutchmans Cap, where we met Captain Geoffrey & Landing both the Captains to Eat Oysters; We Anchored the boats and began fishing. I caught three Pretty good sized ones. After remaining Onshore until One O'clock they came down to the Boats & we had no sooner got clear of the Cap than we saw our Other Boats fast to a Large Cow Whale Ashore. It appeared that shortly after we went in our fishing and Oyster Excursion Mr. Warner struck her calf and the Other three Boats to his assistance they had her spouting Blood before we got to there. Captain Geoffrey hove an Iron into her, But we would not, so I got a Lance out & took two or three sets on her When she turned up & sank. We hauled her up to the Surface again, cut a hole in her side & bent a Line in it. As One boat could hold her up they all cut off but one, who passed his Line in to the boat that was holding the Whale up, And it was lucky he did!



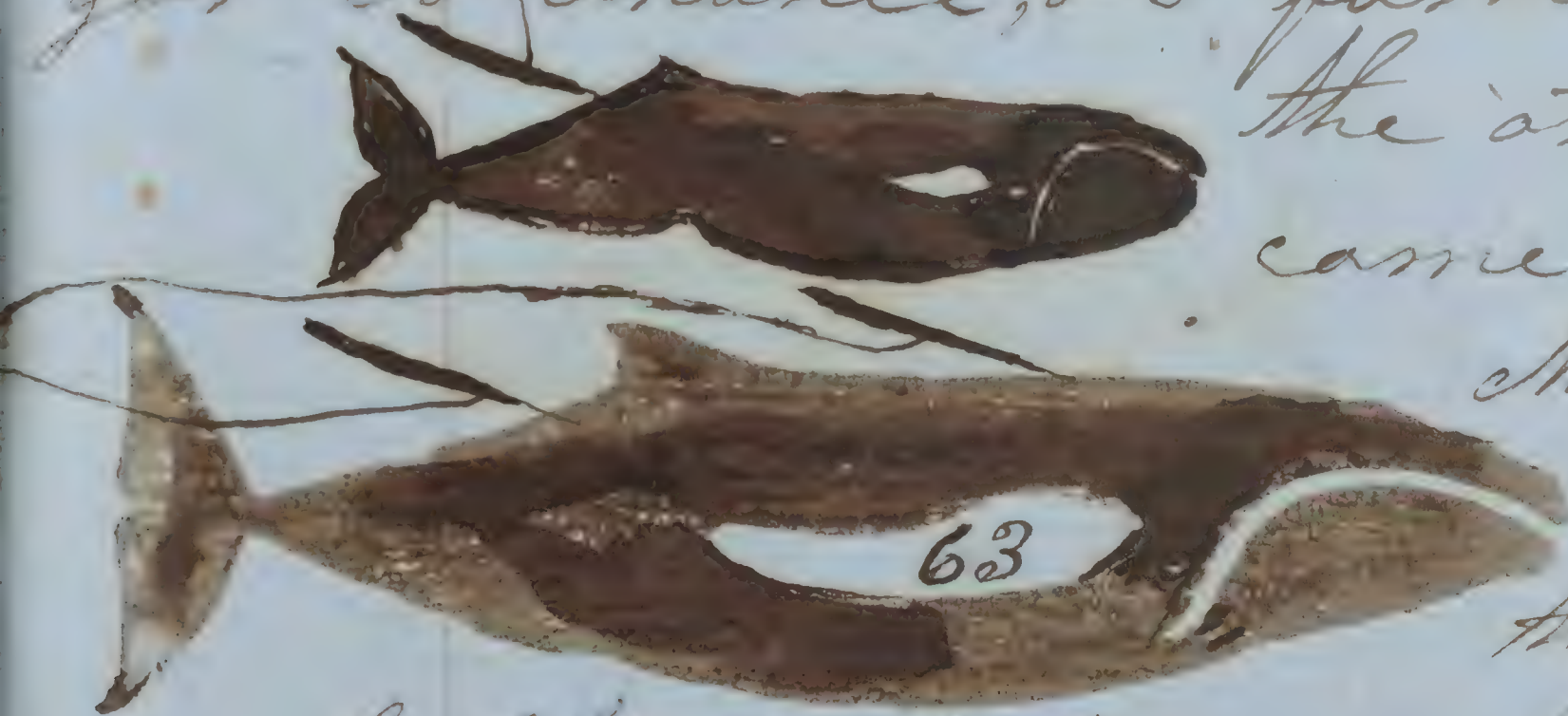


# Disappointment.

217

For when we got within about a mile of the Ship, the hole in her side tore out and down she went in about 25 fathoms water with only one line fast to her, so that she was out! & we came aboard, sent a couple of empty barrels for Buys, and all hands came aboard to get their Boats in Readiness for Another Tomorrow whether we save this one or not. As it is, we will have to wait until she swells so that she will come up herself; for we dare not haul on our one line for fear of Parting it and losing the run of her altogether. Friday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine, with Occasional Showers.

We all started off again After breakfast, and as Whales appeared to be plentiful, we soon got separated. Us, Mr. Chasfel, & Mr. Geoffrey being together, & the other three going off another way out of sight of us. We saw five or six cows & calves, and about one o'clock, our boat got a chance, & I fastened to the little calf, the other two boats soon came to us, & Mr. Chasfel &



Mr. Geoffrey were soon fast to the cow, she fought the worst of any I ever

saw, & although we worked very careful, we got our false keel knocked off, & some planks cracked. Mr. Chasfel got three streaks stove in, & lost his keel also. We got her turned up in a couple of hours, & she floated. Being about six miles from the Ship, we left Mr. Chasfel by the Whale, and started for the Ship. We got aboard by 4 P.M., and



## 218 Drifting Off Shore.

found that they knew nothing of the other boats, But supposed they had got another Whale as they had seen one boat with a Waif set at two O'clock. We sent our spare boat on board the Pearl, & then got under weigh with a spanking breeze. We got out to our Whale had him plucked, & the Ship hove to, with every thing snug, by Seven O'clock. we then set boats crew watches, (after getting supper) the Chappels Boats crew taking the first watch, the Jeoffreys the second, & the the Morning Watch. The night set in very wet, and continued so, the wind increasing all the time.

Saturday 11<sup>th</sup> Heavy rain & Blowing a Gale, We broke out the Blubber Room, and got all ready for cutting in. We then got Breakfast, and began. We had hard work to get him alongside to get the Fin Chain on to him, We then tried to heave him up to get the Lips and Head, but with the heavy Surges of the Ship, the Blubber kept tearing, and we were obliged to wear round and try to save what we could of him, for my Part, I would willingly gave my consent to let her go altogether. As it was, we made out to save the Body Blubber, and let the rest go. we got through by 3 P.M., and the weather having moderated some, we made sail, and got dinner, the Island being just in sight to windward. we then Cleared up decks, and opened the Blubber Room, and the Weather continuing to moderate, we made more sail & started the Works & set the Watches from 7 to 7 in the Morning, dividing our Boats Crew



# Off At Sea Again.

219

between Mr Chapfel & Mr Geoffrey. The Night turned out to be as fine & clear & night as we have had for a month, light winds But heavy swell.

Sunday 12<sup>th</sup> A Beautiful day. We kept on Boiling and had our Watches below until 4 P.M., when we hoisted the Remainder of our Blubber on deck, and cut it up in horse Pieces. We set the Watches as usual, being about fifteen miles to the Seward of the Island, with very light winds, and A beautiful clear Night.

Monday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine, At daylight the land was scarcely to be seen. We finished Boiling by seven O'clock this Morning, and our Whale turned us up 64 Barrels, she was A Noble cow & I think if we had the good Luck to have saved her all, she would have made over 70 Barrels. After Breakfast the breeze freshened, and we gave her every way we could set, But at Sundown, I could not see as we gained any on it. We had our watches below to day, and I improved it by Washing, and Meriding up my old Dunnage. At 4 P.M. we set sea Watches, Mr Geoffrey having the eight hours out.

Tuesday 14<sup>th</sup> At three O'clock this Morning, the wind suddenly hauled to W. N. W. and we stood away to the S. W. It set in blowing A strong breeze with heavy Rain, and continued until 10 A.M., when it lit up for a few moments, and we caught A glimpse of the Land; bearing West N. West. It then set in thick again, but, Just as it struck 12 O'clock, it suddenly cleared off, and the Wind hauled out to S. S. W. We put her about, & found to our delight that we



## 220 The Old Pearl Gone.

bount head two Points to weather of the Old  
 Dutchmans Cap, although about 25 Miles distant  
 we had a spanking breeze, and gave her a good  
 Rap full. As we drew in with the Land, it  
 grew Squally & wet. At 4 P.M. we called the  
 Watch, Ranged the Cable, & got the Anchor in  
 Readiness. By Sundown we got in to our old  
 Place & let go the Anchor. But, the Old Pearl  
 was nowhere to be seen, & after furling sails,  
 Making all snug and getting supper, we spent  
 the Evening in conjecturing, what could have  
 become of her. Set Anchor Watches, two in a Watch.  
 Wednesday 15<sup>th</sup> Light winds But Plenty of Rain.  
 We were out at daylight, and turned up the  
 Chaffels & our Own Boat, to Put False Reels  
 on, and otherwise repair them. About 7 A.M.  
 Mr Foster of the Helen Augusta came on  
 board of us, as he was pulling up for the Cap  
 and informed us that the Pearl had left  
 here last Sunday, But, where she went or  
 for what, he could not tell. They also told  
 us she had not got the Whale ive killed  
 last Thursday & sank. That he had come up  
 and drifted onshore about a mile to leeward  
 of where we now are, and could not be got  
 off before she was spoiled by Blasting. They  
 had got eight whales between them & the  
 Keeka since they have been here, and they  
 fastened to another close to us to day who  
 ran them out of sight of us and I don't  
 know whether they got him or not. About  
 eight o'clock Mr Chaffel & Geoffrey started  
 for west bay & we went to have a look



## The Pearl's Return. 221

At the Whale Ashore. We found him as they had told us & as he was on his Back we could not get our Big Iron which was under him, so we got about a dozen coconuts & returned to the Ship with the skin about 11 O'clock A.M. We saw a number of Whales, & One Cow with a calf, but, could not go after her alone. About five O'clock P.M., the Boats returned, having seen or heard nothing of the Pearl; so we have concluded to trouble our heads no more about her, But, catch a Whale tomorrow if we can ourselves. Night rather quiet, but, little or no Wind.

Thursday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & light winds. Off chasing whales all day without success. The Heo-kai boat struck again today, but, did not save him, neither did they save the one yesterday. Towards sundown we saw the Old Pearl in the Horizon to Leeward or what we supposed to be her, we all came onboard at Sundown got our supper & turned in for the Night.

Friday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine, Sent off two boats and our Boats crew staid onboard to stow down our last Whale. About two O'clock P.M. the Old Pearl came in & Anchored close to us. We finished stowing down by 4<sup>h</sup> P.M. & he stowed down 52 barrels. We then got Mr. Warner & Mr. Senny onboard and Laid her off Fore and aft; The two Captains taking our Old Boat went onshore where they Remained until after Sundown, for what Purpose God Only knows! While they were gone, Mr. Warner informed me that Last Friday about the same time



222 Exchang<sup>ing</sup> The News

that we struck, He struck another calf  
M. Tenney



to him and struck the Cow, but  
Geoffrey was soon fast also, But the Whale ran  
them a long way off shore and to windward so  
that after she sank they left an empty Boat  
by her and did not get onboard of the Pearl  
until after dark. On the next day they tried  
to haul our Whale (of Thursday) up But could  
not so they left her til Sunday Morning  
when they found she had gone, so they got  
the Old Pearl under weigh & went outside  
to look for her but could not find her, for  
they did not look in the Right Place. They then  
left on and beat up to their Whale of Friday  
Where they got on Monday afternoon, hauled  
him up, and towed him into west bay where  
they cut him in & boiled him out & got under  
weigh on Wednesday Morning to beat round  
here again, but finding the Current too  
strong against them, they went round the  
other way and got here this Afternoon, having  
been gone just one week & got a Fish that  
made thirtyfive barrels of oil. They were all  
glad enough to get onboard the Old Doctor  
again saying they had been half starved  
while onboard the Pearl. Old Geoffrey had  
to gam with us until after eight O'clock  
when we set him onboard of his own  
ship and then turned in for the Night  
Saturday 18<sup>th</sup> Nasty, Wet, disagreeable, and  
squally until 11 O'clock when it cleared off



## The Other Whalers, About Leaving. 223

and we had fine weather the rest of the day. About one o'clock P.M. Captain Geoffrey went

on & struck a small calf,

the rest of the boats was soon

there &

struck

her

P.M. about five miles to windward of the ship

and she floated, so we hitched on all six boats

to tow & at 20 minutes of seven P.M. we got

alongside of the Old Doctor, we then fluked

her, got supper, set the anchor watches and

turned in, in good spirits for the night.

Sunday 19<sup>th</sup> June, we commenced cutting at 7

A.M. and had her all in by 10 o'clock. We then sent

off two boats to look for another, and our boats

crew staid on board, and cut him up into horse

pieces. Captains North & Grinnell both came on

board of us today to bid us good bye as North

is going to leave in a couple of days for home

but the Heoka is still going to remain. They

have taken eight whales since they have been

here that gave them 200 barrels each. They informed

us that the Mary Gardner left yesterday. That

the Tropic Bird was going tomorrow & the Brig.

Hopetown was going to remain. The last three

vessels have been whaling, and have taken

four whales, that shared 53 barrels each. We

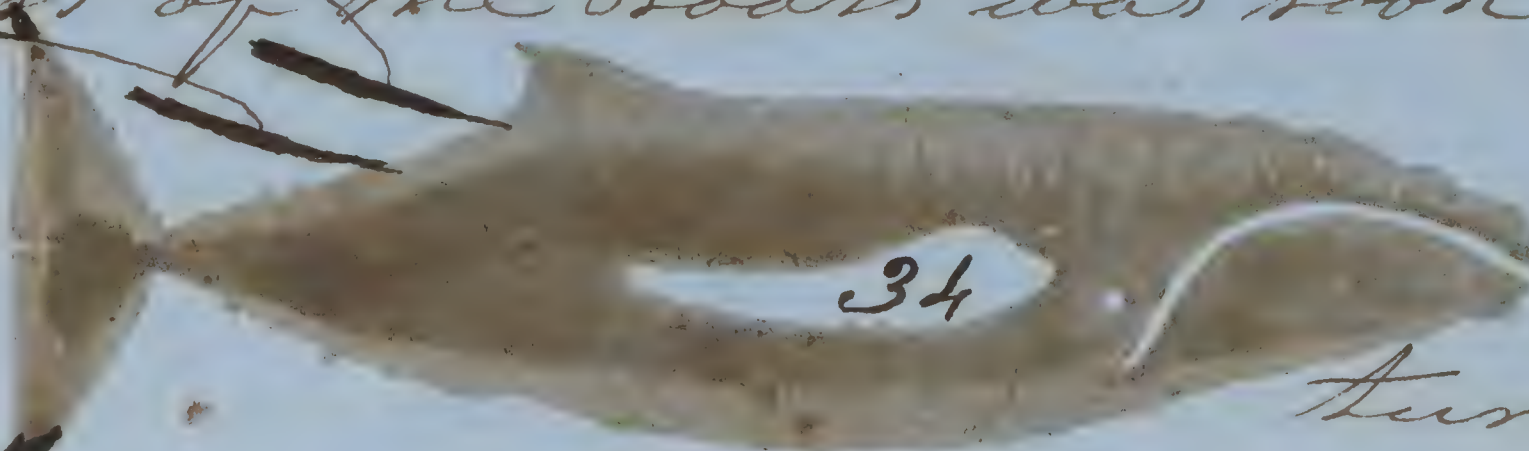
got our whale cut up by 7 P.M. & the blubber

is so fine grained that we will not begin to

boil to night. The boats all got on board by

sun down having seen nothing but one cow

& calf going very quick to the windward.





## 224 The Worst Kind Of Weather.

Monday 20<sup>th</sup> Light winds and Showery. Sent off two boats from each Ship, Captain Geoffrey staying on board to stow down their last Whale & get off a Raft of water. We started the Works, after Rigging an Awning over the Try Works to keep the Rain off; our Whale turns out to be almost a Dryskin. The Boats got back by four O'clock P.M., having seen nothing but a couple of Bull Whales; the Got sleepier and set the Watches from half Past six until half Past Six in the Morning. I had the First Watch below, but Old Geoffrey must come on board to Play Back Gammon & the Rattling of the Dice Box kept us awake for a couple of hours. But, that is nothing so long as our Dear Captain, obtained two hours Pleasure! Too much sleep is not good for us.

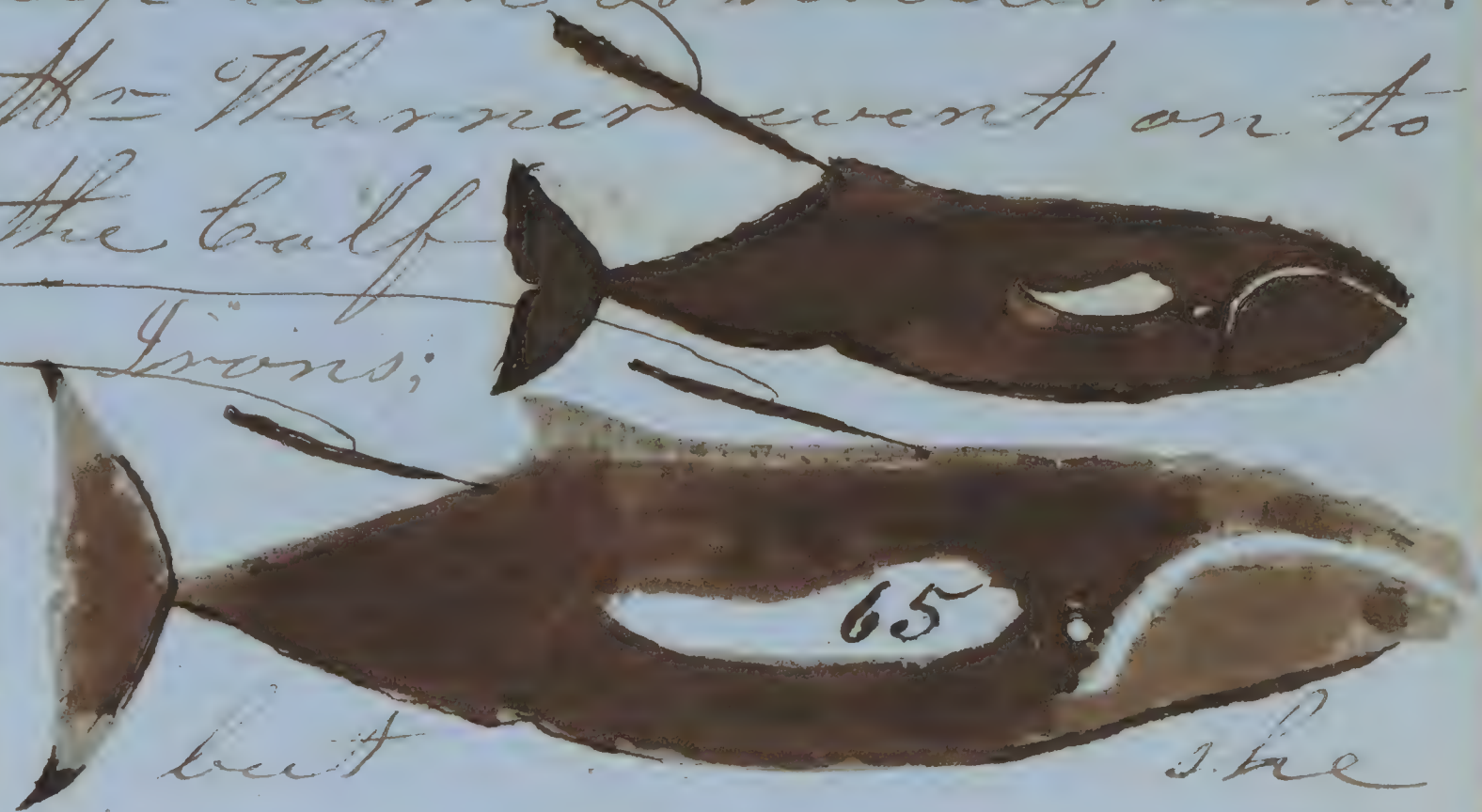
Tuesday 21<sup>st</sup> Very Wet, so that they could not lower the Boats; so all hands turned in on board the Pearl and we kept all hands, one Watch to look at the other Watch Working. About 11 A.M. we saw a Whale, and five boats went in chase of him; our Boats crew staid on board & finished Boiling by one O'clock P.M. and our Whale turned up about 34 Barrels. We then scrubbed her down with Lye for a and aft. The Boats got back about four P.M. & Mr. Fenney put his false keel on again having got it knocked off by the last Whale. The night was very wet and disagreeable throughout.

Wednesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Almost a continual Rain lowered once and Captain Geoffrey went on to a large bow but the Boatsteerer did not dart.



Our Last Hump Back, For 1858. 2259  
Thursday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & Clear. Lowered five Boats  
Mr Fenney being laid up with a swelled hand.  
About 8 o'clock A.M., Mr Warner went on to  
a bow & calf & struck the calf  
killing him with his Irons;  
The rest of us however  
got to him time enough  
to strike the bow, but she  
was a Tartar & we did not get her turned  
up before twelve o'clock & about 15 miles  
from the Ship. We took her in tow and  
towed until sundown when finding that  
we could not get her to the Ship, we anchored  
her about three miles from the Ship, and  
came Onboard for the night.

Friday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine, Mr Fenney still unable  
to go in his Boat. We however went to  
our Whale with all six Boats and finding  
the current run too strong to tow him  
to the ship, we sent two Boats back to  
get the Pearl under weigh & we then took  
him in tow with the other four Boats  
for West Bay where we got by 12 o'clock  
& anchored her. The Pearl came in about  
2 P.M., and we had her cut in by Sundown.  
Two of our Boats Staid all Night and Mr  
Warner returned to our Ship. We found the  
Tropic Bird, The Keoka, and The Hopeton  
all lying here getting Wood & Water to leave  
as they had seen no Whales for some days past,  
and you may be sure that we did not tell  
them we had seen Mary! We also learned  
that The Keoka & Helen Augusta had Shares





226 The Fleet At West Bay.

230 barrels each for the whole season, what they had got both here & on the coast. The other three vessels had shared 63 barrels each & the H. A. & M. G. were both gone Saturday 25<sup>th</sup> June, turned out at 5 o'clock got breakfast and sent our Second Mate's Boat back to our ship. We then got the Old Pearl under weigh to beat back again to our old place. We staid until sundown when finding the breeze dying away, we left & came in the Boat to our own ship where we got by nine o'clock P.M. We found all right to home, and we set two good lights for the Pearl who contrary to our expectations got in & came to anchor about 12 o'clock close to us; she finished boiling by daylight & the Whale turned up about fifty Barrels. Two Boats from each vessel went out after breakfast. We staid on board to stow down our last whale & gage our oil as Old Geoffrey says that if we cannot get another Whale by next Wednesday he will square up with us and leave for home. We got five cask shooks from him to day, five Bundles of Iron hoops, a cask of Flax, Six Planks of Heading & 6 empty Barrels with four or five Bunches of second hand Iron hoops. We let him have two Barrels of Beef, one of Pork & a Pail of Sugar. At Sundown the Boats returned having seen but one cow & calf to day that they could not get near. So after supper the Captain & Mate



## Prepairing To Leave.

227 9

of the Pearl came onboard & we had a good long gam. We had a long visit from Capt. Delano to day & Mr. Morea, who is now his Second Mate; Mr. Hathaway his former Second Mate having ran away a few days ago, taking two men with him & sent his Boat back to the Brig with the Boat steerer and two men. It is supposed that they went off in a Portuguese slaver that laid here at that time.

Monday 27<sup>th</sup> Rather wet until about 10 AM when it cleared off & we had a fine day of it. Neither of us sent any boats out to day, both of us busy getting off water. We got off one Raft of 69 barrels and had a gang on shore cutting wood. The Pearl got her last Raft off to day, and is going to cut wood tomorrow when I understand it is her intention to square up with us and leave for Home. how sweet the word sounds! When will we be able to do the same? The old man was on shore twice to day, and brought off a large Turtle, for which he gave six Tarpon lin hats. It weighed about 500 Pounds, and had over 500 Eggs inside of her. We gave the Pearl half of it, and half the eggs also. We got five more new cask Shooks from Mr. Geoffrey to day, & the Steward begged a few Plates from him also. Our Cooper busy setting up the Shooks to fill with water. We wound up the night with a good long gam; and some busy writing letters.





## 228 Dissolving Our Copartnership.

Tuesday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine, Both Vessels Busy at Hoisting and Watering. The Pearl sent about 20 Barrels of Oil to us, which we hoisted in and stowed down, Making in all about two Hundred and Eighty-two Barrels each that we have taken here this Season. The Pearl is going tomorrow; we got fifteen Barrels from the Pearl to day, and one barrel of clowdust; we also got 10 Harpoons and Four Lances from her. At Sundown we cleared up & got supper, and then had a good long Gam for the last one. And I spent the evening Writing a Letter to my Brother William at New Orleans.

Wednesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear. We were out at daylight & Brought off a Raft of Water before Breakfast. About Eight o'clock the Old Pearl set her Colors & we did the same. She then Harned the Windlass, up Anchor and Squared away for home, amidst hearty Cheers & well wishes for a Speedy Passage, which they Returned, with hoping we might be fortunate the Remaining Part of our Voyage. The Pearl is out from Home 29 Months and has taken 600 of Humpback 100 of Right Whale and 200. of Sperm Oil. We stowed our Water sent the raft onshore to fill again and got one Boat load of Wood off. The Old Man took a Boats Crew and went after Coconuts; They got about 330, some dry, and some Green. It seems quite Lonesome to Night Now that we have lost our Partner, after a Partnership of nearly three Months. It seems



## The Pearl Leaves For Home.

229 9

as if we had lost Part of our Ships Company; And so we have! for George Purse went on board of the Pearl to go home & Left it than by the Name of Henry Smith in his Place, having the Consent of both Captains to Exchange. We also took it St Helena Bay from her to take him home by the Name of Mark, Samuel, Nife. Making our crew in all 23 strong fore & Aft.

Thursday 30<sup>th</sup> And Last day of September Fine. We got off Another Raft of Water and four Boat Loads of Wood to day. We have got now 45 Casks of Water on board, and wood enough with what we get tomorrow to last it Year neither of which we have to Pay anything for here. The Old fellow went and got about 300 Concoasts there to day; for which we Pay nothing either. About sundown we had a good Shower of Rain, which is just in time to soften the dirt; as we are going to give her a Thorough Scrubbing Tomorrow. We also found that we have but, 12 Barrels of Pork & 6 of Beef in the Ship; And the Old Man swears there ought to be 40 Barrels of Meat in her now, But that the Owners has deceived him and that but as much in the Ship as they said they had. But, I think! if we had all the Beef & Pork in the Ship, that he has given away & sold during the Voyage, We would not have to Bye any before we were 30 Months out or more. As it is we must go some place to get Meat before long and other things too for we have but two Casks of Flour, 3 of Bread, one of Molasses, & very little Sugar, Tea, or Coffee.



230 Adieu To Prince's Island.

Friday The First day of October 1858.  
Fine Weather, But A little sprinkling of Rain  
once or twice during the day. We were out at  
Day light & commenced, with Soap, Sand, Lye  
and Fresh Water; and we scraped & scrubbed  
her, from her tops, to the Waters Edge, Inside  
and Outside & did not get through until Pitch-  
dark Night. What makes the Job more  
Pleasant to us, is that we are going over to  
the Coast to try for those Humpbacks. But,  
There is not A Man in the Ship, Fore or aft,  
But what is Praying to God! that we may never  
see Another Whale come alongside of her!  
While we were scrubbing her outside they sent  
a gang and got two more Boat loads of Wood;  
and Bent A New Foresail. After Dark they  
Bent A New Flying jib & we made out to get  
a chance to wash ourselves to get our supper  
about 8 o'clock to Night. And you will  
scarcely believe it, when I tell you that  
he (the Captain) would not let us Boatswains  
take A little fresh water to wash ourselves  
with; Although he could afford to use three  
Large casks of it to wash the Ship with. But  
It is A candid fact. Good Night for I am tired!  
Saturday 2<sup>nd</sup> Time We were out at Daylight  
Lashed our spare spars got one Anchor secured and  
the cable stowed away. We then got Breakfast  
Hauled the Windlass, and hove our other Anchor  
up & made sail; we stood away to the S E, after  
A stay of three months and two days, to look  
for fatter Whales than those we are leaving  
here; Or. Else we do not want any more; I don't know which

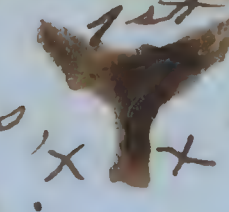
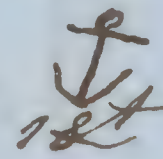


Princes Island (See Page 232) 231.9





## 232 Description of Princes Island.

On Page 231, A Whales Flecks, marked Thus,  denotes where each Whale was Harpooned. The figures over the Flecks, denotes the Whales in Rotation as struck from first to Last; And the Black Crofs each side denotes those which were Lost. An Anchor marked Thus,  denotes the Places where we Anchored, in rotation, from first to Last. Rocks above water marked thus O. Figures 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, &c, denote the depth of water round the Island. During our stay of three Months at this Island, we had the Wind continually South. July & August in the first Part of it we had strong winds; The latter Part of August & all September, the weather was more Moderate but, plenty of Rain. There is Plenty of Yams, Fowls, Pigs, Eggs, Fish, Limes, Coconuts, Sour Sops, Jack Fruit, Bananas, Plantains, Pumpkins, Coffee & Cocoa to be got here, for which they take either Money or Trade. The Best Trade is Salt, Red & Blue Flannel Shirts, Calico Shirts, Knives and Forks, Crockery-ware, Beef, Pork, and Bread. And the Best Places for Trading, is North & West Bays. For Wood and Water you pay Nothing, only the Trouble of going after it, And nearly every Bay has one or more streams, of as fine water as I ever saw used on Shipboard. The Anchorage is good & Safe, excepting The South Bay and No Port charges, excepting you enter St Antonio Harbour. On the Whole This <sup>is</sup> A fine Place for A Whale Ship to Recruit cheaply; And also to Give Liberty as there would be no fear of the crew deserting without being caught again, Plenty of Wine, Rum, Tobacco, Fruit & Women. What more does A Sailor Want?



# A Joyful Day For All

233. 9

Sunday, 3<sup>rd</sup> A Beautiful Day, Thank God! And the first quiet Sunday we have had for three months. We were all busy fore and aft; having accumulated Beards like Billy Goats, <sup>and</sup> our persons well coated with Soot & Fat. After Scrapping, Hair cutting, Washing, & getting some clean clothes on, we were quite a different set of Beings to look at; And, oh! how Pleasant it was, to be able once more to sit down for an hour or two, to Read some good Book! Or as others did; to overhaul their stock of clothing. Condemning some, laying others on one side ready to be Washed and mended again, Putting their chests, and Berths, in Apple Pie order again, and most of us silently Praying that we may never see the Sign of another Humpback Whale; And our Chief Mate went so far, as to hope that the Next Man who opened his mouth to sing out for one, might be taken with the Lock jaw, and not be able to shut it again until the Season was Over! We are now however standing close on the wind, heading S. S. E. having the Wind S. W. and no land in sight. Most heads turned looking for Sperm Whales, The Pigs having a glorious blowout on board Mats, the others only drinking the milk, and the Rest to the Pigs. I cannot help thinking how some of our School boys to Home, would like to have a Scrabbling match here for a few minutes. I have laid a few dozen by, to take to St Helena, to a few friends I have there if they will keep so long; So has most of us that lives aft. And I don't care how soon the time comes round.



## 234 The African Coast Again.

Monday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light winds. At daylight we saw Land which Proved to be the Island of Corisco & Cape Asteria. We were Busy repairing sails & refitting running rigging &c that have got sadly out of order while Thumferring. At Two O'clock P.M. we got the Sea Breeze, and heading up N. by West, we were abreast of what we called the River Gabboon by dark; For although we have had beautiful weather for the last few days; it has always managed to cloud up so that we could not get an observation at 12 O'clock; and in half of an hour's time be as clear as a mirror again. The night was fine & I am suffering with the Rheumatic Pains all over me. About 10 O'clock the Sea Breeze left us, and we made one or two short tacks during the night.

Tuesday 5<sup>th</sup> Rather dark and cloudy with some rain. Towards noon it cleared off and we got an observation which made us out 27 miles North of the line. We stood off shore from 9 A.M. until 3 P.M. when taking the Sea Breeze again, we tacked to the South again. We were in sight of a large Brazilian Merchant Bark all day, and we exchanged salutations with her. We saw several of our Friends the Thumfbucks to day, all bound to windward eyes out. And the Lord speed them day I! We killed a Pig to day, and divided him as usual. At 11 P.M. we were close in to the Land, and were obliged to tack off shore again. Saw Plenty of Fires Burning along shore, which you can do every night.



# The Doctor Franklin Ashore. 23519

Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> Dark & cloudy. At 2 o'clock this morning we tacked inshore again, and at 6 stood off & continued on the offshore tack until 6 P.M., when we tacked in again. At 11 we were six miles South of the Line. Saw some Hump Backs going quick to windward. Employed at various little jobs, and the Captain very busily employed polishing up his Missic Box (The Fruit of two coils of Old Wilcox's Taw Line) The night was fine with strong S.W. winds. Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine with strong S.W. winds, and strong head current. We were in 12 miles South to day, which is slow progress; And I think if we beat up to windward more off shore, as the Mate wanted him to do, when we left Prince's Island, we would have stood a good chance to have picked up a little sperm oil; & got to windward equally as quick if not quicker than we will now. We have thrown away 45 days previous to this, beating up to this infernal Equinoxia, & God only knows how many days we are to waste with it this time. The night was fine as usual & strong winds. And we saw quite a large comet in the Western Horizon, for the third night now. Friday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine. I was awakened this morning by the cry of, the ship is ashore! I jumped out of my berth & ran upon deck, when I found that she was hard and fast, sure enough. We had 10 feet water forward & 12 aft with soft sandy bottom. We called all hands and trimmed the sails in hopes of pressing her over the Bank, but found it was no use, so we blew up everything



## 236 All Afloat Again.

and lowered A Boat to run out A kedge astern. But by some Accident they had forgot to haul the jibs down, & Just as we got the kedge into the Boat, A flaw of wind came off from the Land and catching the jibs pressed her head off of the Bank. We then let her run Before the Wind N E under Bare Poles. Keeping A Boat A head sounding. We followed her about A while having but two fathoms and A half of Water. when we suddenly struck into deep water. So we called the Boat alongside & hoisting her up made all sail, and there congratulating each other upon our good fortune; When the Star in the chains cried, By the Mark ten! followed up with, by the deep eight! heave quick cried the Captain! See the Anchor all clear Mr Warner. Aye, Aye Sir! By the deep six! And the Mark five! heave quick, heave quick! And A half four! By the deep four! Let go the Anchor! Roared out the Captain! and down she went, Bringing us up all standing. We then blew up everything and waited Patiently until day light when we found we were on A Shoal about 12 Miles North West of Cape Lopez. We sent A Boat off who soon found A way out, and returning to the Ship, we got under weigh, and by Breakfast time we were all right again. We struck about three O'clock this Morning And got off again all afloat by four, being fast just one hour. We cannot be hurt much, if any, for the water was so smooth and the wind light that she did not thump very heavy. We stood off shore until three P.M., when



# Salt Meat Destemper.

237 49

we tacked in to try our luck again. Saw one  
Thumper to day. Later at Noon 24 miles South.  
Employed at various Jobs during the day. Night  
fine, and our Cornet looks Beautiful to night.  
Saturday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine, Beating up East in sight of  
Land; duty bound not to run her on shore again.  
Saw nothing but some Porpoise. Tinkering about  
about at different things, & I made me a New Knife  
Blade out of a File. Cooper Busy making Buckets.  
Night fine & our Cornet still Plain.  
Sunday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear. Saw a whole Gamt  
of Finbacks to day & a couple of Thumpbacks.  
The Land also in sight & we head right along  
the coast, with a Light Breeze. Lat = 11:15 S.  
Monday 11<sup>th</sup> Cloudy all day. Land in sight.  
Saw three or four Thumpbacks going to the  
Windward quick. The Broke out our meat  
to day to see how much we had left and we  
found we had, But 11 barrels of Pork and  
four Barrels of Beef. The old man swears  
that the Owners have deceived him in regard  
to the quantity of Meat put on board of the  
Vessel at home; and he will Bye more the  
First Place he can get it if it costs 50 Dollars  
Per Barrel. But in my way of thinking! if  
we had all the Pork, and Beef, that we have  
distributed up and down this Coast; Prince  
Island, St Helena and Brava & Anabona. we  
would not fall far short of what the  
Owners say they put on board. We are now  
Bound for Loanda & the Lord Speed her say I!  
for we are all out of Tobacco, Fire & Aft.  
Our Cornet still in sight. Got no Lat = to day.



## 238 Went Lower For Whales.

Some of the men complained of their Tea being without any strength; And the Captain told them it was the Cooks fault. Then going forward he had some words with the Cook, and finally pitched into him & choked him severely.

Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup> A fine Pleasant day. Land in sight. Busied about different parts of the Rigging. Saw Plenty of Humpbacks to day and three Cows with Calves, one of which followed the Ship within half a mile to Leeward of us, From two O'clock P.M., until Sundown, But we made no offer to Lower for her. All hands are loudly grumbling saying; what is the use of keeping other to the Mast heads when he will not Lower for Whales that are fairly blowing water on us. As God is to be my Judge! I do not believe that Captain Russell cares whether we get any more Oil or Not. It is a hard thing to say, I know; But, if he does want it, he dont Exert himself much to get it; or let anybody else either. And I thought he would eat me without Pepper or salt to night, for saying that there was as good a chance to have got a Whale to day, as I had seen the whole Season. But, let him fire away! if ever he lifts his hand against me; he will find a different Person to deal with than he has ever found in this ship as yet; or in any other either. But, I hope he will not, as I do really wish from my heart! to get along this voyage in Peace and quietness, & it will not be my fault if I do not. The Night was fine, though Cloudy. Lat<sup>n</sup> to day 02: 24 South.



## Beating Up The Coast.

239

Wednesday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine, & Steady winds from West South-west, But although we have been running along with the land since three O'clock P.M., of yesterday, until Noon to day, we made but 29 miles, being in Lat<sup>e</sup> 3:53 South. We commenced to Rattle down Main Rigging to day, and finished the Starboard side. Night was cloudy but the wind the same; could not see the Comet to Night.

Thursday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & Clear. Took the Starboard boat in on deck to Repair, & Renail her and fit the Seat & Rudder ready for Lugging it in Port and all along the Coast. Some employed in the Port Main Rigging. About 2 P.M. a British Man of War Steamer, Bark Rigged hove in sight & after firing two Blank Guns; we set our Ensign. She ran across our Bows about a dozen Ships length ahead of us, taking a good survey of us, she then kept away to the N.W. & made sail without speaking us. We are still on the Starboard tack, Running along the land, not having tacked since Tuesday afternoon, and although we carry a four knot breeze we are only in Lat<sup>e</sup> 3:25 South to day. (32 miles last 24 hours) Night fine, steering a course, South.

Friday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine, But cloudy. Saw some Tobacco heard a number of Guns firing, But saw nothing. Finished the Main Rigging. Rove new Boats Falls for all three Boats. The Old one still working on his boat. Made 43 miles to day, being in the Latitude of 4:08 South at Noon. Night set in with strong Breezes and cloudy weather. Course South But she is going S.E. wind S.W. I commenced to Coacoanut Dipper to day, lost a while time away.



## 240. Chased By A Coast Guard.

Saturday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & very light breeze for the last 24 hours, still, at noon we found we had made 34 miles; Being in lat<sup>e</sup> 4.42<sup>or</sup> South, and it is very evident that we must have a Weather current. The land can still be seen to the Eastward when it is a clear Horizon. We saw some Humpbacks to day, going quick to the windward, (or Southward) Busy at several little jobs about the Rigging, Night fine & clear, with a good Moon Light; Saw our Comet to Night, But, it is so distant, that I do not think we will see it again.

Sunday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. We were close in to the land this morning and we saw a vessel about six miles ahead of us to anchor. We soon saw two Boats put off from her and make towards us; We immediately tacked ship knowing she was a cruiser and determined to give them a chance to try themselves. They came on, and away we flew a good Rap Full Dame Frolic who is fond of peer favoring us with a good breeze. They tried hard to cut us off but fell astern of us; they then took the sails & bars, being about two miles from us. We kept them there until about one o'clock P.M. when the wind dying away they began to gain on us rapidly, so we set our colors & tacked ship; They soon got within hailing distance and asked us if we would be kind enough to heave to. So we hove to, and they came alongside; when who should it be But, our old Friend of the 11<sup>th</sup> of June last. He conducted himself a little more



Who Turns Out, An Old Acquaintance 241

Gentlemanly this time & was respected accordingly. As Land was out of sight we let them hang on to us until 5 P.M., when sighting the Land again they bid us adieu. We learned from them that the coast had been alive with Whales this season and a number of the Whips had done well. They had taken three Slavers since we saw them last June, and chased a number more that had escaped them. They also informed us that it was all a Hoax about the United States opening the Slave trade. They let our men have a considerable little quantity of Tobacco, which they had in the Boats, and in return, got some Coconuts, Whale Bone, Canes, a Porpoise Iron and sundry other little notions. It is quite a treat to see how cheerful all our men look to night behind a cloud of Tobacco Smoke. No one would believe, except those who have experienced it, what unspeakable Joy & delight the fragrant weed has caused amongst our little assembly here on board; who have been without any now for some time. But so it is; Habit becomes Necessity to Mankind. Our Lat<sup>e</sup> to day was 4:53<sup>0</sup> South, having made but 11 Miles to day. At Sundown we could just see the Heron in the Horizon from the Mast head, & her boats were about three Miles from us to Leeward. Night fine & strong Northerly Current as we were informed by the Herons Boats. Monday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine, Beating up on short Tacks Lat<sup>e</sup> to day 5:24<sup>0</sup> South. Saw some Humpbacks and one Carcass that some lucky fellow had relieved of the Blubber. Night fine &c.



## 242. Porpoise Catching.

Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze, Steering South. About one this morning we ran into a large Slick that smelled as strong of Tar as if I had had my nose stuck into a Tar Barrel, and for which we could not account. Shortly afterwards a large School of Porpoises came around the ship. I got a harpoon and went out on to the Martingale where I soon struck one



and the Line Parting, he walked off with my harpoon. About two o'clock they came around again, and getting another Harpoon, and a Stouter Rope, I soon struck another fine



one which we saved, and got him all ready for the Cook & Steward to Operate on in the morning.

At Sunrise we were in Blue water which shows that we must have crossed the River Congo Stream. we saw a sail to Eastward of us bound to the Northward. At Noon the Latitude was  $6^{\circ} 14'$  <sup>on</sup> South being 50 miles the last 24 hours, which is the Best run we have had since we left Prince's Island. P.M. the Wind Light & baffling, but towards Sundown we got a good steady breeze, and headed up our course again (South) The Old Man is greatly afraid that he will not get his Boat finished in time to go onshore at St Paul de Loando where we intend to touch. He has used up every boat nail in the ship on her, double nailing her all over; And we have not got a Nail in the ship now to mend a Boat in case we should by any means get one stove. But, No fear of Whales staving them! For we will not lower for them.



Idle Thoughts, Oct<sup>r</sup> 1858. 243

and no later than yesterday, when I reported one three miles off on the Lee Beam, the Old Man said he would not run off three miles if he was sure of getting one. It is hard! But Thank God I have no one to home looking to me for support; If I had! I think I should go crazy. The comet is yet in sight But very distant.

Wednesday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine & calm. About six o'clock we took a stiff breeze from the N.W. and we Bowed off about five knots an hour until one P.M. with square yards; the wind then hauled to S.W. and we had a light breeze the remainder of the day. At noon we were in the Lat<sup>d</sup> of 7:16 South. Saw a Bark standing Northward; and about one P.M. saw a whale to windward about three miles off, that spouted from 15 to 20 times But we could not make out what he was, And we had no time to spare to go see. Turned the Starboard boat up after dinner & Painted her Bottom the Carpenter having finished her after being to work on her since last Thursday. We caught a very pretty little Dove yesterday, and another one to day, that must be lost from the land, for they were completely tired out. We cut one wing & took them into the cabin where they Pitched into the Rice & Water we gave them as if they were half starved.

Thursday 21<sup>st</sup> Thick & light winds. After breakfast we had a good Shower that run the Black & white Paint all over each other on the Old Mans Boat. Saw a Brig. standing the same as ourselves. At noon the Lat<sup>d</sup> was 7:48<sup>m</sup> South. After dinner we got a good breeze



## 244 St Paul De Loando

And the Old man is as sour as vinegar, because he cannot get his fancy Gig Ready, not if the Breeze holds. Saw any quantity of Humpbacks to day all around the ship, But we do not want any more of them! or we would not have room for The Sperm Oil we are going to get Next Cruise.

Our Comet is just visible to Night.

Friday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine, Was close in to the land this Morning. with a head wind, But, Loando in sight. Saw several Boats beating up for Loando. At 11 A M, we got the Sea Breeze and tacked ship. We saw the United Sloop of War Vincennes, who went in & came to an Anchor. We stood in abreast of the Harbour and a Pilot Boarded us, But we would not go in. The Old Man then lowered the Waist Boat & went on shore, where finding he could get meat, he came off again & got on board at sundown. We then stood in a little way & came to Anchor in 17 fathoms Water about 1 P M ready for the Land breeze, to run in in the Morning. We then set Anchor Watches two in a watch. The Second Mate Brought on board a Pound of Tobacco, which he shared out amongst the Crew, and as each Man took his allotted Portion they could not have expressed more Satisfaction if they had been receiving an independent fortune. I heard but very little News from Shore, and that so vague, and uncertain that I have taken no notice of it. Saturday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & Light Land breeze. We hoisted up at Daylight & by ten o'clock A M we came to Anchor about two miles from the town



Selling Oil. October 1858. 245

in 11 fathoms water. We were Boarded by the Health Officers, as also by the Vincennes Officers from whom we got the Promise of some Tobacco in Exchange for Oil. After they left I went onshore with the Captain, who sent me back again, with a quarter of Beef, a lot of Sweet Potatoes & other vegetables. The rest of the day we spent, attending the Main Top sail. Sunday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine, Starboard Watch on Liberty, and I drew five Dollars Liberty Money. I found the shore hot & disagreeable so I kept in doors most of the day & myself, Mr. Fenney and the Steward remained onshore all night. I bought myself a nice hat for one Dollar, some thread, needles, Steel Pens, & Pipes. (the latter being 50 cents the dozen) & a good lot of different sized Fish hooks; For I am very fond of Fishing, whenever I have a chance. I saw several of the Officers of The Vincennes with whom I am acquainted & Received an invitation to come onboard whenever it pleased me. Monday 25<sup>th</sup> Came off in the Market Boat this morning, & the other Watch then went on Liberty, having two Dollars each. We then broke out 88 Gallons of oil which we took onboard of The Vincennes, letting them have it at 10 cents a Gallon. The Captain got 19 Pounds of Tobacco for Part Payment, and the Rest he took in cash. I got about 15 Pounds as Presents from the Officers myself and they begged so hard for Shells & Whale teeth that I let them have nearly all I had. Tobacco is 75 cents a Pound onshore But they sell it



## 246 Buying Stinking Beef.

to our Captain for 23 cents onboard of the Vincennes. At sundown all the watch came off but one, and all quite merry. We have contracted for 40 Rounds of Beef at 5½ cents a Round, per day while we lay here. I wrote & despatched a letter to day, to a friend at home. Tuesday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine. Our Watch went on shore to day. I drew one dollar to send for some Matches and Ink, But remained onboard in Preference to spending another day to be roasted alive in this hot hole. 25 Barrels of Fish Bay Beef came off to day at \$5.50 per Barrel (as I understand) and it is horrid stuff Both to taste and smell. They bent the Main Topsail & sent the Mainsail down to repair it. At sundown all came off But the Jenny & the Cooper & there was Plenty of Rum flying all over the ship But no quarreling. Wednesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine, Larboard Watch on Liberty. Our watch made some new Pickle & put on the Beef, But I don't think it will do it any good. Finished & Bent the Mainsail At sundown the watch all came off but one, Johnny Johnson Who we shipped to day that came onboard at St Helena. We also shipped Harry Smith that we got out of the Pearl in Purser's place & another Portuguese, in the place of Antonio Lorenzo, whom we discharged. The Vincennes went out to day. Thursday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine, All hands onboard to day & we stowed away our Meat & got every thing snug for sea tomorrow, I have been very feverish & unwell all day to day.



# A Heavy Draft on Wilcox.

247

Friday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine. Unbent one cable & stowed  
the Anchor, loosed all the sails ready to start  
But it being the queens fathers birth day all  
Business was suspended & it was as much as the  
Council could do to get us off at all; And as it  
was, their last Boat did not leave us until  
five o'clock P.M., we then got under weigh  
Leaving behind us our Poor dog Tiger whom  
some Rascally Portuguese has either Killed  
or Stolen we did not get out side before sun  
down when we got supper & set the Watches  
Bound up the Coast for Equimina. And it is  
now in our Watches we Miss Poor Tiger most.  
I have not much to say about St Paul de Loanda.  
It is Situated so that it is completely Surrounded  
by hills, and not a Breath of air to be had. The  
Houses are Mostly Stone, Plastered over and  
whitewashed. The Streets are Narrow & un paved, and  
having no side walks, you sink to your Ankles in  
the Burning hot sand as you walk along the  
streets. As we could not get on shore before nine  
o'clock, and had to return at Sundown, we were  
Glad to get under shelter as soon as we got  
there & remain so until ready to come off again.  
There is scarcely a white Person, Male or female  
to seen until after the Sunsets. If you want anything  
you must Pay three times the value of it & be roasted  
while looking for it. So I concluded to remain onboard.  
While Laying there we got 25 Barrels salt beef. 40 Pounds Fresh  
Beef, with soup vegetables daily. One Barrel of Beans, One Barrel  
of Rice, about 6 Barrels of sweet Potatoes, One cake of Bees Wax  
and a few dozen of Eggs, and the Liberty money to the then four  
and all does not exceed 100 dollars. Still the Captain says that  
The Ships Bills, is 751 dollars altogether. Pretty Strong for H. Wilcox!



248 At Sea Again. November 1858  
Saturday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light winds did nothing  
to day but stow away, A Barrel of Beans,  
A Barrel of Rice A large cake of Bees Wax, &  
A Bag of Peanuts for our Captains own use  
and get the Boats in readiness for Whaling  
again. Our Captain had two New Suits made  
here this time Hat, Shoes & all. God knows  
who Pays for them! for I dont, But can guess  
Sunday 31<sup>st</sup> Fine & Light winds. doing nothing  
but read some late Papers & Book we got at  
Loando. Saw one Sail Bound in. Lat = 9:06<sup>m</sup> S.  
Night was fine, and all hands appear to be  
getting pretty well over their Cant Sickness.  
The Comet is still quite plain in light to  
the Westward of us.

Monday November the First 1858. A Fine  
day. with a good breeze from Westward. We saw  
the Land for a couple of hours to day for the  
First time since leaving Loando. Saw one Sail  
And any quantity of Humpbacks, all bound to  
windward. The old Man & Steward busy Making  
up his skew Cloth for Pants.

Tuesday 2<sup>nd</sup> the same. Saw a few Humpbacks.  
and Plenty of small fish. Got another glimpse  
of the land. No Lat to day. Night fine, had  
our Musicians at it to Night again.

Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> Set in Rainy & light winds, flying  
all round the Compass until daylight, when  
it hauled in, to westward again and blew a good  
breeze. So away we went bowling to the South  
ward again. At 11:56<sup>m</sup> South. At Sun  
down we were close inshore & in sight of the  
town of Philip de Benguela, A liss in the



# Bound For Equismira.

249

Lat<sup>n</sup> of  $12:34^m$  South & Long<sup>e</sup>  $13:20^m$  East. We saw four large Vessels to Anchor, and one Brig to Northward of the Town. About 8 P.M. it died away calm & we headed her off shore, during the night we had but little wind & heading N.W. Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm, At Noon found we had drifted nearly a degree to the Northward. P.M. we got a light Westerly wind & we stood to the Southward; saw nothing but Porpoises & Small fish. Night set in fine & a Nice Breeze. Friday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine. At three o'clock this morning we heard the Roar of Breakers, so we tacked off shore. At daylight no land in sight. We kept on the offshore tack until 10 A.M., when we again tacked to southward. At M., we were in the Lat<sup>n</sup> of  $12:42^m$  South. At 3 P.M. saw the Land, and at 5 P.M. let go Anchor in 18 fathoms water at Equismira. There was 8 Launches lying here and one Brigantine, the mate of whom came on board of us and staid a couple of hours. It was too late to go onshore to Night so we furled the sails got supper & set Anchor watches, two in a Watch. Saturday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, Turned out at daylight & Broke out 7 Empty Casks to raft for Water. The Mate of the Brigantine came on board & Bought a Dollars worth of Tea. After Breakfast we rafted our Casks & the Second Mate took his Boats crew to land them, taking the Old Man Onshore at the same time. The what remained on board, set up the head Rigging & then laid Back the Remainder of the day. At noon we set the Colors and the watering gang came off to dinner. After



## 250 The Three Runaways.

They went in again, most of them taking Blankets & other clothes to wash. They had been onshore but a few minutes; When three of them Barnes Sherman, Edward Kenne, & John Donato Picked up their traps & started for the Mountains. The Second Mate followed them & tried to Persuade them to come back, But they would not. He then went about two miles to where the Captain Was & informed him of it. Don. Canas, only laughed at little & then sent over one hundred Niggers after them & By five O'clock they Brought them in again. The Captain came off with them At Sundown Put them in Irons & Put them down in the Run. The Boat then went after the Watering gang who had not got the Raft full yet, owing to the Spring filling very slowly. & besides, a large crowd of Negroes came down in the Afternoon who drained it dry. We got supper having some fine fish that Myself & the Mate caught to day, set the Anchor Watcher, & Retired.

Sunday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine. We were out at daylight & sent in for the Raft, which we got off by 8 O'clock. We then got breakfast, hoisted our water in, and stowed it down. We got through by 10 A M & had the Remainder of the day to ourselves. The old Man went onshore At 10 A M, & we saw no more of him until 7 P M when he came onboard, bringing some fresh fish for Breakfast, But the other Warner caught enough for Both Supper & Breakfast without them. Our Runaways still in Irons; The Old Man



## Getting Some Potatoes.

251

let them up before he went onshore, and gave them some Bread & water to eat, & then put them below again, and did the same when he came on board to Night. I believe the Captain either sold, or made a Present of the Music Box he Brought from home with him to the Mate of the Brigantine that lays here. I asked for Permission, of the Captain, to go on shore at the Watering Place to day, to wash out my Bed clothes; But, got a Decided refusal on the Plea; that some who went onshore to wash yesterday, had run away. But, I did not stop to listen to what he said! for as soon as he said, No! I turned round & left him talking to whoever liked him well enough to pay attention to him, for It is not me that does! Monday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine. Out at daylight and repaired the Fore Topsail. About 10 o'clock the Captain went onshore & we saw no more of him until after dark. We caught fish enough to day, for dinner, Supper & Breakfast tomorrow morning. I caught 18 of them. The Prisoners were let out to their Bread & water three times to day. about 50 small grass bags of Irish Potatoes came on board of us to Night from the Portuguese Brigantine; about 27 Bushels in all, and the Mate brought off some Cabbage leaves for dinner tomorrow. The Mate of the Brigantine made us a Present of two large Pumpkins that I think would weigh 50 Pounds each. We broke out a five Barrel cask of Flour to day and it is the last but one that we have got in the Ship. Night fine & our Comet still in sight.



252 Fish, And Vegetables.

Tuesday 9<sup>th</sup> One Hundred and four Weeks from Home. Not Much doing. The old man went on shore about nine o'clock this morning and got back by six in the evening. About one P.M. he hoisted the colors for a Boat, & when she went in he sent her off with 51 grass bags of sweet Potatoes. They got all completely soaked coming off, and the Mate sent word back, that he might as well leave the rest behind, for he would not give twenty five cents for this Lot. They are Noble looking Potatoes, & it is a Shame to send them off in this manner. Every day we have it Calm & Smooth until about 10 o'clock, when the Sea Breeze sets in, & it is very Rugged, and still, the ~~old~~ fool (God forgive me) has not got sense enough to know, that the Morning is the Best time, unless some one tells him of it. However when he got the Mate's Message he concluded not to send any more off to Night. The Brigantine went out to day Bound for Louanda via Benguela. We caught several dozen fine fish to day, & salted what we did not want, to use Fresh. I caught 31 Myself. The Prisoners were let out while they eat their Bread & water as usual to day, But the Irons has not been taken off of them since Saturday last. Night fine &c.

Wednesday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine, We were out at daylight & sent two Boats in for the Rest of our Potatoes. She got Back by eight o'clock, and towing the other & brought 50 Grass Baskets of Potatoes, 25 Bundles of Fish, (About 20 Pounds in a Bundle)



Two Men That Escaped Us. 253

and half A Bushel of Tomatoes. The Boats crew got Breakfast & Then the Captain went in to Bid Advice to the Don; Leaving orders for us to get the Ship Ready for Sea. About 10 A M the Captain came off Leaving two Men Behind who had ran away George L. Thavilard and Manuel Rosa Frates. We then took the Boat in and got under weigh; The old fellow saying he had made it all right with the Old Don to catch them & keep them, and he was coming back in three days to get them. Well! said the Mate, you can save yourself the trouble. For since you have been gone, I have learned That the Old Don, had inquired of Manuel, What you had done with the other Men that he caught for you; and when he told him, that you had Put them in Irons & Confined them in the hot Run on Bread and Water, the Don, told him, to tell the Rest of the Men, that they might all run away now if they wanted to, for he would catch no more of them, if that was the way our Captain treated White Men! And more, he sent word to the Steward, that he would give him thirty Dollars A Month for A Year, if he would leave, And word to the Carpenter that he would give him Sixty Dollars A Month for the same Term; And if that would not suit him, to come onshore & make A Bargain that would. And he also offered Henry Cochran (A native of the West Indies) Sixty Dollars A Month to Oversee his Sugar Plantation & Mill. Manuel Rosa Frates he Wanted for an Interpreter



254 Farewell To Equimina.  
and Haviland. (Who if you remember we got  
here last March) for ~~at~~ General Overseer.  
(All this I know for ~~at~~ fact myself) The Old  
Man after questioning, the Parties referred  
to and finding it was so; He concluded to let  
her go. So we secured the Anchors, Stowed  
the cables away, Put the Old Boat Over head  
and At Two P M our Watch (consisting of  
three Men forward; And two Boatsmen &  
the Officer Aft) went below. We got all our  
Potatoes stowed away, The Try Pots, Try works  
Cover, and one Junk bask full of Sweet  
Potatoes 3, 6, 16 Pounds altogether. The Potatoe  
Pen three quarters full of Irish Potatoes,  
1600 Pounds in all. About half a dozen  
Cabbages was brought off to day, which makes  
up all the Recruits we got at this Place. I  
have not had my foot on shore while here this  
time, so I cannot say much about it; although  
from all accounts they are making some  
great improvements and amongst the Rest they  
have started a Cotton Plantation. We had  
a good breeze all the afternoon and long  
before sundown the Land was out of sight  
& I hope it will be the last sight I ever  
have of the Coast of Africa. Our Men  
were let out to eat their Bread & Water  
to Night & then Put Below again; The  
Captain telling them he would doctor  
them tomorrow, And I expect we will have  
to witness some more torture. About 11  
O'clock P M it died away calm and continued  
so the Remainder of the Night.



## More Cruel Torture.

255

Thursday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine & very light winds. After breakfast & about 8 O'clock A.M., the Captain had the deserters, Sherman, Donato & Kerne brought on deck, and gave them some Bread and water to eat. He then got two Scrub Broom handles & a Pike Pole, each one about four or five feet in length, and about six inches in circumference. He then made them sit down on deck, and placing their hands, which were in Irons, over forward of their knees, upon their shins, He stuck the Poles through, Over their Arms and under their Hances. In this Position, they could neither lay down, stand up, or sit upright. At twelve O'clock he sent one of the forward hand to feed them with some Bread and Water. Just as they were, But, the Poor fellows were in such misery that they could not eat, and only drank a little Water. All the Afternoon the Unfortunate Victims were crying, and Begging for Mercy. Exposed to a Scorching hot Sun, their hands swelled, and their Wrists chafed with the handcuffs, which have never been removed since last Saturday their sufferings were more than any Poor Pen can describe. Still the Unprincipled Scoundrel only laughed at them, Asking them how <sup>they</sup> liked it! if they did not feel good, &c, adding that he was going to cut hog, and had as many bristles on his back as anybody. They were kept thus until six O'clock in the evening, when he took the Poles out, gave them some Bread & Water and let them go down in the Steerage for the



256 The Torturing Continued.

Night, But without taking their Irons off, or giving them any accomodation but the Bare damp deck. But after he got to Sleep Myself & the Other Boatsteers, gave them a Pillow and a Blanket each, which they managed to keep all Night. We were by observation in the Lat<sup>e</sup> of  $12:20^m$  South and Longitude of ~~(did not)~~ East. to day. Saw Plenty of Algasines & Porpoises to day. We are also Just Commencing on our third year from home & a pretty Beginning we are making of it too.

Friday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine. At Seven O'clock this Morning our Captain Turned out and Ordering his Victims on deck, he gave them Some Bread and Water and then Secured them in the same Position as they were in Yesterday. They were Piteous objects to Behold Hands & wrists Swollen & chafed & Bent in such a Position that it caused excessive Pains in their Breasts, of which they continually complained; Their cries & Groans kept the Watch below from sleeping & the Second Mate Remarked to me that the Captain was not only Punishing them then, But, Punishing all hands; For, said he, it is more Punishment to me or any other than of natural feelings to be obliged to witness such Inhuman torture, than it would be to suffer it themselves! I could not help coinciding with his feelings, and I do not think there is many in the Ship but what does. Towards nine O'clock they began to Beg & Pray of him not to Murder them; & signs of dissatisfaction began



On The Brink Of A Mutiny. 257

to manifest itself fore and aft, which he perceived, He Released Kenne & Donato, and sent them forward. I looked at the clock and it was just nine; The Poor fellows could scarcely walk when released, and their hands and wrists in a dreadful state. I firmly believe that if he had kept them still in that situation, (and in fact I know it) that before 12 O'clock their was then both fore and aft, that would have compelled him to release them. And for their Pains, would have been branded as Mutineers Upon the High Seas! It is such infernal Barbarians as him that causes nine tenths of the Revolts there does happen on the High Seas. But I am firmly resolved if I live to return to the United States, to see if the Law Tolerates Such Actions, for the very thoughts of how those Poor unfortunates were tortured, brings tears to my eyes as I write. Sherman who did not Beg as the others; he did not release until four O'clock in the Afternoon, and as the Poor fellow attempted to straighten up, to go forward he could not do it, And the Pain which the Exertion gave him, caused the Poor fellow to Burst into tears, & as he hobble of forward all doubled up, the Captain shouted after him Now, God Damn you! when you run away again don't let me catch you! if you do, I'll Kill you! But Sherman shall never leave the ship if I can persuade him to Remain, and I think I can. Kenne & Donato he tortured for over 12 hours & Sherman about 19 hours. And they were not absent from their duty when



258 A Dissatisfied Ships Company.

They were taken as deserters, over four hours. It has created great dissatisfaction on board, and I have heard a large Proportion of the Ships Company; swearing they would not report a haul even if they did see any. That they would rather be without Money than to get it for such as him! And I cannot blame them! Selling & giving away his good Meat & then Buying Carrion in its Place for his crew! He opened one Barrel of it on the 27<sup>th</sup> of last Month & it is there yet; the Captain swearing there shall be no more opened until that is eat. So I do not think at that rate there will be any more opened the Voyage. Our Lat<sup>de</sup> to day was 10.40 South and Longitude 11.44 East. At 4 P.M. we tacked to the Southward and at 6 P.M. tacked Back again. The Light was fine & we heading about N, N.W. with the wind from Southwest.

Saturday 13<sup>th</sup> June & Light winds. Very Busy coiling new Lines, and otherwise getting in readiness for Sperm Whales. Between 12 and one o'clock I was sitting on the Main Hatch conversing with the cooper. Henne, who is a carpenter was at work on a chest at the Vice Bench, for the Chief Mate. When the first thing I knew, the Captain came & Rushing by me, and struck Henne a Blow in the Ear that would have felled him to the deck had he not caught with both hands to the vice as he was falling. Now damn you! cried the Captain, use a Mallet. It appears his only offence was using a hammer instead



# A Brutal Ship Master. 259

of a Ballot on a chisel he was using. Hence is a very slight delicate youth & is very much dejected on account of his torture, and he was doing a Job to oblige the Mate, which it was the Ships Carpenters duty to have done; This was his thanks! The Great Big cowardly Tyrant! Oh God! how I Pray for a termination of this Voyage, when I can meet him as Man to Man to call him to account for the Insults he has even heaped on me personally. But he has never Raised his hand against me although I have often Begged of him to do me that Favor. No! It is only them that will bow to him that he attacks & Plays the Tyrant with. Still he little expects that he will be made to answer for all this. But, he will Please God! if two or three of us live to return Home. We made a couple of tacks to day. Light fine &c Sunday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & light S.W. Winds. doing nothing. There is one quality about our Capitaine that I find it hard to define. If he has anything to be done for himself, or for his own benefit on the Sabbath; Do it you must! No matter how hard, or useless it is. I have known him take a Motion, and keep all hands hard to work all day when there was no occasion for it, and all the rest of the week do little or nothing. I have been pulling him about from Ship to Ship, and from Ship to Shore, the whole day from Breakfast time until Sundown, without even time to Clean myself, & Put on some Clean Clothes, and at other times he will Stop you from sewing on a Button,



## 260 Our Tea All Gone.

Whenceing out a Piece of Cloth or even a Towel. One Sunday I broke the last Pipe I had, But, there Being about an inch of the stem left attached to the Bowl, I got another stem & some little splits of Bamboo & proceeded to splice it so that I could finish my smoke. When the Old fellow interrupted me with, Put that Pipe away; there is plenty of time to splice Pipes without doing it on the Sabbath. But, it is the only one I have got to smoke out of Sir; I don't care! put it away I tell you! Adye Adye Sir! and away went ~~spicing~~ the Poor unfortunate Pipe Overboard. Our Lat<sup>n</sup> to day is 11 15 South. Saw Plenty of Terns to day, all bound to the Southward. To show you a Specimen of the Improvidence of our Noble Commander, you will remember that I mentioned his letting the Missionaries have half a Chest of Tea, While we lay at Corisco Island; Also Selling some to the Portuguese Brigantine, while we lay at Equimina this last time. Now last Night we had Coffee for Supper, But, thinking the Steeward had none of his Tea handy I forgot all about it until to Night, when having Coffee for Supper again, I enquired the Reason; Why! Exclaimed the Steeward there is but very little Tea left & I have got orders to keep that for to use when we have got Company. I would willingly have gone without Tea myself, to let the Mission Ladies in that out of the way place have it. But, to let a Kizah Portuguese have it and go without



# Bound To The Westward.

261

Myself, & my whole Ships Company; Especially when he was Bound direct to Soundo where he could Bye it Cargo if he wanted it; is more than I could do; And I dont think it than can be exactly right in his upper works that would do it. God knows! how much Coffee is left.

Monday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. Steering West by South. Unbent & hiddestiched the Main Spence, hoiled it New Line for the Starboard Boat. Saw some Pinbacks. Lat<sup>m</sup> 11:54 South, Long<sup>e</sup> 6:56 East. Night set in dark & cloudy, had some Rain, and at 12 O'clock it cleared off again.

Tuesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze. At 11, broke out for water, Sugar, & Dried Apples. All our Coffee in the Stewards bag. Lat<sup>m</sup> 12:39 South Long<sup>e</sup> 4:48 East. The Air is so cold now, that we are obliged to "Bend," Shoes & Stockings. And a Number of our Men are suffering from bad Colds. The Only reason I can give to account for it, is the Clearness, & Purity, of the Air here. Whilst in near the Coast, there is a continual hot, Misty Vapour coming from over the Land; and I do think, it is the Chief cause of the Unhealthiness, of the African Coast. Night fine & cool.

Wednesday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & Very Chilly. Wind South. Saw nothing. Carried away the Flying Jib & Starboard Stay. Lat<sup>m</sup> 13:37 South Long<sup>e</sup> 3:08 East. Doing little or nothing to day. Our three deserters.

Donato, Henne, and Sherman, are in pretty good spirits to day, as tomorrow their time expires; having been sentenced, (when released from torture) to remain on deck six days, without a watch below. Night fine & very cool.



## 262 Crossing The Carroll Ground.

Thursday 18<sup>th</sup> Cloudy, A good breeze, and very Uncomfortably Cool. Bowling along to the Southward & Westward. Saw Nothing. Lat<sup>m</sup> 14:49 S and Long<sup>m</sup> 1:17 East. Course S W by Thist. The Night has got to be so cool of late that "Corking," has got to be a bad trade & there is very few of us but what have concluded to give up such unprofitable Business, and "Go on the Tramp." (S<sup>c</sup>) walk decks.

Friday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, Clear, and Moderate. Saw a Calatary Sun Fish. Repaired our Fly Lib Hartingale Stay. Carpenter Busy making a set of Box Blocks, for the Fore, and Main Topsail Receptacles. Cooper had a Tooth Pulled, and the Skutt got all the skin taken off of one of his Toes, by placing it under the heel of my Boot. We crossed the Meridian to day at 2 P.M., in the Latitude of 16:10 South. The Night was fine & we kept her S W by Thist under easy sail.

Saturday 20<sup>th</sup> Another beautiful day. Saw Nothing. Lat<sup>m</sup> 17:12 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 1:04 West. We are now on the Eastern Edge of what is called the Carroll Ground. At Sundown we took in the Light Sails, hauled the courses up & blew down the Topsails, leaving her to, And set Boats crew Watches; the first Watch. Our Prisoners Sentence Expired to day, and they took their First Watch Below for this Season. Ever since leaving home the crew have been Allowed dried Apples & Flour on Saturday, to make thence pies with the Scraps of Wheat that had accumulated during the Week; But, to day the



# A growl From The Writer. 263

Captain gave Orders for to make no more Pies for them, if they could not eat them made from our Land's Meat. The Mate & Second Mate are very much irritated by it; And both of them have declared to me, that if the Captain chooses to urge the Men on until they Revolt, that he will get no assistance from them! and I am Positive he will get none from my (Individual) Self. It actually seems to me, that he is trying to see how far he can put upon them; or else he is trying to get them to kick up a rumpus so as to have some excuse to break up the Voyage! And I wish to God they would! For it is anything but a Whaling Voyage. Not more than one or two of the Men will Report whales if they see them, and I don't know for certain if there is that many. Our Captain never Pretends to go aloft himself, neither will he allow us a Glass aloft; Although he has an Opera Glass that he got at St Helena Expressly for the use of the Mast head! (as he said). And as the Mate observed to me to day, "It appears to me as if he was Employed by some Party to see what a Poor Voyage he could make, and how much Expence he could put his Owners to during the Voyage. We have not had a Mouthful of Pork, fore or aft, since Last Thursday, and he says he will not open any more until there is three Barrels of Beef Eat. That will never Be! for the one we opened at Land's has not been touched yet. But if I live to get home I shall test the Law to see if I cannot get recompenced for this deprivation.



264 All Hands Turned Grakamites.

Sunday 21<sup>st</sup> A lovely day. Called all hands at daylight, made sail & kept her W. by N. Saw nothing to day. Lat<sup>e</sup> 17:23 South Long<sup>e</sup> 2:19 West. Had a morsel of home Beef to day, that the steward found in the Harnes's cask under the African Beef. It soon disappeared when put upon the Table. At 4 P.M. hauled up on the Wind & W. by N. At sundown shortened sail the same as yesterday, & hove her to for the night. Monday 22<sup>nd</sup> Cloudy, with light sprinkling. Showers of Rain, and a Very Strong Breeze. Made sail at daylight, and kept off W. by N. Sent down the Fore Topsail to Repair it. but the Old Boar, to pay him for getting the Little Saw with Big. At one P.M. we raised two ships Bound to the N.W. in a line for St Helena. At four P.M. we got our Topsail finished and sent it; then Washed Decks. saw another sail sent at sundown. Double Reefed the Topsails & kept her West by North all Night.

Tuesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Same as yesterday in regard to the Weather. Sent down the Main Top Gallant sail to Repair it, which is the first time it has been off the yard since we left westport. We also, sent down the Fore Top Gallant Sail, had it Repaired, and bent it for a Main Top Gallant sail; Put the Main Top Gallant Sail away, to be bent forward for the Passage home. Unrove considerable of our Running Rigging, Reving Old Whale Line that we used Hump Backing in its Place. Lat<sup>e</sup> 17:48 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 5:31 West. Night squally. Run under whole Topsails. Course West by North. No heat to East Fore or Aft.



Box Blocks, And Unbuoy. 265

Wednesday 24<sup>th</sup> Weather the same & course the same. Made sail at daylight: Killed a Hog and gave half of it forward. We had some fresh Pork for dinner, and it is the first Mouthful of meat we have had fore or aft since we found the piece in the Harnass Cask. Lat<sup>e</sup> 18:08<sup>m</sup> South Long<sup>e</sup> 7:38<sup>m</sup> West. At Sundown we Took in the Topgallant Sail & let her run W<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> N, under whole Topsails & Foresail and Rolling Gunwale under. We were Obliged to Put the Mast Boat on the upper cranes, to keep her from getting stove. Thursday 25<sup>th</sup> Dark & cloudy with a strong breeze & Occasional Rain Squalls. (but the Afternoons for a week past have in general been fine) Sent the Lib in to repair it, But did not get it finished to day. Lat<sup>e</sup> 18:33<sup>m</sup> South Long<sup>e</sup> 9:53<sup>m</sup> West. Course W<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> N. Run to night under whole Top Sails & Foresail.

Friday 26<sup>th</sup> A Fine day and good breeze. Full of Business to day. The Carpenter got his Box Blocks finished, & commenced a Bucket Race so as to have our Fancy buckets in a row asthwart ships, with the same Forward. The Cooper has been to work for three days past, making an Unbuoy; and to day we had to Boil it in one of the Try Pots before he could Spring the staves sufficient to draw it together. The Captain says that the Owners told him, to never let an Anchor go without a Buoy to it, and he is bound to have one to it when he anchors at Westport anyhow! All I have got to say! is, if he had common Sense, he would keep his Owners Orders to himself.



## 266 Apple Pies For Pigs.

We finished and bent the Lib this forenoon. I went to carpentering on my own account, making some Bulls eyes for my Boat Gripes. Lat<sup>e</sup> 19:00 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 11:57 West. Nothing to be seen but an occasional Flying Fish, who is frightened from his element, by the Rolling and Plunging of the Vessel. Or sometimes a solitary Mother Carey's Chicken, (Stormy Petrel) who takes good care not to stop long; for since there is no meat cooked now a days, they would soon starve to death, if they depended on the grease drops from us, to support life! We opened our Barrel of Cucumbers to day, but, instead of giving them to us when they were fit to eat; he has kept them until they are complete, Mashed! And we were obliged to throw the most of them overboard. and it is not the first, No! or yet the Second time, we have had to throw things overboard, that might have been eaten while good.

Saturday 27<sup>th</sup> A beautiful day. The Captain made the Cook put some of the Stinking Meat in the Menns Pies to day; And the consequence was, that the Apples and Flour went to the Pigs, as well as the Beef (or Carnion) Lat<sup>e</sup> 19:24 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 13:24 West. I saw some drift wood to day, with a few Dolphin around it. Bent, our Box Blocks to day, and they look very well. Night set in Rainy and continued so, with steady breezes.

Sunday 28<sup>th</sup> Rather squally and wet in the fore part of the day. Lat<sup>e</sup> 19:47 South Longitude 15:11 West. Course W. 3/4 North. The Afternoon



No batch'ee! No Hab'ee!

267

Time, with a heavy swell on and the Old Bark  
Bowling along before the wind, Rolling Gunwales  
under, and keeping the decks wet the whole time  
although there has not been a good stiff  
Royal breeze since leaving Equina. At Sun  
down we took in M, T, & G sail, as usual.

Monday 29<sup>th</sup> Rather Squally, and a stiff breeze.  
From E, S E. Saw nothing. Lat<sup>m</sup> 20:00 South.  
Long<sup>m</sup> 17:12 West. At Sundown took in Top  
& G sail. Course W <sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> North.

Tuesday 30<sup>th</sup> Squally & wet, with half a  
gale of wind from Southeast. stood mast  
heads all the time between the squalls, but  
did not see anything. And as for myself I did  
not try to see anything! Lat<sup>m</sup> today 20:25 South  
Long<sup>m</sup> 19:45 W. Night rather Squally.

Wednesday, First day of December, Squally  
and strong breezes. commenced making hash  
with the stinking meat yesterday morning,  
and by putting very little of it with the Potatoes  
and Plenty of Garlic, we can make out to  
eat it, But, it is very hunger that drives us  
to it. Lat<sup>m</sup> 20:47 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 22:10 West.

Night squally and wet took in M, T, & G sail.  
Thursday 2<sup>d</sup> A Beautiful day. Polished up all  
our Whaling craft. Two Poor little Yellow Tail  
came Round the Ship to day, and hooks & lines  
were soon after them! they hooked both of them  
but, in their eagerness to save them, they lost them!  
the Captain then got the Grains & although he  
struck them both, he did not save either of  
them. "Go to Hell, Damn you!", cried the Mate,  
"if we had Plenty of Good Beef! we could have caught



268 Eat It! Or Leave It!

A deck Load of food. Lat<sup>c</sup> 20:56 South Long<sup>c</sup> 24  
22 West. Night set in with splendid fine weather,  
and continued so. Took in M, T, G, Sail. Course  
West by North half North.

Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & good breeze. Opened A Barrel  
of Loando Beef to day which is the first we  
have opened since the 27<sup>th</sup> of October. Lord!  
how it stunk! and the men told the Captain  
that they meant to get Paid for it. "Well,"  
Replied he, I don't want to hear no growling  
about it here! wait until you get where you  
will have a chance to speak, and then see  
what you can do about it. This they Promised  
him, they would be sure to do. The last Barrel  
laid out 36 days and where it went to God  
only knows! but this which I am sure of; that  
~~there~~ never was one sixth of it Eat; For it was  
impossible for any Christian to Eat it. The  
Steward would not Put any on the Cabin  
table to day, it was so Rank; But, the Captain  
called him and told him never to neglect, to  
put a few Pieces on at every meal; for he  
did not want to have it said hereafter by his  
Officers, that there was no meat on the Table.  
Lat<sup>c</sup> 20:51 South, Long<sup>c</sup> 26:15 West. Night  
fine took in M, T, G, Sail. Course, W by N & N  
Saturday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear, and it is surprising  
What a difference there is between the Temperature  
here, and to the Eastward of the Meridian. A  
thin suit, Bare foot, and no Jacket on, at the  
Forehead, will make you quite comfortable  
while on deck you are ready to melt  
with the heat. Lat<sup>c</sup> 20:54 South. Long<sup>c</sup> 28:06 West.



# Martin Vas, And Trinidad 269

At Sundown we hove her to on the Starboard tack, under double Reefed Topsails, F, S, S, Sail, & Main Spencer. Wind, East.

Sunday 5<sup>th</sup> A lovely day, clear and warm with a good breeze. At daylight we saw land to the Westward of us, which proved to be the Island of Martin Vas. we made sail & ran for it; At 11 AM we brought it to bear due North two miles distant, and then took some Altitudes which made us out by Chronometer in Long<sup>e</sup> 28:52<sup>m</sup> West, and it is laid down as laying in Long<sup>e</sup> 28:38<sup>m</sup> West which makes our Chronometer about one Minute out of the way by Greenwich Time. We then steered for Trinidad which was plain in sight and at 4 PM we were within about six miles of it when we hauled up to South. At Sundown we shortened sail as usual, and kept her South. Our Lat<sup>e</sup> to day was 20:32<sup>m</sup> South.

Monday 6<sup>th</sup> A lovely day again. Made all sail and kept her S W, At 2 PM, Lat<sup>e</sup> 21:46<sup>m</sup> South Long<sup>e</sup> 29:31<sup>m</sup> West. The Captain gave orders to the Cook to day to give the Men Potatoes but three times a week. Beans once, Rice once, and Duff twice. So that Mornings, and evenings they have nothing but hard Bread, and Coffee. The last Barrel of Beef we opened has now got so bad that the Maggots are crawling in it. Of course no one will touch it. And although there is Plenty of good Meat in the ship, not one ounce will be give to anyone fore or aft. How long this state of things will last, it is hard to say, But, there is some Black looks & loud Murmurs both Fore and Aft.



## 270 A Little Of All Sorts.

At sundown we reefed her down, and hove her to.  
Tuesday 7<sup>th</sup> Splendid weather. Made all sail and  
kept her West, Saw some Grampuses & one  
Finback. Lat<sup>e</sup> 22:00 South Long<sup>e</sup> 30:58 West  
At sundown hove to as usual.

Wednesday 8<sup>th</sup> the same. Lat<sup>e</sup> 22:20. Long<sup>e</sup> 31:38 West

Thursday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine. We got both the Unbuoy &  
the Fancy bucket Rack finished to day, all  
ready for painting. The Unbuoy has taken up  
sixteen days to get it finished & the Bucket Rack  
thirteen. Lat<sup>e</sup> 22:45 South, Long<sup>e</sup> 33:06 West.

Friday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine. Saw a large school of killers  
of fish of the Whale species, of which I give a  
description on Page . . . . . Commenced painting  
the Fancy Buckets, for the new Rack to day.  
Lat<sup>e</sup> 22:54 South Long<sup>e</sup> 34 37 West. At sundown  
hove her to as usual.

Saturday 11 Fine & very strong breeze. At daylight  
saw a sail to the Westward that proved to  
be a Merchantman. At 6<sup>h</sup> AM saw some large  
White waters to leeward & chased for two or three  
hours, But, could not come up with them. Kept  
off West. At noon, All hands came aft about  
three to eat, as they had nothing but a few  
stewed Apples & some hard Bread. The Captain  
told them they had plenty of meat to eat, But  
replied they, it stinks & worse than stinks, for  
it's rotten! I can eat it! replied the Captain;  
But you don't eat it! said they, neither does any  
of your Officers or Boatswains. You had better  
tell me I lie! cried the Old man. No Sir I will  
not! But we all know that you do not eat it  
or even taste it; & Captain! You know that



## Hot And Heavy.

271

The Meat, if it could be eat, is unwholesome for any man to eat it! we have tried through severe hunger, but cannot stomach it, neither would a Dog! And if you continue to feed us as you are doing now, you must not expect us to work, on such living! By G-d! cried the Captain, you will work, or Die! for you will get no more. One thing more, said one of the men; you do not gain anything by keeping back your good Meat, & trying to force us to eat rotten; for you will be made to pay us for every day you deprive us of Meat. Very Well! cried the Captain say no more about it here, & when you get to where you think you can get your pay for it, get it if you can! The men then went forward. But, were soon called aft again, to get up some more Meat. The Broker cut another barrel of sound Meat, and when they took the head out of it, it nearly turned my stomach. Smell of that! said the Captain to one of the men, Does that meat stink? Yes sir, it stinks as bad as carrion replied he. You are a G-d Damn Liar! cried the Captain, it dont. He then had a barrel of good Beef Broker cut also. Then Taking the stinking Meat out of the sound Barrel, he had it laid on deck; and taking the other stinking Meat out of the Harnefs cask, had it Packed away in the Barrel again; Putting that which laid on deck, into the Harnefs cask. The Barrel of Good Home Beef, he had Put into the Harnefs cask also. Then calling the Cook, and Steward, he gave them orders to cook half of each kind, and they should have no more until they had eat both. Now, as long as the Officers Put up



272 Bark San Francisco.

with it, we Boatsteerers can say nothing; for we get everything that they do, sleeping at the same table with them. About two O'clock we raised another sail, and hauled up for her. At 4 P.M. we spoke her, & she proved to be the Bark San Francisco, Perry Master, 19 Months out 320 of Sperm & 240 of Humpback. Our Captain went onboard and their Mate came here, & we gammoned until 5 P.M., when all returning to their respective ships, we both have to under double Reefed Topsails, with Fore Topsail hauled aback. We learned from them that they had struck a Large Sperm Whale about ten days ago, two degrees to Eastward of Trinidad, who was heading towards that Island, I was quite Rough, & although all three of her Boats were fast, having five harpoons in him, & him spouting thin Blood, the Irons all drew out and he made his escape from them. Our Men got considerable Tobacco from her, & one of the Boatsteerers, (Pete) & Howe Kanaka, thinking I was short, sent me a Pound of the Precious weed. Our Mate, as soon as the Captain left; set the Cook & Steward to work, who gave us a good feed of Irish Potatoes & American Beef; And I can assure you, there was no lazy hands at the Superior Table. It is the first piece of Meat we have eat since we had the Pig we killed. Night was rather Squally. Lat<sup>d</sup> 22:52 S. Long<sup>d</sup> 35:52 West. Sunday 12<sup>th</sup> Blowing half a Gale, Rainy & Squally. Saw the S.F. and also another Whaler a long way off, that we had seen yesterday and I neglected to mention it. We had to take in the Mainsail till



# Rough Gambling.

273

Spanker & foresail before 4<sup>th</sup> P.M. Notwithstanding it was blowing hard, Raining hard, & a heavy swell on; the two Captains had to have another Gam. and kept it up until 11<sup>th</sup> P.M. It was actually dangerous to get a boat clear from either vessel & all you had to do when the ships rolled, was to jump & land on deck, for the Boats gunwale, would be higher than the Ships. The Mate was invited to go, But he told the Old man plainly, that any one who wanted to go Gambling in such weather, might go; As for his part he should stay onboard his own Ship. I made Kanaka Pete, a Present of some Coconuts and a couple of Papers of Sewing needles of which he was short; And he let me have part of a Bottle of Ink, (with which I am writing now) and three Boxes of Matches, as I was short of Both. Although I had bought plenty of each at Loando; But, not two out of a Box would strike & the ink was so glutinous that I could do nothing with it, The more I strained it the worse it got. Myself & Pete, passed the evening in Pleasant chat about his Country where I am pretty well acquainted & we enjoyed ourselves very much, only the unpleasant time I had pulling back & forth in the Rain, for it was so rugged we had to lay nearly a mile apart. All the strange crew had to eat for supper onboard of us, was hard Bread & Coffee, and when they left the Ships side; Much to our Captains Chagrin, & my great delight; They hailed our Men & told them, that when they came again, they would bring their own Supper, and an extra piece of Beef for Them, with a few Potatoes for which our Men thanked them heartily. It was squally with heavy Rain all Night and as



## 274 A Fine Whaling Day.

we parted, we wished them a couple of Big Whales tomorrow, & they wished us the same But, our Chaps told them they did not want any, & I really think that they do not, neither do I think, they would report them, if they did see them. Monday 13<sup>th</sup> It cleared off before daylight & we had a light Breeze but heavy swell. The wind still to the Northward, where it has been ever since we left Trinidad. About 8 A.M. the S.F. who was close to us made all sail, & stood off on the wind to the Westward, until she got about three Miles from us, when she made a couple of short tacks, which was reported from aloft. Our Captain took no notice of it; There we lay rolling in the Trough of the sea until 12 O'clock, when the Second Mate looking over the rail said he saw Boat sails; We all looked & sure enough there they were plain in sight. They were lying under double Reefed Topsails, Main Spencer, & Topmast staysails. We called all hands & made all sail But the wind being light, we did not get down to them before two O'clock, when they told us they had saw the whales, at eight O'clock and thought of course we had saw them lower their Boats They had Three Whales alongside the Ship & was towing the fourth one to her. They told us that some of the Whales had gone to windward and some to Seward, so we kept on to Seward and our anxious Captain went below & staid there until four O'clock, reading a Novel with as much unconcern as if there was not another Whale in the Ocean. At four O'clock he came on deck and luffed the Ship to, to the Westward.



## On The Scent of Whales. 275

She did not even get the Long<sup>e</sup> to day, to keep the<sup>run</sup> of where the Whales were seen. the Latitude was  $23:11^m$  South. yesterday the Lat<sup>e</sup> was  $22:23^m$  South. & Long<sup>e</sup>  $36:56^m$  West. About five this afternoon it clouded up again & we had scattering drops of rain until sundown, when we shortened sail & hove her to heading to the Westward. The S, F, was on our Starboard quarter about six miles off saying by her four valuable prizes; which as nigh as we could Judge were 20 barrel Whales.

Tuesday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine but rather cloudy. we made sail and kept her off W<sup>est</sup> N<sup>orth</sup> W<sup>est</sup>, until 11 A M, when we wore round & headed her to the Eastward, on the wind, We saw an outward bound Whaler in the distance & also a Merchantman. About four o'clock P M, we saw the San Francisco, she having finished cutting & was standing on the wind, under easy sail. Lat<sup>e</sup>  $23:10^m$  S, Long<sup>e</sup>  $37:26^m$  W. At sundown we shortened sail as usual and let her head to Eastward all Night

Wednesday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear, with a nice Breeze. At daylight we made all sail, and kept her off West. having the wind from N<sup>orth</sup> E, and kept her off all day, Lat<sup>e</sup>  $22:54^m$  South. Long<sup>e</sup>  $37:34^m$  West. Saw nothing to day whatever. At Sundown hove her to.

Thursday 16<sup>th</sup> A most lovely day. At daylight we kept off West Again. Broke out a new Main Topsail. After Breakfast, we bent it & cutting about 8 foot off of the head of the Old one, we commenced fitting it for a Fore Topsail. They had all hands to bend the New one, which is the first thing of the kind, this voyage. But, I suppose he thinks they must be weak, from the feed they get.



276 Monday Bread & Rotten Meat.

There was a large kid full, of the stinking Beef forwarded to day & the Cook, telling the Captain it was no use to cook it; for the men would not eat it, & that there was another large <sup>lot</sup> on the galley, almost rotten! Well! cried he with a deep sigh, heave it overboard then! so over Jack hove it, to make room for another lot as fast as he cooks it. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:02 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 38:52 West. Not a single thing did we see to day at all. Hove her to as usual to night.

Friday 17<sup>th</sup> Another lovely day. Broke out for, Fish, Flour, and Bread. The Bread was completely riddled with worms & having got wet it was all stuck together & covered with Blue mould. About one half of it, they saved for the Pigs, and the Rest they kept for the crew to eat. The Mate said, he had been over twenty five years going to sea; And he had never seen, such stuff given to men to eat before this time.

P.M., bent the old Main topsail for a Fore Top sail. At 5<sup>h</sup> P.M. we passed close to a large sized French Merchant Ship, Bound to the Southward. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:08 South Long<sup>m</sup> 39:21 West. At Sundown we hove to again as usual.

Saturday 18<sup>th</sup> The same. Sent up a New out Rigger, for the Larboard M.T.G. backstay. Overhauled the Topsail halyard blocks & sundry other little jobs. I heard the Captain telling the Steward to day, to Make Pie with Flour & Apples; The Men had theirs without the stinking meat being put into it, and they eat them this time! Lat<sup>m</sup> 22:55 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 39:54 West. At Sundown we double reefed the Topails & luffed to the Wind, to the



# Sunday Exercises,

277

Eastward. It looked dark & threatening to the S. East, and by 7 P.M. it had worked round to the N. East & commenced Raining. By 9 P.M. it was blowing a gale, and we close reefed the Topsails, leaving them hang by the lifts all Night, & also furled the Fore Sail. It continued Blowing heavy & raining all night. Sunday 19<sup>th</sup> At daylight the rain ceased, and the clouds broke away, it then began to moderate, and by 8 A.M. we had all sail on her it being by that time nearly calm. Saw a Merchantman to the Northward of us. A Noble large Dolphin came Round us & the Mate missed him twice with the graine, so away he went. we had very light winds & before 12 O'clock, we saw three Sails supposed to be all Merchantmen. I suppose we have got far enough to the Eastward now, But, God only knows! for none of the Officers do; and I don't believe the Captain knows his own mind at any one time for two hours. Anyhow! here have we been driving her to the westward for the last thirty eight days, not even stopping where we saw the San Francisco taking whales; we were in such a hurry! and last night he gave particular orders to keep her on the tack she would make the most eastern one; To day, we have tacked & wore about a dozen times, trying to get to the Eastward, and to night the Orders are the same. About 2 P.M. it thickened up again, and began to Rain, accompanied by Thunder, and Lightning. we took in the Light sails, and kept all hands on deck until dark & soaking wet, trying to work to Eastward. Oh! what blessings were given him! and what curses were asked for him of the Almighty!



## 278 Bark Eben Dodge.

on this Blessed Sabbath Day. At dark, as the weather was the same, we put her under close reefed Topsails, Main Spencer, & Fore topmast Staysails. Steering East with a Northerly wind, & he could not be in much more of a hurry if we were sure there was a School of Gale Whales to the Eastward of us. Our Mate & Second Mate are very angry at the way in which he is running the vessel about & treating the crew, & to night the Captain was speaking about some Person, saying he was at home now. Yes! Gruffly replied the Mate, & I wish my nose was in his ~~side~~ and turning round, he walked away aft.

Monday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine, Made all sail & kept her off South. Saw a school of Bonfishes to day, Lat =  $24^{\circ}47'$  South Longt =  $38^{\circ}42'$  West. The old Man commenced to make a Fancy knife Box to day, out of some Red wood he got at Equimira, and I suppose it will be for no other, than his Dear Miss Penelope Bagley. Coffin still Busy painting our Fancy Buckets. At sundown we shortened sail & headed her to westward again.

Tuesday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine, But, a hazy horizon. Broke out for Butter & water. At 11, Lat =  $24^{\circ}48'$  South. At 4 P.M. raised a sail to windward that we made out to be a Whaler running down for us. At 5 P.M. she spoke us, and proved to be the Eben Dodge Capt<sup>n</sup> Lewis of Bedford 43 days out 54 barrels of Spermin. The new Captain came aboard of us, and brought some Late Papers & a Shipping list. Our Second Mate, went aboard of her & we gammed until 9 P.M. when we parted with the promise of another game tomorrow for we had not



## The Hungry Strangers. 279

time to get half the crews. Some of them were old acquaintances, we made the first time we were in St Helena, and I felt ashamed of the way in which we were obliged to receive them, For, as soon as our Captain saw she was coming to speak us, he hurried the Cook & Steward, and had Supper at half past four O'clock, nearly an hour before the usual time; For, he was ashamed of the last scene we had when we jammed with the San Francisco & did not want to see it repeated over again. There had not been time to supper & I had none to offer them, But, I told them plainly how we were situated & why we got supper so early. I offered them 1 lb Cocoa nut & 1 cake of hard Bread, But they declined the latter, and accepted the former as it was quite a treat to them & on going away I made them a present of half a dozen of them. They made me promise to come on board if we met again tomorrow & wishing each other success we parted company & both Vessels braced forward on the western tack having shortened sail at sundown. Their Officers were Messrs Cottle, Field & Robinson. Wednesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Strong Northerly winds. The C, D, on our lee Bow. At 5 AM, A School of Albatrosses passed us, bound to windward & going quick. At 10 AM, the wind increasing we were obliged to double reef the topsails. At 1 PM, we close reefed, Fore topsail, & Furlled the Foresail. The C D on our weather Beam. At 4 PM she ran down across our Stern & asked our Captain to come on board a little while as he was going to leave here to night. so we blessed away the Waist Boat & after some trouble managed to get on board of her & dropped the Boat.  
astern.



## 280 A Friend In Need, A Friend Indeed.

I tried to Buy a Pair of Shoes & a Knife. But, they would not hear to such a thing as taking Pay for them. They also gave me a Pound of Tobacco & a Bottle of Ink, & some Matches. We Bid them Good Bye, wished them Success, and shoved off at Sundown, & for a Wonder got on board Safe. It is the First Time I ever went a Gamming, in a gale of wind under Close Reefed Topsails. We both lay hove to, under short sail, on the Starboard Tack to Night. Lat<sup>e</sup> to day 24:37<sup>m</sup> South, Long<sup>e</sup> 38:58<sup>m</sup> West. Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Rather dirty looking, and Blowing Fresh. We shook one reef out & set Foresail Gile & Spanker. The Chen Dodge was astern, & she made all sail, keeping away to the Southward. by 9<sup>h</sup> A M, it commenced raining very heavy, and before 12 o'clock we had her under close reefed Topsails, F, T, Stay sail & Main Spencer. The wind having hauled to South East & blew a Living Gale. One Boats crew kept the deck, while all the rest went below, until, 4<sup>h</sup> P M, when it moderated a little & stopped raining. We manned the Mast heads, and saw a Sail on the Lee Beam. At six o'clock set the watches. At 9<sup>h</sup> P M, the wind hauled back to the Northward & cleared off.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breeze, Made sail & kept on the Eastern tack, Saw some Porpoises & a Large Merchant, Clipper Bark; At M, Lat<sup>e</sup> 24:24<sup>m</sup> S. Long<sup>e</sup> 38:49<sup>m</sup> West. At Sundown, took in sail as usual. There we are Christmas Eve and I would hardly know it was so; if I was not keeping this Journal. Myself & the Mate cracked a Coconut, which was all we could do to keep it up; and what is worse there is no Christmas Dinner Tom



# A School Of Sperm Whales. 281

~~Saturday~~ 25<sup>th</sup> An Unlucky Christmas Day  
At daylight we made sail, as it was fine. At  
9<sup>h</sup> A.M., a Christmas Box came to us, in the shape  
of a Squall, that made us let go the Topsail  
haliards by the run. We then put two reefs in  
them. After dinner it was fine again with a  
good steady Breeze, so we wore ship to the West-  
ward, the wind being North. At half Past four  
P.M., John King raised a School of Sperm Whales  
one mile off on the Weather Beam. We immediately  
made all sail, & at 5<sup>h</sup> P.M. lowered the Larboard &  
Waist Boats. The Whales were going quick to  
Leeward & the Boats could not get to them before  
they went down. They did not appear again  
until about five minutes before Sundown,  
and then were half a mile to Leeward of the  
Boats. So they came on board & we shortened  
sail. The Whales were making about a S by East  
course; so we kept running South, half an  
hour, & heaving to an hour on the Eastern  
Tack all night. Lat<sup>m</sup> 24:20 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 39:05 West  
We saw as many as five different Pods  
of Whales before Sundown & it made us  
look with longing eyes I can tell you.



Sunday 26 A Lovely Morning. At half  
Past five this morning, we made all sail and  
kept off S. S. W. About fifteen minutes past six

Raised Whales ahead, about one  
mile off, we hove to, & got Breakfast as soon as  
possible. At 7<sup>h</sup> A.M., we lowered all three Boats,  
the two Larboard boats going after one lone  
Whale & our boat going after another. About  
nine o'clock we got close to a large Whale



## 282 Our First Sperm Whale.

When we knew by his actions that one of the other Boats must have struck. We then started in the direction where the other Boats should be & soon sighted them. After coming up to them, we saw one Boat with all the Men in her & bailing the other one out. Their Whale turned up & waifed a short distance from them.



We learned from them that Mr Jenney had struck the Whale, But, going on, to the windward of the Whale he had rolled the Boat over. Mr Warner who was chasing some more Whales about half a mile from him & seeing the dilemma he was in, pulled for him, and coming aboard the Whale who laid on the Water fighting, Thrashing his Flukes & snapping his Jaws, he pulled on and fastened to him. She turned him fin out in a few minutes and then went to the relief of Mr Jenney & his Boats crew, who were all sitting on the Bottom of the Boat looking at the Fun, having suffered no harm & only enjoyed a Salt Water Bath for about an hour. When we got there, Mr Warner had hauled her alongside of him & they had her nearly bailed out & had also picked up most of the stray things that were floating about. We then started for the Ship where we found they had kept such a Bright Lookout, that they did not even know, that a Boat had been fast much more, that one had been rolled over. We got the Ship down to the Whale & took him alongside at half past 11 A.M. We then got everything ready for cutting in & went



# Cutting In Once More. 283

to dinner. It was a beautiful day, and we had great hopes of getting him in to day. Some said he would make thirty & more that he would 35 barrels. But, they are all laughing at me for saying he will make fortyfive. We commenced cutting at one P.M., But, alas for human hopes! by half past the it was blowing a gale of wind & raining like mad! We got the Head off & the Jaw, and Body Blubber in by Six P.M., when we got supper & set the Watches leaving the Head towing at the quarter by a strong chain. By 10 P.M. it blew a perfect Hurricane & we could show nothing but a close reefed Main Topsail to it. It blew heavier than any time we have had it yet since the heavy gale we had after leaving Thorne. The head would get under the Kessel's quarter & she would come down on it with such force that you could scarcely keep on your feet on deck. At Midnight, After hard labour, we succeeded in getting the chain led forward, to the hawse pipe on the Starboard Bow & great fears are entertained that we shall loose the Head as yet. We were busy all Night cutting the Blubber that was all landed on deck into horse pieces & not a few Maledictions was called down from above, on Whaling & Whalers. and for my own part Poor as we are, I would rather never see another one, than to have to roll & tumble about in the Blubber as we all have to night in this lat! Half the time on our Beam ends & the other half standing on your heads.



## 284 Beauties Of Whaling.

Monday 27<sup>th</sup> We were called at 7<sup>h</sup> this morning and after getting Breakfast, we all hands turned to, and finished cutting up the Blubber. As the Rain was pouring down in Torrents, and the Gale still Raging, we Broke out A lot of barks, took one head out, & Lashing them on each side aft, under the house, we Put the Horse pieces into them. This took until half Past ten, & all hands were then sent below out of the weather. The Old Man had another Barrel of Horse Beef opened to day, saying, I want to feed the Men well while we are taking Oil! This shows plainly that, he knows full well it is impossible to eat the Meat he Bought at Loanda. At 2 P.M. it held up Raining, so we called all hands and commenced at the head. We got it almost in, when the hole tore out. We managed at last to get another hole in it, & got it in on deck twice, & she rolled it overboard again. The third time it went clear across the decks smashing all before it & shot forward, Landing between the try works & the Rail and before she had another Rolling spell we got him Lashed. We then got our gangway Rail on, and separating the Lunk from the Case we lashed it securely on the Starboard side. we then opened the Case, & baled it, But, owing to the severe Lurking and thumping it got, we found, we had lost about half of it. We got through, the Shell overboard & everything secure about decks; then got Supper and set boats crew watches, The Gale still at it.



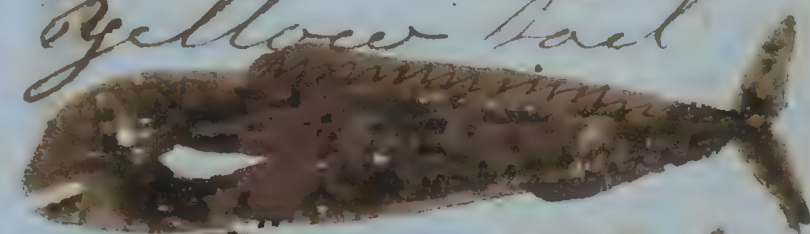
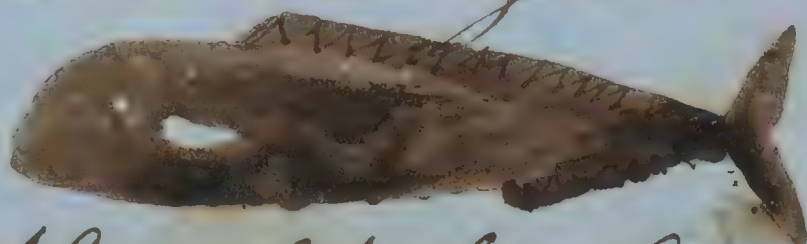
# Steering our Blubber.

285

height, & the Rain Pouring down in Torrents. A Great many of the Men have always been hoping we would get one Sperm Whale if no more! and I think they have got one now, with a Vengeance! if they never get another.

Tuesday 28<sup>th</sup> The Gale still continues with unabated Violence. But, the Weather had cleared so that we only had occasional rain squalls. so after Breakfast we started the Works, and Great works she makes of it too! At 10 AM, We were ship to try her on the other tack, the Wind being to the Southward, where it has been ever since Sunday Afternoon. We cut up the Lunk during the day & put it in casks. At 7 PM, set the Watches, until 7 in the Morning. The Gale still continuing, with Rain Squalls about every two hours, that causes us to put on the Tryworks cover, as it is impossible to rig an Aurning on account of the Gale. they do not last long enough to cool down altogether; But, She ships an occasional Sea that make me think we will be lucky if we do not let her on Fire.

Wednesday 29<sup>th</sup> The Same. We cleared away the Saw this Morning, & found, the Oil had nearly all Run out of it. We make Awful work Boiling, on account of the Sea & Rain and several of our Men have got cut & jammed so that they are of But little use & one severely scalded with Hot Oil. Some fine yellow tail came round to day and I caught of them. At 7 PM set the Watches, & the Bad weather still continues, unabated.





## 286 Out Of Coffee

Thursday 30<sup>th</sup> We finished Boiling at Daylight this Morning & we have managed to save about 38 barrels out of him. We were only Just in Time! for at six O'clock it commenced with steady heavy Rain; & Blowing still a Heavy Gale. After Breakfast, all hands were sent below; with the Exception of one of the Officers, to Look out for the Deck. After dinner it lulled a little, But, still Rained. So the Old Man had all hands out in it, and had the Vessel washed fore & aft; for what reason I don't know! for <sup>it</sup> did not need it God knows! Only he is in one of his disagreeable Moods. Before Sundown, it had died away to a Whole Sail Breeze. But a heavy sea & still Raining. Let Boats crew watches again to Night. My morning Friday 31<sup>st</sup>, And Last Day, of 1858. This day it was quite Moderate to what it has Been; But, a rain squall about every hour, & so cloudy the rest of the time, that, we saw no Sun all day. We Employed the day stowing down our Oil & got through with it by five O'clock P.M.; We stowed down 35 Barrels, besides about a barrel of. Seal Oil. We Killed a Hog to Day & have only two more left now. Saw a Sail to Seaward supposed to be the San Francisco. I forgot to mention, that last Monday our Coffee gave out, and we are using Burnt biscuit as a Substitute fore & aft, as we have no Tea either. At 8 P.M. we Threw Ship, the wind being about Southeast, and Took in the Foresail setting the Close Reefed Fore Topsail in the Place of it, as the weather looks very unsettled still.



# One Good Meal

287

Saturday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of January, & the First Day of the Year 1859. The weather was very unsettled and squally & we remained under short sail all the sun one sail. Supposed to be a Merchantman & saw some Gulls also. We made out to get some sights to day for the first time in a Week & found our Lat<sup>d</sup> to be  $24^{\circ}20'$  South, and Longitude  $38^{\circ}39'$  West. We had some fresh Pork for dinner to day with Potatoes & Apple sauce. I eat a hearty Dinner thanking God for all good Gifts! I forgot to mention that ever since we took the Whale, the old Man has served out good Meat to all hands, But, how long it will continue I don't know. I have formed a Resolution to day that I hope God will enable me to keep! And if He does, I will state what it is, on the Fourth day of July next. Only one Man in the Ship Wished me a Happy New Year to day & he poor Fellow! was so long since he had interchanged the Greeting with any one, that instead of wishing me a Happy New Year; wished me a Merry New Year. It is hard to say it! But, in all my Life I never had the Misfortune to be with such a Discontented, Pittiable, & dispirited set of Men. Both Fore & Aft! And Indeed, I cannot Blame them!. For I think a State Prisoner, or a Southern Slave, Enjoys their Situation Better. At Least! They have enough to Eat, & comfortable Clothing to wear, while most of our Men are half Naked; And the whole of them half starved!. At Sundown we mended the Reefs in the Topsails and let her lay, under Close Reefed Topsails Fore Topmast staysail & Main Spencer. Remember Dan



## 288 Very Rough Weather.

Sunday 2<sup>nd</sup> Rather Moderate, so we let one Reef out of the Topsails, & set Fore Sail, Main sail, Spanker, & Jib. But it soon set in with heavy Rain Squalls & Little Tornado's; obliging us to Take them all in again. We saw some Turnpicks & One Sail to day. I hope that no one, who may ever read this Book, will Laugh at the Poor writing in it; I know they would not! if they could see the little cramped up Place, I have to do it in. Sitting or Kneeling on the deck, with my Chest for a writing desk, My Lamp and Ink Bottle in one hand, while with the other, I must hold the Book & write also. Sometimes when she gives a heavy Lurch; Away I go! Lamp, Ink Book, Chest & all! only to Pick all up & go at it again, which is now an every day occurrence; when it is fine weather I can do very well. At 8 P.M. a French Brig. ran across our Stern and hailed us, but, we could not understand each other, & she kept on to the Southward. The wind having hauled to N, N.E, this afternoon Monday 3<sup>rd</sup> Blowing Fresh, with a drizzling rain. After Breakfast, we squared away to the S.W. & gave her double reefed Topsails and Foresail. We are Bound in search of better weather the Old Man says; We broke out and bent a New Jib, condemning the Old one, which has lasted ever since we left home, and it was not a New one then. We stood Mast heads all day, through rain & all, though we could not have lowered had we seen Whales. as it was, we saw a Finback bow & calf, & a School of Grampuses, all bound to the Southward.



## Eager For Whales. 289

The Captain seems to be quite eager to get some oil now, But, I am afraid it is too late! Had he been as eager the whole voyage, I cannot help thinking, we would have been to our own Dear Native Land! some months ago. Our Lat<sup>n</sup> by dead reckoning was  $24^{\circ} 54^m$  South At sundown we have to & close reefed The Topsails, & at 9 P.M. it blew so, that we had to blow up & furl the Foretop-sail Tuesday 4<sup>th</sup> Blowing heavy & a kind of half fog, half rain. We kept off S.W. again & set the Fore-sail & double reefed Main Top-sail. We then bent down the Fore Top-sail, Took two cloths out of the middle of it & put one new one in again for a Bunt cloth thus making it one cloth smaller, as it was too large before. we got it finished & bent by 3<sup>h</sup> P.M. The weather then cleared up, the Wind & sea went down, The Sun came out & before Sundown it was quite smooth, and the only Pleasant evening we have had for 11 days past. The old Man took four of the Whales teeth for himself and divided the rest 2 a piece all round fore & aft. There was 44 in all & they are rather small. The Moon changed last night & I am in hopes we will have a little fine weather for a while. At Sundown we have to under double reefed Topsails. The Captain took two hours to the starboard head to day, for the first time since we left St Helena; And all hands say that something is going to happen before long, or it will be a wonder! Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> Very light winds & Plenty of Rain. Steering S.W. Very Busy making weather cloths



## 290 A Little Pork, & Boneta.

out of the Old Fore Topsail. It lit up a little at noon & we got the Sun, Lat<sup>n</sup> 26:52 South. At 3 P.M., it cleared off & the rain had beat the sea down as smooth as a still pond. Saw a sail so we luffed to the wind & made all sail in chase of her. At half past five she was out of sight, so we tacked ship to the Southward. At sundown hove to under Sney. Canvas.

Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> Was quite Fine, with light East winds. We had only one Rain squall for about an hour. A Thersnophrodite Brig, Flying the Hamburg Ensign, Passed close to us at Noon Steering North, & she looked as if she had seen some pretty hard weather. She had a gaff topsail bent, in the room of a Lib, and there was several large holes in her Fore Topsail. Lat<sup>n</sup> to day 27:20 South Long<sup>e</sup> 42:22 West. At sundown we put about ship to the Northward & hove to as usual. I forgot to mention that we opened a Barrel of Pork yesterday, the first one we have opened since leaving Svando. Our Home Beef Being all gone at last.

Friday 7<sup>th</sup> The winds were light & it was cloudy & sprinkling Rain all day. Sent down the A. Topgallant sail & repaired it. P.M., I caught a Fine Boneta and a little while after, caught another one. At Sundown Shortened sail as usual & hove her to.



Saturday 8<sup>th</sup> Foggy, so that you could not see above a mile from the ship, Saw five Merchant Vessels to day, all bound South. Lat<sup>n</sup> 27:20 South Long<sup>e</sup> 42:22 West. At 5 P.M. saw two of the Merchant Vessels to the Southward of us, where



# A White Squall.

291

it had lit up a little) take in everything but their Topsails, although, we had but a very light breeze from the Northward, & no indication of a squall whatever; we knew however that a Merchant Vessel sit down strifit herself for nothing so we began to follow suit, by taking in the Light Sails, also Rib & Spanker; We then hauled the courses up & blewed the Topsails down, all of which did not take above 10 minutes, But, before we could get them Reefed the squall was upon us, taking us aback, from the South West. She soon paid off before it, when we laid the Main yard square & away she darted like a Race Horse. It was all over by 1 P.M., & the wind hauled back to the Northward again, so we luffed to, & let her lay. Sunday 9<sup>th</sup> A strong breeze in the forenoon, & P.M., very light, But, a thin foggy horizon so that you could see nothing any distance, while overhead it was clear & the Sun scorching hot. We saw a few Grampuses Breaching, which in fact, we see about every day, here! Lat<sup>n</sup> 27:10 S. Long<sup>th</sup> 41:07 W. Our Christian Captain! who will not have any thing done on the Sabbath but what is necessary. Had one of his ill Natured fits on to day; (which he is troubled with after nowadays) & he kept us on a continual run, at one thing or another the whole day. And I know there was some few Prayers offered up for him. either for his Blessing or everlasting Perdition & I think most likely the latter. At Sundown shortened sail as usual, & I think there was some that was glad the day was ended. I heard one of the After guard say, that he used to be glad Sunday came once a Week! But, Now adays, Once a Year was Plenty!



## 292 Bad Weather.

Monday 10<sup>th</sup> Very strong Breeze, kept her under double reefed Topsails & Foresail, The sky overhead was clear & the horizon very hazy, our Lat<sup>e</sup> was 28:08<sup>m</sup> South, Long<sup>e</sup> 40:00 West. We sent the Spunker down to day, & gave it a thorough repairing, & used up our last Ball of Twine, having to unravel new Canvas for more. We also Broached our last Keg of Butter.

At 6 P M, saw a Sail on our weather Bow, At sundown, bore to heading to the Eastward.

Tuesday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine & strong breeze. Stood to the Eastward under short sail. Sent down the Gaff Topsail, repaired, & bent it again. Lat<sup>e</sup> to day 28 13<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 38:37 West. At 4 P M it came up cloudy with Thunder, lightning, and heavy Rain & continued until 8 P M, the wind having hauled to the Southward & blew quite fresh the whole Night.

Wednesday 12<sup>th</sup> Blowing half a Gale & very heavy cloudy weather, But, No rain. We sent down the Mainsail to repair it & after working on it until 4 P M, put it away for tomorrow. The Captain sent the Steward to put a Pint Bottle half full of Ink into my chest, while I was sleeping in my watch Below to day. Had I asked him for it, he would not have given me a drop, But, seeing I had plenty that I got on board the Chen Dodge, he thought he would show his generosity, for which I hold myself under no obligation to him! And if I was on equal footing with him I would dash it in his Face! We kept off North after Breakfast this Morning & made sail, we kept her going



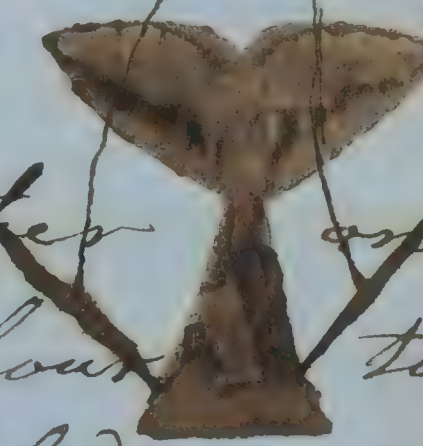
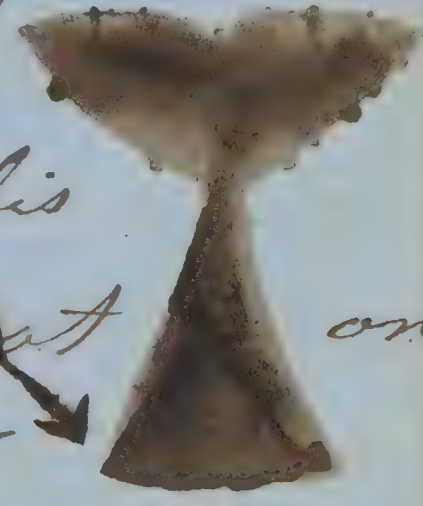
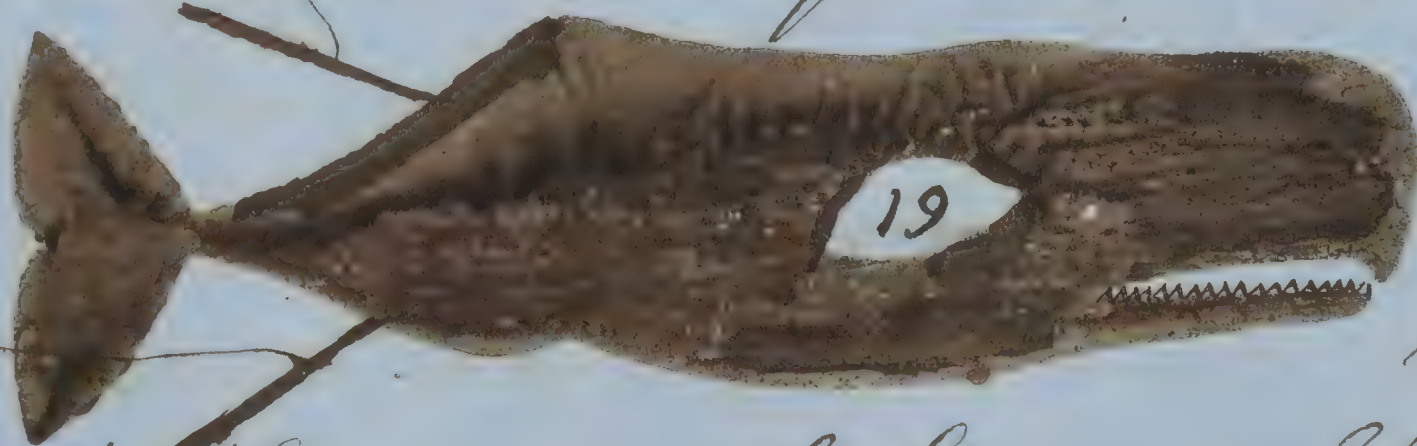
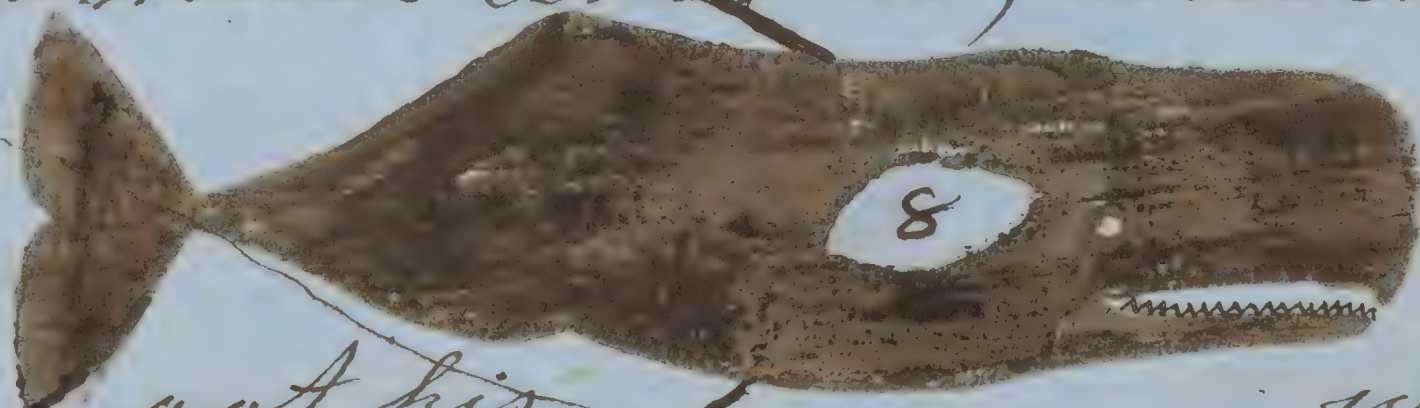
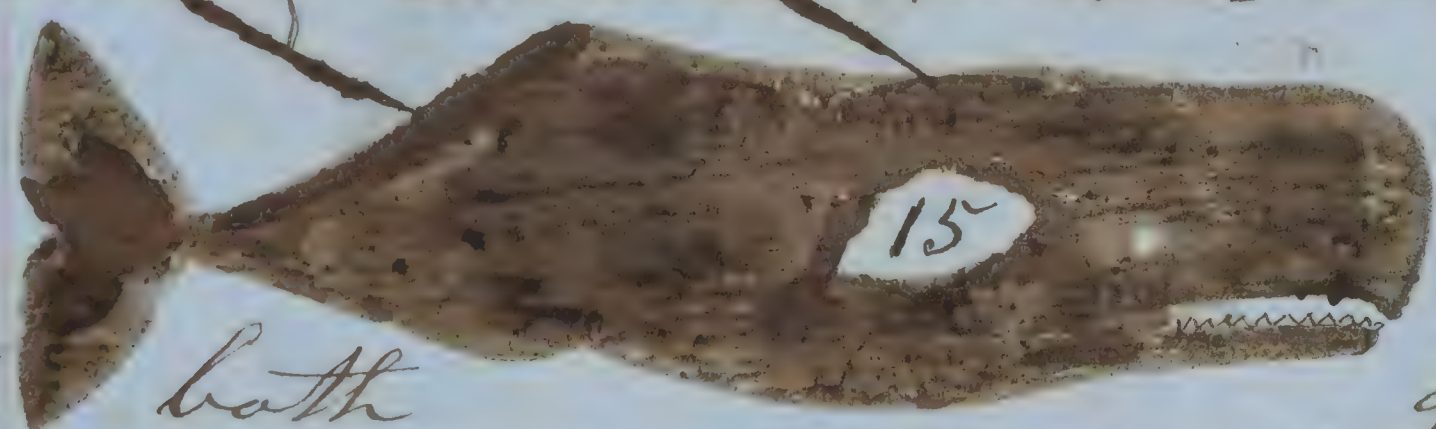
# Four Sperm Whales. 293.

all day and at Sundown we shortened sail and kept her going all night.

Thursday 13<sup>th</sup> A Fine Day. kept her going North. At 11 A.M., saw a Sail to Eastward & kept off for her, we chased until 2 P.M., & then kept off our course again. Lat = 25:38 N, Long = 38:53 West. At 4:30 P.M., Henry Cochran raised a School of Sperm Whales, about a mile off. We got the Boats ready & lowered away as soon as we could, About 5 P.M., Mr. Warner went on & struck a small Whale and in five minutes he was loose again his Harpoon having drew. Our Boat soon got to another small Whale & I fastened to him.

This brought the School both to, Mr. Jenney & Mr. Warner got fast then, We killed our whale cut off, & struck another, which we soon had dead also. It was then too late any more. Mr. Jenney got his whale dead also & took care of him & the first one we killed. Mr. Warner killed one from him and we lost the run of him altogether he however struck & killed and saved another.

We got them all four to the Ship & fluked by 8 O'clock, Took in sail, hove her to & got supper, after which we set boats crew watches, from 9 P.M., until, half past four tomorrow. We killed two more Whales that we





## 294 Cutting And Boiling.

are certain of, But lost them for want of day light. If we had only had daylight for two hours more, I am certain that we could have killed more whales than we could have taken care of. But, we are all very thankful for what we have. Friday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Breeze. We went to cutting at daylight & by one P.M. had them all in on deck. We took two of the heads in whole & the other two, we ripped the Junk & case off together & let the scalp remain. We then got dinner & we had a heavy shower of rain about half an hour. After dinner we all turned to and before sundown we had all the Body blubber cut into Horse Pieces & pitched down in the Blubber Room; Lashed the four Heads, washed decks, Made sail, Thore ship, got our supper & set Try Watches at half past seven P.M. We then commenced skincing & started the works with every appearance of a fine night. Lat<sup>d</sup> at 2 P.M.  $39:15^m$  South. Long<sup>d</sup>  $25:28^m$  West. A Merchant Vessel ran close to us while we were cutting in our whales, to have a look at us.

Saturday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine. Bailing, P.M. cleared away the heads, Put the Junk & Case, in casks, and threw the scalps & white Horse &c overboard. I began to breeze up about one P.M. & by Six it was blowing a Gale with heavy Rain, so that we were obliged to furl everything & Cool Down. we made two attempts to Bail through the Night, But, found it utterly Impracticable. Sunday 16<sup>th</sup> The Gale Broke about five o'clock this Morning, and by Six it cleared off so that we was able to start the fires again; The wind



## Uncommon Bad Weather. 295

kept moderating all day & by sundown it was  
nice, fine, & clear weather again, But, a heavy sea  
on; so much so that we could not fill the Pots  
more than half full of Blubber. Our Latitude  
to day was,  $25:58^m$  South, & Longitude  $39:33^m$  West. We  
have lost considerable oil, through the Rain  
last night, But, I am very thankful for what  
we will save out of them yet. We set the  
Watches at half past six to Night. Wind North.  
Monday 17<sup>th</sup> A Fine day. We got through Boiling  
by Breakfast time, and they turned up altogether  
about 48 Barrels. We then made sail washed her  
down & set Boats crew Watches; My all day on  
deck. P.M., we coopered some of our oil, ready  
for stowing down. I got a few teeth out of  
our largest Whale, But, they are very small  
ones. The other three were too young to have any.  
I also have a Pair, out of the first whale we got.  
Lat  $25:59^m$  South. Longitude  $39:04^m$  West. At Sundown  
have to as usual. And as I have been up since  
twelve o'clock last night, I am very Sleepy.  
Tuesday 18<sup>th</sup> Very thick & strong breeze.  
before 12 o'clock it was blowing a Gale of  
wind. Notwithstanding we were hard at it, at  
stowing down our oil in the Fore hold. We got  
it all down & the hold stowed off by 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., and  
they stowed down 44 barrels and 15 gallons,  
leaving three Barrels of lean oil in the Blubber  
Room. During the Operation one Cask  
pitched away & tore off the whole Starboard  
cornings of the Fore hatchway. The Captain  
opened the Slope Chest after we got through  
and he sold over Ninety Five Dollars worth.



## 296 Empty Slop Cask.

Which took about all there was in it, leaving about a few Monkey Jackets, Palms, Sheaths, and belts, and some Petticoat Lamps. Night set in Blowing very heavy, and we hove to, under a close reefed Main Tofsail. Full Moon to Night.

Wednesday 19<sup>th</sup> Blowing a Gale of Wind. We washed the Ship Down Fore and Aft, and she rinsed herself off with the seas she shipped. The Rest of the day, we devoted to washing our clothes, with the exception of the Carpenter who was Busy on the Fore Hatch Combing.

Thursday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine during the Fore Part of the day. We had a fine Dolphin that I caught with the Grainsi last Night, for our Breakfast this Morning.



P.M., it was thick & cloudy with light Rain. Lat<sup>e</sup> 26 42<sup>m</sup> South. Longitude we have got none for three days. At Sundown we close reefed the Tofsails & hove & hove her to. I hurt my Hand while cutting in our last Whales & it is so sore I can scarcely write with it.

Friday 21<sup>st</sup> A Good fine day throughout. Saw Nothing. Cooper Busy Repairing Casks, and The Carpenter is kept pretty Busy repairing different things that gets carried away in this Rough weather. Lat<sup>e</sup> 26 40<sup>m</sup> S, Long<sup>e</sup> 37 28<sup>m</sup> West. The Old Man & Mate, had some pretty hard words about Persevering for a voyage to day; and the Old fellow got rather the worst of it. It was too long a growl for me to write now. But, the Mate gave him strong hints about his never cruising for Sperm Whales before we came here, and also about his sleeping every Aft.



evening, and never taking any Mast Heads, not giving any encouragement to his crew &c. The Captains argument was, that, some vessels was Luckier than others, and he believed it was all Luck, in making a good Voyage. The Mate, did not believe in anything of the kind; But, said, he believed that any ship would make a decent Voyage, that had a Captain who would persevere, & look for a Voyage. Well haven't I looked for a Voyage! cried the Old Man. Yes Sir! Replied the Mate, I do believe you have looked for a Voyage as well as you know how to! But, Sir! it is not every one that knows how! & turning on his heel, went to the Mast head; leaving the Captain in a Mood, to snap at every one he could get a chance to. We had all sail on her to day, & a Northerly wind, which we have had ever since we left in our last Whales. At Sundown we double reefed as usual & hove her to. Before 12 O'clock it blew a gale of wind again; accompanied by very sharp sheet lightning, and heavy Rain.

Saturday 22<sup>nd</sup> It had moderated down by daylight this Morning, and by 10 O'Clock, the wind hauled to the Southward, and blew a nice steady Breeze. We kept her North & crowded on all sail. After Dinner I caught a fine Dolphin, and he was the largest one I have ever seen caught.



He measured five feet in length, and 11 1/2 inches across the Head. I caught him with a hook, But, could not haul him up until the Mate struck him with the Grainsc. We had a Mess of him, fore & aft for supper.



## 298 Feeding Old Neptune.

and there is enough for another Meal for Breakfast. Lat<sup>e</sup> 26:24<sup>m</sup> South. Long 37:26<sup>m</sup> West. At sundown we double reefed & let her run to the Northward all Night.

Sunday 23<sup>rd</sup> The Loveliest Day we have had this Season, with Very Light S E Winds. we saw nothing all day, But, a Few Flying Fish. All the Good Clothing, Bedding &c, that we had, had a fine chance to Air today. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25:33<sup>m</sup> South. Long 37:56<sup>m</sup> West. At Sun down we double Reefed, and let her run until 11 P M, when we hove to with the Main Topsail Aback, heading to the westward.

Monday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine. The wind hauled to the Northward this Morning, so we made all sail & kept on the Western Tack. Saw one sail Bound to Southward. Broke out for Pork & opened a Barrel. I forgot to mention that on the 16<sup>th</sup> of this Month we found, and opened a Barrel of Horse Beef, that we did not know was aboard & which makes three of Beef since leaving London & two of Pork. we also threw the Barrel of London Beef that was in the Horns Cask overboard as it stunk the whole ship. Two more we were obliged to hoist out of the hold & throw them overboard today. Which leaves 21 aboard as yet. At Sundown it was blowing nearly a Gale But a Clear Sky. Dressed every thing to close Reefed topsails & Topmast Staysail which we just got through repairing in time. Tuesday 25<sup>th</sup> Clear weather, and Blowing a Gale of Wind from the N, N W. We kept on to the Eastward, and at 11 A M, I raised a



# One More Thaum.

299

School of Killers, and a Finback Whale. (see Page )  
At 11, Lat<sup>e</sup> 24:59 South. P.M. it gradually moderated,  
and we set the Foresail. At 5 P.M. raised a sail  
astern, wore round for her & she proved to be a  
Merchant Brig, Bound Easterly. At sundown we  
tacked Back & shortened Sail.

Wednesday 26<sup>th</sup> Squally & Rainy all the forenoon,  
P.M. cleared off fine & the Wind hauled S.W.  
kept her North until Sundown, when we  
shortened Sail as usual. Employed all this  
day, taking the Heads out of all the empty  
Casks that have had Thaum Back Oil in  
them, scraping them out clean, & heading them  
up again, ready for Sperrin Oil; If! we ever  
get any more, which I think is doubtful. Very!  
The Captain has rigged a Smoke House  
with a Cask, to Smoke a Thaum that we found  
in the Last Barrel of Pork that we opened.  
Potatoes run out to day & the Sugar is so  
low that we Boil our Burnt Bread Broth  
with Malasses in it, & an short allowance of  
Butter. In fact the days of Short Pickings,  
that we have long been Expecting, (Through  
the Captains Prodigality) Have at length arrived,  
and the only Prospect ahead, is, that they  
will grow worse every day. Encouraging, aint it?  
Thursday 27<sup>th</sup> Calm, with occasional Showers  
P.M. it cleared off, and we had a Light Northerly  
wind. Laid a Bone Railway for the Cooks  
Galley to Run on, Back & Forth across the  
deck. Saw a Number of Dolphin and other  
small Fish, also a Couple of strange Sails.  
At Sundown hove to, with a Signal Light Set.



## 300 Provisions Getting Short.

Friday 28<sup>th</sup> A Fine day & A good Northerly Breeze. Little or Nothing doing. Saw one sail. Latitude  $24:09^m$  South. Longitude  $39:03^m$  West.

Saturday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & Clear with A Strong North wind. Broke out to day & opened A cask of Bread also took the last half Barrel of Flour out of A cask, leaving one more Full cask of Flour that holds five Barrels; And one more cask of Bread that holds about six Barrels. We are on our last Barrel of Molasses, last Pail of Sugar, last Keg of Butter, and we have neither Pickles, Raisins, Cheese, Preserved Meats, Coffee Tea, or Chocolate in the ship. So I do not think it will be long before we leave this ground for St Helena. About 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., we kept off South-west, the wind Increasing, until 4<sup>h</sup> P.M. When it Blew half A Hurricane, so we made all snug, and Brought her to the wind on the Starboard tack, laying all night in A heavy Gale.

Sunday 30<sup>th</sup> The Gale Still continues, Breez, Not A cloud to be seen on the Horizon. About 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., the Gale Broke, and by 2<sup>h</sup> P.M. it had Moderated so, that we set double reefed Topsails, Gib, & Spanker. We also Manned the Mast heads. Saw one sail, and I forgot to mention that we saw A School of Blackfish about 6 P.M., of yesterday. Latitude today  $24:44^m$  South Longitude  $40:50^m$  West. At Sundown we took in the Gib & Spanker & set her Lay; it being Almost Calm.

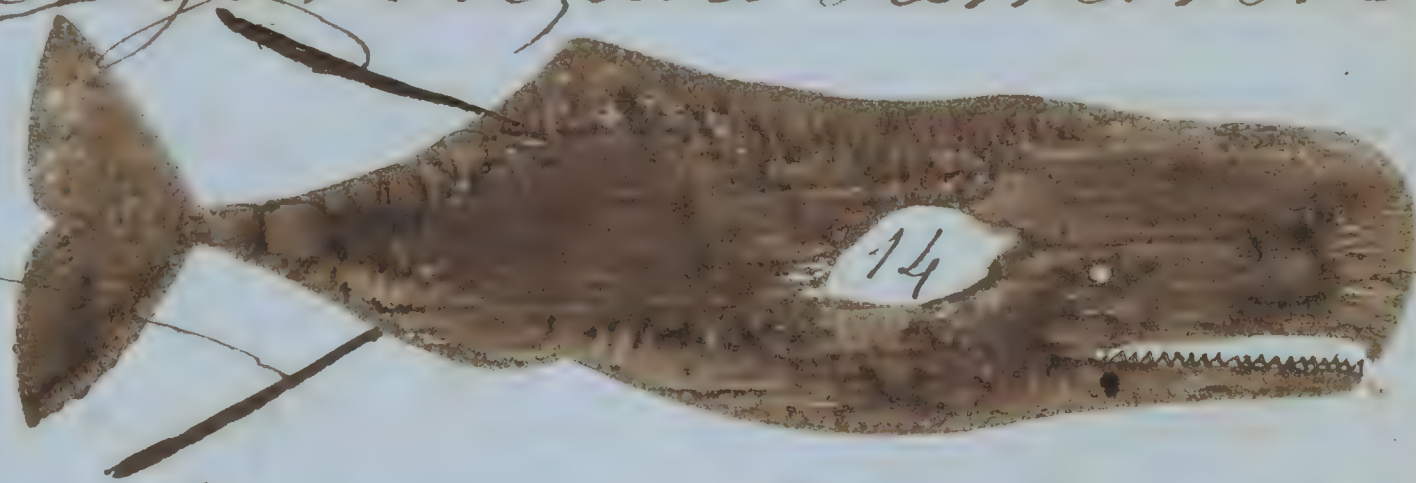
Monday 31<sup>st</sup> And last day of January 1859. A Beautiful, Fine day. Wind North; We made all sail and kept away South. Saw some Grampuses breaching and A School of Boneta. We are on Rice Coffee now



# I Raise Whales.

301

for the last three days & scarcely anybody can drink it, it is so Bitter, But the Captain says he cannot afford to Burn any more Bread for Coffee, so we may make the best of it, which we do; By drinking Cold Water, Morning, Noon, and Night. At Sundown we shortened Sail & hove to with the head yards aback Tuesday 1<sup>st</sup> Day of February 1859. Fine, with Northerly wind. At daylight we kept off South Saw two Sails. At 9<sup>h</sup> A M, I raised White Water ahead, & About six miles off. At 10<sup>h</sup> A M, we made them out to be a School of Sperm Whales. At 10:30<sup>h m</sup> A M, we lowered away, and about 1<sup>h</sup> A M, The Larboard Boat got on, and Patterson struck a Small Bull. The Rest of the School made off, & we got no more.



We got the Whale alongside by One o'clock P. M.; We then got all ready for cutting, got dinner, and began cutting At 2 P. M, we got him in by half Past three & then made Sail again, And ran to the S W, the way the Whales were going (& in fact all the Whales we have seen on this Cruising ground have been going Southwest) By 6 P. M, we had our whales Body cut up, put in casks, & the decks washed off, leaving the Head to cut up in the Morning. We then got Supper, shortened Sail, and set the Watch, leaving our Blubber to Ripen a little. Lat<sup>c</sup> 25:38 South. Long<sup>c</sup> 41:24 West. We had some Force Meat Balls for Supper made out of our Whale & it was quite Palatable. We also opened our Third Barrel of Pork for this Season. Saw two Sails to day, Merchantmen. Laid aback all night, heading E, S E. Wind Northeast as



# 302 Four More Pigs Born.

Wednesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Strong Breeze. Cleared away our Whales head, and Boiled it out to day, standing Boats crew Watches. We got through about 4<sup>th</sup> P.M., leaving the Body Blubber to Ripen until Tomorrow. Saw a couple of Sails to day. At Sundown took in the Spanker & Lib. Night fine & nearly calm. Lat<sup>e</sup> to day, 26:05<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 40:58<sup>m</sup> West.

Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & nearly a calm. We commenced Boiling the Body Blubber of our Whale, which we finished, & had the decks all Washed off by five o'clock P.M., and he turned up 14 Barrels we run about 4 Barrels of Lean Oil in with him while Boiling, so that the Whale did not make over 14 Barrels himself. We saw several Sails to day, also some Diamond fish, Squid, Grampuses, Dolphin, & a large Shark, that has been following us all day, with a lot of Pilot Fish around him. We also passed what appeared to be a Kessels Side Tender, Bound with Iron Hoops. Our Old Saw contributed towards the Days Variety of Sights by giving Birth to Four Fine Pigs, three Boars and one cow, which are all doing well at Present. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25:51<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 41:22<sup>m</sup> West. At Sundown kept her North by East under Double Reefed Topsails & a Light Easterly Wind. at 10<sup>th</sup> P.M., I struck, and saved a Fine large Dolphin.



At 11<sup>th</sup> P.M., the wind backed the head yards & let her lay.

Friday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & good Breeze. Made all sail & kept zig zagging her to the Southward, having an Easterly Wind. Saw a couple of Sails to day.



# And One Murdered

303

The killed the Old Sows Husband. to day, hardly giving him time to see his Children & leaving his Wife A Widow & his Children Fatherless. We gave half of him forward, and I believe the unfeeling wretches are going to eat him! if They do, I shall too!


Saturday 5<sup>th</sup> Strong Easterly winds. Let her lay under Short Sail & Stowed down our Oil 17 Barrels we also Broke out A large cask of Flump Back Oil that was Leaking & shifting it into another cask, stowed it down again. Saw nothing to day But, one Dolphin & some drift stuff.

Sunday 6<sup>th</sup> Blowing A gale from the N. N. E. we saw A large Brack, that we called A Sperm Whale, But, it was so Rugged we never saw him afterwards. At 11 A M, we were all called down from the Mast heads, as the Gale was Blowing Very. heavy & the Decks completely Flooded. Night Let in Clear with no Abatement of the Gale. Hove to on the Eastern tack.

Monday 7<sup>th</sup> The Gale at its height. Rave New Braces Fore & Aft. Also Lib & Fly Lib Healiards & Downhauls. New Topsail & Topgallant Healiards, New Sparker Vangs, Sheets & Brails & New Main Spencer Vang Falls. We saw A large Merchant Ship to day running Before it, with all sail on, even to her Main Royal. She did not remain long in sight of us, she was fairly Flying, and reminded me of The many Tales I have read about the Flying Dutchman! At Sundown it had moderated A little But A very heavy Sea on. Tuesday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong Breeze. At Three O'clock this morning, I was awakened out of A sound sleep by repeated cries of, Heard up! Heard up! Heard



# 304 A Narrow Escape.

up your Helm! I sprang out of my berth & ran on deck where I saw a Large Merchant Bark, not over two ships length from us dead to windward of us, she had just seen us time enough to luff clear of us & was fast drifting down on us, his studding sails dragging in the water, which he had let go by the Run. We soon got the Old Doctor out of his Road, & he squared away again, and as he ran down by us I could hear them venting their wrath against the D D Whaling, Spouting Blubber Flounting Beggars as they called us. It was lucky we had a Lantern Burning in the weather Main Rigging, & it makes me shudder to think what a narrow escape we both of us had. Two minutes more, at the rate she was running, & there, yes! One Hundred chances to one! if a single, single, soul, had escaped from either vessel to have told the tale. But, God! in his infinite goodness & mercy has spared us from a watery grave, for which I most humbly thank him with all my heart. At daylight we saw another Bark who passed close to us with a cloud of canvas spread to it & going directly before the wind which is North. We could show nothing more to it to day, than double Reefed Topsails, Fore Sail, Spanker & Main Spencer & Fore Topmast Staysail. At sundown we took in the Spanker & Foresail, & let her lay on the Western tack, as she has been all day. After sundown I struck & saved a fine large yellow Tail.  We Broached our last cask of Flour to day, a fine Barrel cask. Also, our last Barrel of Molasses.




# A Sea Lawyer.

305

Wednesday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & light Northerly winds. By 9<sup>h</sup> AM, the wind increased so that we were obliged to take in all the light sails. PM, it lulled again & by sundown it was nearly calm. Saw some sails to day & one large Dolphin.

Lat<sup>e</sup> 27:00<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 42:50<sup>m</sup> West. I forgot to mention that A School of Porpoises came round the Kessel Yesterday, the first we have seen on this Whaling Ground. Opened 4<sup>th</sup> Barrel of Pork.

Thursday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind NE, Saw Terns, & two or three sails. At sundown shortened sail. Myself & Patterson caught A large shark, to get his skin,  for to make, to answer in the room of Sandpaper.

Friday 11<sup>th</sup> Fine & strong North East winds. Steering N, N W. Saw Terns or Grampseers, A Breaching several times to day. Saw one sail also, Lat<sup>e</sup> 26:32<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 42:54<sup>m</sup> West.

Very strong talk about leaving here pretty soon. The Old Man & Carpenter very busy making A New Main Royal yard, for he is bound to make her fly when we do start for St Helena.

Saturday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind North. Kept her away South & made all sail. At 10<sup>h</sup> AM, Passed A large school of Blackfish going quick to windward. Saw some Terns. At sundown Put her under double Reefed Topsails & kept her going South.

Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & the Wind hauled to the Southward. We made all sail, & tacked no less than three times, We are in such A hurry to get South, and more especially as it is Sunday. Saw Plenty of Terns. Lat<sup>e</sup> 26:47<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 43 51<sup>m</sup> West. PM, we headed up South, so he. Lackie Ship & stood away to




# 306 Ship Charles W Morgan.

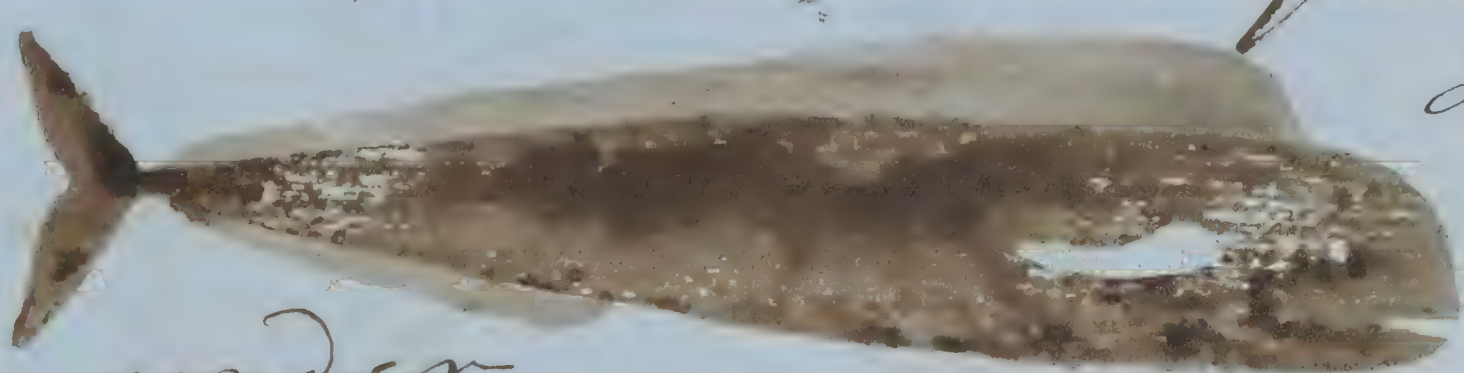
The 1<sup>st</sup> E; At Sundown we shortened sail & hove to.  
Monday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind 1<sup>st</sup> E, Made all sail, and  
wore round to the Eastward. At 8 A M, we kept  
off South. saw Plenty of Tumblers & Run for them  
two or three times thinking they were Whales. P M,  
Lat = 26:42 South. Long = 43:51<sup>m</sup> West. At three P M,  
we spoke the Ship Charles Morgan, Fisher, of N B,  
29 Months out 1900 of Whale, 250 of Sperm & 30,000 lbs  
of Bone. Our Captain Bought of her 14 Barrels of  
Beef, 6 Barrels of Pork, A Cask of Bread, weighing about  
400 Pounds, 86 Gallons of Molasses, 150 Pounds of Coffee  
about 8 Pounds of Sugar, one Pound of Saleratus, One  
Bushel of Corn, Three Bundles of Iron Hoops, and  
A Signal Lantern, she informed us that Kessel had  
been taking a good many Whales, in the Latitude  
of 34 South, close in to the Land, in sixty Fathoms  
of Water, & she was carrying home Bone for some  
of them. We Gammoned until about 9<sup>h</sup> in the evening  
and they gave me A Torgal Sharfawn, A Pound &  
A Half of Tobacco & Three Pipes. They would Take  
Nothing in return But a few Coconuts. They  
wished us good Luck & we in Return, wished them  
A Speedy Passage, as they are Bound Home & A good  
Price for their Oil & Bone. Her Officers were,  
Ahnston, Davis, & Carrington, the latter of Negro.  
She stood away to the Eastward, taking Letters for  
us; And we wore round to the Northwest, double  
Reefed the Topsails & hove to for the Night.  
Tuesday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm; We went at it this mor-  
ning & hoisted up the remaining 21 barrels of Meat  
that we got at Loando, and threw it all overboard.  
And it stunk so, that it caused some of our  
Men to vomit, while emptying it out of the




# Dolphin's.

307

barrels which, we saved. We then stowed down our good Meat, Malasses, Bread, Coffee &c. Lat  $\approx 26:42^m$  South, Long  $\approx 44:10^m$  West. At Sundown some Yellow Tail came around & the Mate caught one,  The Captain caught another one & Jim Shermann caught two more.

Night dead calm, two sails in sight. Wednesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light southerly winds. Saw two sails, & Plenty of Sunfish, Steering to the N.E. Some Dolphin came Round, and Jim Patterson struck, and saved a fine one with the Grainsse.  At Sundown we shortened her run N.E. under

double reefed Top sails, and Foresail, the wind being South. Thursday 17<sup>th</sup> Dead Calm. Saw three or four sails. Lat  $\approx 25:22^m$  South. Long  $\approx 43:06^m$  West.

Friday 18<sup>th</sup> Still Calm. About 10<sup>h</sup> A.M. got a breeze from the Northward. After dinner made all sail and kept her East. Saw several sails to day. At Sundown it died away Calm again, & some Dolphin coming around the Captain struck two of them & saved one  which we cleaned, and got ready for breakfast.

Saturday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine & light breeze, saw one vessel and Plenty of small fish; Steering to the Eastward. Lat  $\approx 25:41^m$  South. Long  $\approx 41:57^m$  West. At 4 P.M. we Raised some large Breaches to windward, supposed to be Sperm Whales. We therefore tacked to westward & at sundown shortening sail, we stood on until 12 o'clock when we tacked to the Eastward again. We also saw some Sunfish, or Grampuses, & we have saw them nearly every day this two months past.



# 308 Polishing Up Things.

Sunday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine. Standing to the Eastward. Wind Northerly. Saw nothing But, Lumpers & small Fish, Night fine &c.

Monday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine. Still standing to the Eastward. Lat<sup>n</sup> 26 17 South. Long<sup>W</sup> 40:35 West. At 4 P M, we tacked to the westward again. Night fine &c. Made a Commencement at tarring down the Rigging to day, Also Painting our Royal yard & Mast to have in readiness to send aloft before we start for St Helena. Putting up with new covers, for the Cabin Sofa's A Fresh name Painted on the Signal Box, New Covers for the Harney's Cask & several other little things that makes me think, that when we tack ship again, it will be for the last time, until we get to St Helena, Unless we either see Whales or have a head wind; And the quicker, the Better, say I!

Tuesday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine. Heading N, N W. Wind N E. Busy at various fancy fixings & the Old Man had an overhauling of his Whale Line Music Box. Lat<sup>n</sup> 25:51 South. Long<sup>W</sup> 40:51 West. I finished a New Tooth Brush to day, that I have been making, for Mr Whitfield, And he likes it very much.

Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & strong breeze. At 9 A M, we tacked to Eastward, & I think for the last time. Saw some Lumpers. Lat<sup>n</sup> 25:28 South Long<sup>W</sup> 40:52 West.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> Strong Northerly wind. Set the Topsails Stay double reefed. Opened a Barrel of Pork & Beef. Saw some Lumpers. Lat<sup>n</sup> 25:46 S. Long<sup>W</sup> 39:31 West.

Friday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine. Heading East, N East. Wind North. Made all sail. Got all ready for shifting Topgallant Masts tomorrow. Lat<sup>n</sup> 25:33 South. Long<sup>W</sup> 38:32 West. Saw a Large School of Grampuses, That we took at first for Sperm Whales, they made such large Spouts. Night fine; let her run under whole Topsails Lib & Spanker.



# Prepairing To Leave.

309

Saturday 26<sup>th</sup> Strong breezes, & squally, with Rain. Employed sending up & New Main Top Gallant & Royal Mast, Bent & New Main top Gallant sail that we broke out, & we also broke out fore & main Royals, and I expect we will soon be showing the bladders how to walk the Water. Finished all our Tarring down, with the Exception of the Topgallant and Royal Rigging. Steering East, Wind North. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25° 34' South. 37° 36' West Longitude. Night fine, Run under double reefed Topsails, Lib, Spanker Main Spencer & Foretopmast Stay sail.

Sunday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong breezes. Made all sail Course East. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25° 39' South Long<sup>e</sup> 35° 48' West. Night Fine, Took in M T G sail Fly Lib & Gaff Top sail & let her run. Wind North.

Monday 28<sup>th</sup> & Last of February. Very Strong North winds, as much as she can stagger under. Bent the Mainsail & set it. Bent the Fore & Main Royal to the yards ready to send aloft the First fine day. We also Bent the Fore Topmast Studding sail, & Main Top Gallant Studding sail, and got the gear all fitted ready for use, But, the wind is too Strong now. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25° 33' South. Long<sup>e</sup> 33° 13' West. At 7 P M, we set Sea Watches again & My eight hours in the Lee Scuppers; as the saying is, besides having all day to day on deck, me & my boats crew.

Tuesday First day of March 1857. Cloudy and Very Strong Breezes from North. Steering East With Topsails, Courses, Main Top Gallant sail, Spanker, Lib, & Fore Topmast Stay sail, and it is just as much as she can stagger under. At 2 P M, we got some sight, (the same time we did yesterday) and found the Lat<sup>e</sup> 25° 05' South. and Long<sup>e</sup> 29° 59' West. We passed



# 310 All Dore Whaling.

Two Brigs have to to day; One of them on the Starboard Tack & the other on the Port Tack. Stood no Lookouts.

Wednesday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine, & Rather more Moderate. Put all sail on her. Sent up the Topmast & Topgallant Studding Sail Booms, saw one or two sails, although we are too busy fixing fancy cushions, for the Cabin for to stand any Mast heads. Lat<sup>o</sup> 24:40 South.

Long<sup>o</sup> 27:12 West. Night fine & good breeze.

Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> A Beautiful day. Sent up the Main Royal yard & sail, and set it. We also set the Fore Topmast & Main top Gallant Studding sails. We Painted & Varnished the Cabin to day, and one side of the Steerage, so we will all have to sleep on deck to night. We saw several sails although we are standing no Mast heads & I don't know as we are ever going to stand any more. Lat<sup>o</sup> 24:21 South.

Long<sup>o</sup> 24:28 West. Night fine & clear with light winds from N.E. We hauled down the Studding sails at Mid night as we barely headed her course. All hands aft, sleeping on deck to night, & in the Boats.

Friday 4<sup>th</sup> Another lovely day, with light breezes & a smooth sea. Still there is not a single Mast head shanned; and I don't know but he has given up Whaling altogether. We sent down the Fore top Gallant, & Royal Yards; also the Fore Top Gallant, and Royal Mast. We then Replaced the latter, with the Topgallant, and Royal Mast that came from the Main. We then sent up the Topgallant, & Royal Yards, & Bending the sails set them. Several Merchant men Passed close to us to day, beating to the Northward. Gave the Cabin another coat of Varnish to day, and Painted the Old Mans Trunk. The Night was fine, & all hands aft had to take another Night's Lodgings on deck.



# No More Mast Heads. 311

Saturday 5<sup>th</sup> Painted The Cabin Floor & one side of the Steerage Floor, We also scrubbed the Starboard side of the Steerage & Painted it all But, the Floor, We then Painted the Cabin Sofa & side cushions. We also Painted The Captains, The Mates, Pattersons, Mc Nutts, And Whitfield's Chests, Blue, with Black Mountings, & corners. It has been a lovely day, smooth as a billiard board, with Light N.E. winds. Course East. Still no talk of standing any more Lookouts; And I don't actually think we would take a Whale now, if we could just as well as not! for it would spoil all our Fancy Skipper's, Fancy Work! as well as upset all his Calculations for St Helena & John Ragsley.


Sunday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light winds, & clear as a Bell. Our Captain Found it to be necessary work to give the Cabin Floor another coat of Paint, and the Five Chests another coat of Paint also. The rest of the day we passed Bracing & squaring yards, & setting & taking in Studding Sails, as the winds are very Light, and variable. Lat: 23:38<sup>m</sup> South. Longitude 20:17<sup>m</sup> West. Mc Nutt went to the Mast head of his own Accord to day, But, the Captain called him down again to Paint his Chest, so we had no more Lookout to day. Night fine & all on deck as yet.

Monday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light N.E. winds, as she would not head her course, we took in the Royals, and had one Mast to the Mast head to day. Gave the Cabin another coat of Varnish, also the Sofa, side cushions, & Chests. Took the Starboard Anchor in on deck to wedge the Stock & got it on the Bows, again. We also finished Tarring the Topgallant Rigging, & I spent the Rest of the day Polishing a Pair of Sperm Whales Teeth for my Brother & Bill. Long 19:00<sup>m</sup> West. Night fine, & still sleeping on deck.



# 312 A Poison Porpoise!

Tuesday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine & Very light winds, from E N E  
One man aloft, saw nothing, Employed at little Jobs  
of Painting. Lat  $24^{\circ}12^m$  South. Long<sup>e</sup>  $17^{\circ}57^m$  West. Night  
fine & nearly calm, so that we hauled up the courses.

Wednesday 9<sup>th</sup> A lovely day. Painted the Starboard  
side of the Steerage Floor. And Refitted & Painted  
the Unberoy. About three P.M., a School of Porpoises  
& Blackfish came all round the Ship & we struck  
one of the Porpoises  the largest one I  
ever saw caught, the

him, filling a Barrel half full. We had a nice  
breeze from N. N. E. all day, course East by South.  
At 2 P.M., Lat  $24^{\circ}22^m$  South. Long<sup>e</sup>  $17^{\circ}00^m$  West. At  
4 P.M., we set the Fore Topmast & Main Topgallant  
studding Sails. At Sundown we had a good breeze.

Thursday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & Fair Wind. There is scarcely a  
man in the Ship this morning, who had eaten of the  
Porpoise, But, What was attacked by severe Headache  
And Pains in the Stomach Accompanied by Vomiting.  
The fact is, we have all been Poisoned by him. The  
Poor Steward & one or two more, was keel out  
altogether. Towards evening we all got better  
But, the Headaches continued. Saw Nothing & did  
not want to either! Lat  $24^{\circ}19^m$  South. Long<sup>e</sup>  $15^{\circ}36^m$  West.

Friday 11<sup>th</sup> All shivering well this morning. About  
three O'clock this Morning the wind commenced a  
hauling off & never stopped until it had hauled  
clear round the Compass accompanied by a drizzling  
Rain. And finally settled down into a dead calm  
with Rain clouds in various Parts of the Horizon  
which would drift over us occasionally, giving us a  
drenching. Burned the Mast heads to day, for the  
first time in 11 days. Night set in calm, with occasional rain  
showers.



# Calms.

313

Saturday 12<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm, with once in a while a little bats saw for about the sixth of an hour.

Sunday 13<sup>th</sup> Fine & just enough wind to give her Steerage way, with Studding Sails, Royals & all. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:33 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 12:06 West. Night the same. Saw one sail, that kept in sight the whole day.

Monday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & scarcely moving through the water. We got our Old Bouse about boat down from overhead, to do some repairing to her & Paint the Saps inside of her, ready for a Passage Boat Between the Vessel & the Shore, when we arrive at St Helena. finished her & Put her over head again.

Tuesday 15<sup>th</sup> Weather the same. Painted the Old Boat; And then mixed a Lot of Paint ready for Painting Ship when we get in Port, if we ever get there. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:24 South. Long<sup>e</sup> 11:23 West. Night fine, with now & then a bats saw.

Wednesday 16<sup>th</sup> Fine & Calm, with Black looking Squalls hanging in different Parts of the Horizon from which we get an occasional Puff that lasts about fifteen minutes, & then leaves it a flat Calm again. Night, The same.

Thursday 17<sup>th</sup> St Patricks day. About 4 o'clock this Morning we got a light air from N.E, which continued until about 4 P.M, when it died away. A flat Calm again. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:32 S. Long<sup>e</sup> 10:32 West.

Friday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine & dead Calm. Saw some Grampuses. We unskipped the Wheel to day, and Scraped & Varnished it. Had one Gang Pounding the Iron Rust off of the Chain Plates. They finished them by 4 P.M, and we washed her down. Night still Calm, with Black looking squalls all round us, which when crossing us, would give us a Confusion



### 314 Bound For St Helena.

Flow of Rain But scarcely any wind, & what there was would leave us as soon as the Rain ceased.

Saturday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine & Still & dead calm. About 10 A.M. a Light Breeze sprang up from the N.E. It was hailed with joy! And Every Rag of Canvas that would draw was soon set, & we went gaily along, about two knots & a half all day, making a East Southeast course. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:27 S. Long<sup>m</sup> 10:18 West. Night set in fine & the Breeze held on.

Sunday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine & a Strong E<sup>m</sup> East wind. Standing E, S.E. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:39 South Long<sup>m</sup> 9 13 West. Night fine & c.

Monday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine, & Strong breezes from the Northward. Doing little or Nothing, But praying for a fair Wind. We eat our last Heap of Beans to day. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:38 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 7:17 West.

Tuesday 22<sup>nd</sup> The Same. We eat our last Heap of Rice to day, and we have nothing on board now But, Bread, Flour, Beef, Pork, Coffee, Molasses & Vinegar, & Precious Little of either of Those. Lat<sup>m</sup> 23:11 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 5:57 West. A still & dead Wind, & no signs of a fair One.

Wednesday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine. Wind Light, and varying from North, to N.E. Still standing to the Eastward. Lat<sup>m</sup> 22:45 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 4:28 West.

Thursday 24<sup>th</sup> The Same. Lat<sup>m</sup> 22:30 S. Long<sup>m</sup> 3:29 West. At Sundown we got a Light breeze from N.W. that lasted until Midnight & then died away calm. Friday 25<sup>th</sup> Fine & dead calm. At 1 P.M. we got a Light breeze from the Westward which lasted until Sundown & died away calm again. Lat<sup>m</sup> 21:48 South. Long<sup>m</sup> 2:56 West. About 8 P.M. we got a Light Breeze from South, accompanied by Rain & by Midnight it had increased to a



## A Breeze At Last.

315

five knot breeze, so away we went flying with studdingrails & Royals, & light hearts.

Saturday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine & clear with a steady five knot breeze that settled down to S.E. & we have every Reason to suppose that we have got into the South East Trade winds at last. We kept the Main Royal on her & both Lookouts were stationed Forward. Lat<sup>e</sup> 20:35<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 3:43<sup>m</sup> West. Night fine, with an occasional Shower. Course North.

Sunday 27<sup>th</sup> Cloudy but fine. Wind varying from South to Southeast. At one P.M. we were in Lat<sup>e</sup> 18 47<sup>m</sup> South. Long<sup>e</sup> 4:47<sup>m</sup> West. & found we must have a very strong Westerly Current, so we hauled her up North by East. Night fine & Winds the same.

Monday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & a good strong breeze. About 10 A.M. I raised the Land, one Point on the Starboard Bow, and I have been the first to raise it every time we have been here the Voyage. We hauled her up another Point to the Eastward & let her Seced. About 11 A.M. we saw two or three Sails standing for the Island. After dinner we bent the cables and got the Anchors off the Bows. We got in & come to Anchor, and got the sails furled by Sundown. We were visited by the Doctors boat, & a few Accomodating wash Women, who could talk of Nothing else But the Women onshore, & their last Sweethearts. We found but one Whaler here The Globe, Capt. Trip of N Bedford 7 Months & a half out 400 Barrels of Sperm Oil. The Captain and Mr Genney went onshore to Night. We then got



## 316 Arrival At St Helena.

Supper & set anchor watches. There is quite a number of Merchantsmen here of all Nations. Two Flash Ladies of the Town came on board & escorted the Captain on shore between them. Miss Rebecca Moise, And Miss Eleanor Harris. Tuesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine. We ran out to Sledge Anchor at daylight, & then weighing our anchor fledged her close in, on the North side of the Harbour where we anchored in 10 fathoms of Water the bottom being plain in sight. We then unbet all our Sails, hanging them by the Carings And got the Best part of our Yards and Masts Painted, besides scrubbing the Ship all round outside by four o'clock P.M.; The Captain paid us a visit to day, bringing some Cabbage a Bunch of Turnips, a Small Hog, dressed, quarter of a Sheep & a Bag of Sweet Potatoes. He gave us Permission to go on shore evenings to see our Friends, Watch and Watch. The Ship Commodore, Nash, of Mysic 29 Months 1800 Barrels, came in to day. After Supper I went on shore with my Watch & at the earnest solicitations of some Friends I Remained all night. Wednesday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine. All got off early this Morning, and we finished Painting the Spars, Painted the Bends all Round, Scrubbed and Painted the Inside of The Port Bulworks, The Davids, Beavers, House overhead, Ganway, Mast Coats &c. &c. After Supper The other Watch Went on shore to spend the evening, while our Watch Remained to look out for her. The Captain sent off some Sugar, some Fresh Mackerel, a Bag of Potatoes, & some Onions.



## Painting And Sporting.

317

He also came on board himself and took dinner with us, But, somehow or another Old Farmer Bagsley nor any other of Sprungers comes off with him Now! For Well they know he is about Run Out! And so shows him the cold Shoulder. John Anderson went onshore to see the Doctor this Morning, but when he got onshore he went off on a Spree & we have not seen him since. It was very squally to night, and one large Merchantman Ran into another, and both of Them got damaged considerable.

Thursday 31<sup>st</sup> Fine. All came off this morning but the Cook. Shortly after Anderson came on board, he kicked up a Row with the Mate, who made no more to do but Manned a Boat and Put him onshore, sending word by the, to the Captain, that he would not have him on board any more. The Captain Paid us a Visit for about an hour to day & then took his departure again. The finished Painting the First boat inside, as well as the Harbour Side outboard, and the Stern of her to day. About 4<sup>th</sup> P.M. The ~~Old Fellow~~ Rose of Sag Harbor came in 6 Months

after Super our Watch Went onshore to spend the Evening. The Host of them got into a Polly fight with with the English Soldiers at a Public House called the Polly Clailors, and I understand that the Soldiers got worsted. Our Boys being joined by the Men from both The Globe & the Enriolano, who were on Liberty. I was not Present at the fight. But I saw numbers of Black Eyes & Broken Noses on both sides afterwards.



318 Commencement of Liberty.  
Friday The First Day of April 1859, Fine.  
All hands got on board early this morning  
bringing the cook with us, who looked the  
Original Picture of Hard Times, and was  
was obliged to turn in as soon as we arrived  
on board. He Painted away until dinner time  
and the Rest of the day done Nothing. After  
Supper all of the Watch who wanted to  
Went ashore for the Night. As the Mate  
will not send the Boat in at 9 o'clock any  
more, those who go have to Remain on shore  
all Night. We saw Nothing of the Captain  
to day at all, he being out at old Farmer  
Bagsley's Place in the country. But, we had  
some Fresh Pork & Two Gallons of Quaint Oil  
come on board to day. The Bark Iowa, Moore,  
of Fair Haven came in to day 30 Months 1400  
Barrels. And The Julius Caesar, Barthett,  
of New London, 30 Months Full Bound home  
Saturday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine. All came off steady  
this morning. A whole Hog & half a Sheep  
with three dozen Vegetables cabbages &c and  
three dozen Mackerel; We finished Painting  
on the Inside, and got all the rest done but  
one More coat on the Outside of Starboard  
side. The Captain paid us a Visit, and left  
Liberty home for Tomorrow and Monday  
Five Dollars for each of the Boatsteers  
and one Dollar and fifty cents each for the  
Foremast Hands. I took Five Dollars, and as  
soon as I get my Supper I am going on  
Liberty until Monday morning. So as they  
Are setting the Table Now, Good bye until then.

(Continued on Page 331)



## Landing The Whores.

319

Thursday April the 14<sup>th</sup> 1859. This was a lovely day & the Mate had all hands Roused out at daylight, and told all who had Ladies onboard, to settle up with them, as they must now leave the ship. About half past six one boat load left, and the Rest Remained for Breakfast. After we finished our Breakfast, the Remainder of them, 10 in all, got into the Boat after a Great deal of Flipping, Shaking hands &c and we Manning the Windlass gave them a Shanty Song called the Hogs Eye Man whilst the dear creatures waved their Handkerchiefs in token of approbation, and the Little Boat unwilling, rowed to Land. we got one Anchor up and secured, then Let her Remain until 10 A.M., When the Captain made his Appearance with Old Bagley. He was in a Great Passion because the Vessel was not got under weigh Yesterday and more Especially, as one Man, James Sherman had Ran away during the Night. He gave orders to Man the Windlass directly & staid onboard himself to see her under weigh himself. He then Went onshore again with Old Bagley, taking a Boat with him and the Boys that have been Pulling her while laying here and leaving orders for the Vessel to be off the Harbour at 12 o'clock Tomorrow. So after Making Sail, Securing the Anchors, Washing decks &c, we divided ourselves into two watches and one went below. After Supper we double Reefed the Topsails & stood off and on all Night, And I must confess that it seems quite Lonesome.



## 320 Lord Russell's Arrival.

Friday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze, We commenced at daylight to put different little things in order, for it seems that almost every thing by the looks had been on a spree as well as the crew of the Vessel. We stowed all the spare cable below gave her a Thorough washing up & got breakfast, and then sent up the Fore & Main Royal yards & sails all the while standing off & on close in to the Shipping & plain in sight of the Landing. We could see the Boat, and could also recognize the different Parties that were moving up & down on the Pier, a number of which were Ladies of our acquaintance, with our Telescope, which was kept in constant use by some one of the after Guard. About 2<sup>h</sup> P.M. we saw our boat Shore off with the Boys, & we wore round to meet her; She got alongside by 3<sup>h</sup> P.M., and by the time we got her in our deck, The Captain Arrived in a Shore Boat accompanied by Three Young Storer's Sons of Mr Storer The Proprietor of the St Helena Hotel, & The Eldest of Them, (Of which I will speak hereafter) Remained onboard while the rest returned in the same Boat, taking our Boat Boys with them also. We then Squared away N.N.W. and Made all sail; After which we got the Boat in her Place overhead, Unbent the Cables & Stowed them away & gave her another Good Wash down; Then got Supper & set the Watches as Usual. John Storer who is a young Man of 22 years, we made room for in the Steerage, & from the Captain I learned that he having made a False<sup>step</sup>, or in Plain Terms



## Adieu To St Helena.

321

taken a Rascally advantage of a Poor, but still Respectable young Lady who was on the eve of becoming a Mother. His Parents got Captain Russell to enter him on this Russell's articles as a Seaman; But as the Captain told me himself had paid him a good sum of ready Money to take him. he also told us that he was to eat in the Cabin & to be considered more in the light of a Passenger than as a Sailor. The night was fine and several Merchantmen were in sight standing the same as ourselves. I learned in the course of my conversation this evening from the Captain; That the Ships Bills this time at St Helena was rising two Hundred and Sixty Pounds Sterling, what it could have been for God only knows for I can form no Idea although it may be all quite correct. Saturday 16 Fine & good breeze took in the Royals and mannaed the Mast heads. we then set the Standing Sails, & the day we employed making Nets to stow away the Best of our onions & the Rest we pickled with Vinegar. Young Storer very sea sick & can eat nothing. Plenty of Sails in sight, Night fine & the whole theme of conversation was St Helena & its inhabitants &c course N N W. Sunday 17<sup>th</sup> A Fine day & a good breeze, saw but one sail, some Porpoises & a Fin Back. the day was passed in Reading writing &c. and in the course of course of conversation the old Man as much as said that he was coming back to St Helena to take charge of The Ship Frank Janson a Merchant



## 322 Recruits At St Helena.

man that had been condemned there, and brought up by Giddeon & Sons who were going to fit her out as a Whaler after sending her one Trip to Rio de Janeiro. But, time will tell! The Night was fine &c  
Monday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze. Course N by W. The Employed the day Stowing away the Small Stores that we Procured at St Helena Sugar, Butter, Pease, Beans &c And we have now on board, about 12 Sacks Potatoes & of onions, One Barrel of Beans, One of Pease, One Keg of Butter, One Sack of Sugar, 7 Tons of Wood, 13 Tons of Water & 1/2 Barrels of Flour & Barrels of Bread, one dozen Fowls, Besides a Number of other little Nations, Pickles Fruit &c for the Cabin Table. Added to all all this, Fresh Meat, either, Beef, Pork or Mutton, with Fish & Vegetables nearly every day we were in there, besides Liberty Money, with which he was very liberal it counts up quite fast; Anyhow it has counted 21 Dollars and 25 cents out of my pocket besides the interest, which I believe is 10 Per cent. This is one of the Voyages you read about! This day continued fine & the Night likewise. Still running with studding sail on her nearly dead before it, with Gills & Spanker in.  
Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze, Course N N W. Employed the day setting up the Head Stays, Fore Topmast & topgallant Rigging. At 4 P.M. we washed decks & Pumped Ship she having commenced to Leak again, so that we have to Pump her Night & Morning.



## The Ships Bills.

323

The Old Man has been busy ever since we left St Helena, reckoning up the Kessels Expenses for the Voyage & this evening he gave us to understand that it was Rising Four Thousand One Hundred Dollars. Pretty Fair! And the Old Mate Offered to Bet me that we were Bound direct for the Island of Bravo one of the Cape de Verdes Where an old Flame of the Captain's is; But, I was afraid to take it, for I should not be surprised if we touched at more than one Place yet before we get home. Night Fine &c

Wednesday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine. Kept her North. All hands well. Employed Letting up Main Rigging & Stays. Passed The Island of Ascension to the Eastward of it but not in sight of it. Lies in Lat<sup>d</sup> 7:56 South & Long<sup>d</sup> 14:16 West. Saw Plenty of Birds and Small fish, the ground looking very lively, But we are still Flying along with all sail out, Studding sails also, & setting Royals as soon as the Mast heads are deserted at Sundown, taking them in again at daylight. & this is said to be a fine Place for Whales that we are running over now. Night fine & so very hot that we can not sleep below in the after part of the Ship

Thursday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & Strong Trades. Finished Letting up all our Rigging, Then sent down & Repaired the Gaff Topsail. Discovered that Our Oil had commenced to Leak, and tomorrow it is our intention to try and find the Leak out. Lat<sup>d</sup> 5 47 S. Long<sup>d</sup> 14 48 West. Night fine & Good breeze to keep us Flying along



### 324 A Fool, Or A Rogue.

I was very much amused to day to hear the Captain Explaining to the Mate how he managed it to make his Bills come out correct, by charging for extra Yams, Potatoes, Onions &c. All of which the Mate approved with a serious countenance & at the same time kept slyly thinking at me, and as soon as he got a chance he whispered to me; That Man is a Natural Born Fool! Yes Sir! replied I, but, he is well Spiced with Roguery.

Friday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine & a stiff breeze. The Commenced at daylight & broke out our riding tiers of Oil on both sides between the Fore & Main hatch Ways & found two or three that were leaking so we cooped them and got all through stowing back by 4 P.M. A School of Blackfish came playing round the ship about two o'clock, and the Mate killed one with a Lance. We also saw a Finback; and the ocean is covered with Birds. Course North Lat<sup>d</sup> 3:30 South Long<sup>d</sup> 16:08 West. (The Captain got all through with his accounts to day, and they stand (as he says) Four Thousand, Two Hundred & Eight dollars Twenty Six cents & a half, up to this date.) The Night set in squally with Rain, and by Midnight we had taken in the studding Sails & Light sails also. I Picked up our Fresh Meat and vegetable Bill while in St Helena to day, and it was 17 pounds 4 Shillings and 8 Pence, which is equal to 86 dollars & 16 cents. Now we never had any Fresh Meat or vegetables or even fish after Saturday the 9<sup>th</sup>



# My Own Remarks.

325

The Captain says that he bought Fresh Meat to save Salt, still if we had lived on salt altogether we would have eaten but three Barrels as it was, we eat two, besides what fresh we had. Still the Globe laid here with Plenty of Meat, to sell, and one barrel more would have been what we generally use, consequently the Owners have to pay 86 dollars & 16 cents to save one Barrel of Meat; getting a few cabbage & Potatoes into the Bargain. But, if the truth was known it would be found that the Bill was made out after his own dictation, so that he could Pocket about half of it, to go towards making up the Thousand Dollars, that he says he can cheat the Owners out of, on such a Voyage as this.

Saturday 23<sup>rd</sup> Rainy & Squally all day, and about 4 P.M. it died away nearly calm, and what wind there was, was from the Eastward. A School of Blackfish came round about 5 P.M. and we lowered Larboard boat for them but could not strike. Plenty of Albacor round the ship that will not Bite. About 7 P.M. the wind hauled back to the S.E., & we put the sails on her again. Night fine &c.

Sunday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. Saw a School of Blackfish at Sunrise, Plenty of small fish & Birds around. At 2<sup>h</sup> P.M. we were in Lat<sup>d</sup> 00:15 South and Long<sup>d</sup> 18:01 West So that we must have crossed the Line about 5 P.M., and Thank God! it is for the last time this Voyage. The Night was fine and a Good Breeze, and young stores - made out to turn to having been sea sick ever since we left St. Helena



## 326 Swedish Ship Suevige.

Monday 25<sup>th</sup> Cloudy & light winds. About two o'clock P.M., I raised a school of Blackfish; so we luffed to, took in the Studding Sails, and lowered the Starboard boat, We soon got a chance at a fellow, But, my Harpoon struck on the Knuckel bone of his fin breaking the point off the Harpoon, and bending it up nearly double, the school then made off and we came on board, kept her off N by West & made all sail on her again. Night fine & the Breeze very Light

Tuesday 26<sup>th</sup> Variable winds, Calms, and Rain Squalls. Saw seven merchant Vessels during the day Steering to the Southward, and Westward. Lat<sup>e</sup> 1:38<sup>m</sup> North. Long<sup>e</sup> 19:41<sup>m</sup> West. Towards sundown we got a Light breeze from the N.E., which died away to a dead calm by eight in the Evening & continued so all night

Wednesday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & dead Calm, and Hot enough to Roast a Nigger. Its an old saying that thisery like, company, & we had plenty of it to day, for there was nine sail in sight of us the same as ourselves. We saw also plenty of Porpoises & Small Fish. Night set in with Light Cats Paws from the Westward

Thursday 28<sup>th</sup> Calm & Rainy. Saw two sails & plenty of Porpoises, & Small Fish. At 3 P.M., we were Boarded by a Boat from the Swedish Clipper Ship, Suevige Captain August Radia, 35 days from Liver Pool, Bound to Batavia, who left two letters for us to forward home for him. Our Lat<sup>e</sup> to day is 2:20<sup>m</sup> North. Long<sup>e</sup> 20 04<sup>m</sup> West. We



# The North Star.

327

had quite a steady breeze all the afternoon from the South West. Which continued all night.

Friday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine & a light breeze from the Westward, which continued all day. Heading North on the Port tack saw one sail, & plenty of small fish. After dark the wind hauled to the Northward & it came on to rain, which continued all night long.

<sup>The North Star was visible with the Telescope.</sup>  
Saturday 30<sup>th</sup> And last day of April. Rainy and Northerly & Westerly winds. At daylight we spread the decks, fore and aft with Ashes.

About 10 A.M., it cleared off & we saw one sail. We then washed decks down, & after dinner killed one of our Rigs that was born on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day of February last. Lat  $\pm 3:35^{\circ}$  North. and Long  $\pm 20:32^{\circ}$  West. At 4<sup>th</sup> P.M. it was a dead calm. Saw some white water & a spot that turned out to be a Finback. Night calm the greater part of it.

Sunday May the First 1859. Light gusts. Rains occasionally, & showers of rain; but most of the day dead calm & the heat almost stifling. Saw three sails to day. About 8<sup>th</sup> in the evening we got a light breeze from the N.E., which continued all night.

Monday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & very light N.E. winds. The North Star was plain in sight to the naked eye last night and we all gazed at him a long time, for the first time in 28 months. Lat  $\pm$  to day  $3:32^{\circ}$  North Long  $\pm 21:08^{\circ}$  West. Night fine & still very light winds. And we saw nothing throughout the day or night but, flying fish, and The North Star.



## 328 Call All Hands.

Tuesday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & still very light winds, Broke out for water. About 11 A.M., it came on to rain & rained a couple of hours very hard which killed what little wind we had, and we saved two casks of Rain Water. P.M., it was calm and a drizzling rain; Saw a School of Cow Fish. Night was fine Part of the time a light wind but mostly calm. Eat the last of our Potatoes <sup>to day.</sup>

Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Northerly winds. Saw one Sail Bound South. Lat<sup>o</sup> 4:30 North Long<sup>o</sup> 22:37 West. At 3 P.M., it died away calm. At 5<sup>th</sup> P.M., a Black looking Squall rose in the N.E. East and By six o'clock it was on us, causing us to haul down, and blow up. Called all hands to shorten sail. It struck us three different times in the course of an hour & then Passed over, and we made all sail again to a Fine Night & a Light N.E. East wind.

Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine & a Good Breeze, and I believe we have at length got the N.E. trade winds. Saw one Sail Bound South. It was so cloudy at Noon, that we got no sight.

Friday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Stiff Breeze. We found one of our casks of Sperm oil, half leaked out to day; so we Brake it out, and shifting the oil into another cask, stowed it back again. The Carpenter was then set to make a Pipe for our hose, to wet hats with. Saw one Sail. Lat<sup>o</sup> 6:17 North Long<sup>o</sup> 24:00 West.

Saturday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. Got the Hatch ways clear & after Breakfast wet our oil in the Fore & Main Hatch's. Saw two Sails



# Down Royals Again.

329

to day. Lat<sup>m</sup> 6:58 North. Long<sup>m</sup> 26:14 West.

Sunday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine, & Good breeze. About 5 A.M. A School of Blackfish came playing all round the ship. But we would not stop for them.

Lat<sup>m</sup> 8:18, North. Long<sup>m</sup> 27:35, West. Saw plenty of small fish, & one large Merchant Ship.

Monday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & Very Strong Trades.

We turned up all three Boats to day, scrubbed them & gave them A Coat of Paint.

I had A few words with Mr. Warner this Morning & he called me A Liar, when every Man in the Ship, (with the exception of the Captain) knew that it was himself

that Lied! But, he is Mate, so I merely told him that I would keep it in my memory until A few Months hence & so let him growl away until he got tired & Stopped.

Lat<sup>m</sup> 9:53 North. Long<sup>m</sup> 29:13 West. Saw one Sail ahead Bound the same Road as ourselves. Killed another of our small

Pigs. At Sundown carried away our Martin gale Back Rope, put A Tackle on it, and let her go at that. Unbent the Royals to day and unrove the Rigging. Night fine, But Very Strong winds, & the Vessel leaking about 100 Strokes an hour. Took in Tarpaulent sails.

Tuesday 10<sup>th</sup> Fine & Strong winds. Set A, T, G, Sail. Saw two Sails to day, and A School of Blackfish, also one of Porpoises. Lat<sup>m</sup> 11:40 North. Long<sup>m</sup> 31:49 West.

Tuesday 11<sup>th</sup> Strong Trades, dunn & Cloudy. Our boats still turned up & we are unable as yet to give them the second Coat. Broke out



### 330 Down Studding Sail Booms.

our Meat to day & found we had but four Barrels of Pork, and 7 of Beef, so the Captain weighed out two barrels & Bunched it 24 Pounds in a Bunch & this is to last 24 hours each Bunch. Course  $NW$  by North Lat  $13^{\circ}28'$  N. Long  $33^{\circ}40'$  West Shipfed to sea over the Starboard quarter while at Seafer that nearly drowned us & spoiled every thing on the Table; filling the Cabin half full. Thursday 12<sup>th</sup> Cloudy & Strong winds. Saw two Sails; Lat  $15^{\circ}08'$  N. Long  $36^{\circ}04'$  West. Sent down Topgallant Studding sail Booms. P.M., set Topmast Studding sail. Night fine with strong breeze Course  $NW$  by North.

Friday 13<sup>th</sup> Very Strong Trades. Saw nothing but some Porpoises to day, P.M. Lat  $16^{\circ}39'$  North. Long  $38^{\circ}36'$  West. Night Squally with some showers of Rain & Baffling winds, Took in Topmast Studding sail & other Light Sails.

Saturday 14<sup>th</sup> Strong Trades Again. Turned the Boats down as there was no signs of getting a chance to give them another boat. Set Topgallants & unbent the Topmast studding sail. The Men all came aft about being short of Meat this Morning; But, I do not think they got much Satisfaction. it was My Mast head so I did not hear; We went to bed to day for the second time. Lat  $18^{\circ}04'$  N. Long  $40^{\circ}50'$  West. Saw some Porpoises & a couple of Finbacks. Night Rather Squally. And now for a continuation of Daily Events From to Day, You must Turn To Page Which commences Sunday May 15<sup>th</sup> 1859 406



A Sunday At St Thelena.

331

Sunday April 3<sup>rd</sup> I was out in good season this morning & after dressing myself I took a stroll until Breakfast time. It was quite amusing to watch the Manœuvres of the Liberty Men from different vessels, who had been on the spree the night before trying to get into the Public houses for their bitters. But, as the Public Houses are all closed on the Sabbath day; A great many of the poor fellows went dry, excepting some one who was better acquainted shewed them the Private Entrance, which there is to every one of them. After I got my breakfast, I had a look at the Soldiers going to Church. Those who went to the Established Church of England were accompanied by the Band; While those who were Catholics, Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians or other Persuasions, went to their own Churches (all of which are here) in quietness. As for myself I soon fell in with some acquaintances and together we rambled all over the town until dinner time, after which we went to the Bath & had a Bath then continued our Ramble, Making ourselves to home wherever we went with which the People appeared to be quite well pleased & shewed us every attention that we could possibly wish for leaving it to our own generosity to requite them. We did not part until late in the Evening, When I retired to rest being pretty well fatigued, But, well satisfied with my days Enjoyment.



### 332 The Jolly Sailors..

Monday 4<sup>th</sup> The Starboard Watch went on Liberty & our watch finished painting the Starboard side. We had some Ladies Pay us a visit to day who remained all night also. The Heoka, Came in to day, Hauling 210 Barrels of Sperm & 340 of Humpback Oil and we had a Grand Gam in the Evening.

Tuesday 5<sup>th</sup> Fine Starboard watch on Liberty, I Amused myself in the Usual way to day, rambling about among the Houses & Sky-larking with the Girls who would manage once in awhile to cajole us out of a treat to some Fruit, Wine &c and in the Evening went as far as the Jolly Sailors Dance Hall, where I had not long to wait before a Row commenced between the Sailors & Soldiers and it was laughable to see & hear the carryings on of a Drunken set of Red Coats & Blue Jackets. Two of The Flash Girls of the town gave a dance to night, to which all the most Respectable of the Blue Jackets were invited and after spending a couple of hours there, until I saw it was likely to end in a fight through Jealousy; I took my hat & repaired to my own quarters, where finding several young ladies assembled to whom I was formally Introduced, we entered into conversation until a song being proposed one of them commenced & we kept it up until past Midnight when I bid them good morning & retired to Rest heartily tired But, Still well Satisfied.



# Fitting For Home. 333

Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine & very Warm. On arriving on board I found that they had taken on board yesterday 9 tons of Water & 7 tons of Old Ship timber for Fire wood for which the Captain said he Paid 7 Dollars per Ton. The Larboard Watch then went ashore, & we Remained on Board and broke out 8 Barrel of Slush for Old Bagsley & Four Gallons of Thrump Back Oil. the Rest of the day we employed Stowing away Wood & getting other barks Ready for Water. In the Evening some Ladies visited the Ship and Remained all Night. some of the other Vessels came to game with us, But as I was tired I turned in & had a Good Sleep. I made a little Blunder to day that cost me three Dollars Which I drew from the Captain. Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine, Found we were drifting in towards the Rocks, so we ran out a Dredge Anchor & got our cutting falls run to the nearest Hulk. We then hove up our Anchors which were in an awful tangle so that we had to hang them and unbend the cables. We did not get her Anchored until Noon again, some distance farther off shore. After Dinner our Watch went on Liberty and Left the Rest to clear the decks up. They Took on board to day 4 Barrels of Bread 7½ Barrels of Flour and some Fresh Meat & Vegetables. We onshore spent the day as usual, Rambling about town, in and out wherever we took a Fancy to go, Making all the fun we could in many ways too tedious for Me to mention until Night



# 334 Queens Of Trumps.

came on. Witnessed several fights between drunken sailors and Drunken Whores, and then repaired to the Ball Room where the evening passed off with Music Dancing Singing and drinking until I got tired out so went home and turned in for the night. Friday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine, Little or Nothing to do so we passed the day (after the Watch Went on shore) Amusing the Ladies who came off to see us. and swore they would not go on shore until tomorrow. We had plenty of Liquor on board and another such a set I never saw. In fact the vessel has become a perfect floating Brothel. We have not got a sober Officer belonging to her, and in fact sober men of any grade is a scarce article in the Bark Doctor Franklin. The Bark Leander, Chester, of Mystic came in to day 10 Months out 400 Whale Oil. Also the Bark, H. Gardner Nicoll, of Sag Harbor 33 Months 750 Sperm & 50 of Humpback oil. A very heavy swell began to set in to day and I thought it very lucky that we had got out where we are yesterday. Saturday 9<sup>th</sup> Was a Fine day but very heavy rollers coming in so that they broke clear over the Jetty and it was very bad Landing. The Congress, Hamblin, of Bedford came in to day 26 months out 1800 Barrels & Round Home. After breakfast our Watch went on Liberty for the last time. I tried hard to get some drawings of different parts of The Island to day but so great has been the demand for them of late by Passenger Ships touching here that



# The Rollers.

335

I was unable to Procure A single one for Love or Money, all being engaged that they could have ready for it fortnight to come. I therefore Bought what Tobacco I should want, also Pens, Pipes, Threading, Straw Hats, Corns, Tooth Brush, and several other small notions all of which are very dear here, & leaving them at A safe Place, I started on an expedition to Bong's Tomb from which we got back about dusk & feeling quite tired I refused all invitations to leave the House but got my Supper and Turned in for the Night, leaving the (White Boy) (as all the Sporting Officers are called here) to have the fun to themselves to Night for the first time. A Number of the Shore People told me to day that if we had not got the Vessel out when we did that she would have been in Pieces on the rocks before this time. And in fact I could see it plainly myself for the Rollers Broke where we had laid. Although there was 10 fathoms of water, and they were obliged to remove everything off of the Jetty to keep them from being washed away. After some 10 or 12 Rollers it would be as smooth as A Mill Pond, when boats would Pull in and Land Passengers & take off others. This seldom lasted over 15 minutes, when the Signal would be given that the Rollers were coming, Then the Jetty was soon cleared while the Boats Pulled for dear Life to get A safe Offing. They cannot account for what it is that causes them, but, they have had them here several times, and about 6 years ago



### 336 A Half Drowned Whore.

They were so heavy as to destroy all the Property on the Ship, a number of Small Vessels and Boats, & a Number of Lives were lost also.

Sunday 10<sup>th</sup> Larboard Watch on their last Liberty. As for us on board we had the day in Peace & quietness, no women coming off, & when they went on shore this Morning, One of them got overboard & was nearly drowned before they could get her out, and away she went up through the town, like a half drowned Rat; Escorted by her female Chums, and laughed, and shouted at by all the Boys of the Place, & it has been the chief Theme of conversation for the day. We had but very few Visitors from the Ships to day, and this Night I had a good sound Sleep; God knows when I will get another.

Monday 11<sup>th</sup> A Fine day. The Watch kept coming off one after another all day long until all got on board but the Cook & Cooper. The girls also kept coming, and some of them with their Sweethearts & both drunk and it was truly laughable to see them trying to help each other up the Ships side, Some of them dressed quite well & others Bare headed & Bare Footed & as many holes in their Gowns as there is Pages in this Book. About 4 P.M. A water tank came alongside, and we took 4 or 5 Tons more of Water what few of us there was sober. After Supper a Fresh supply of Rum came on board, and the Ladies had a Grand time of it. Some singing Love dittys, Others relating their Adventures, and how



## Ladies Jubilee.

337

They first came to be Prostitutes, having a good drunken cry over it, whilst their equally enebriated Swains, were trying every means in their Power to console them. Whilst others who had more of Old Nick in them cursed the Cook for not coming off & Swore they would have a dance anyhow; so out stepped Jenny Wade, Jenny Donterrance, Frances Farthemore, and Miss Betsy Bondy; While Mary Ann Wade (alias) One Eyed Riley, Puckered up her Lips & Blew forth a Reel that would out Rival any Cel Skinner that ever Walked the New York Markets. Oh! my Stars What fun! I Laughed until I was Blinded with Tears, and almost Choked myself laughing; As fast as the Liquor over came them the Dear-creatures were put to Bed, except one or two whose Lords were no better than themselves, so they took the deck for a Bed, and the Sky for a Blanket until they got a little Sobered, & then Retired. I can safely swear there was not one Perfectly sober Person, Male or Female aboard the Ship when I turned in at 11 o'clock. The Captain was aboard a short time in the Forenoon and although he tried hard, not a single one of the Women would tell him what Man she was staying with. The Old fellow appeared to be pretty well acquainted with all of them calling them by name & cracking several Jokes with them. Before he went I drew 15 dollars of him, which was the Balance of my four days Liberty Money, having only drew the first <sup>days money.</sup>



### 338 Cheers by The Ladies.

Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup> Good Morning to you Ladies! Ha, Ha, Ha! Talk about sights! Of all the sights I ever saw this one Beat them. Not A Kid Bucket or Basin in the ship But what was in requisition for the Dear creatures to bathe their Bloating faces & Firey red Eyes. We did not get Breakfast before eight O'clock And as the Captain sent word off that he would not be onboard again until The Ship was under weigh, The Boys were immediately dispatched after More Brandy & Wine & Fruit. Nine Sacks of Potatoes & 7 of Onions came onboard to day, as also 11 Pumpkins, & four men that the Captain had shipped here, there Names were William Perkins, John Allen, Antonio Pinto & Edward Williams. A Barrel of Beans A Barrel of Pease, A Keg of Butter, A Sack of Sugar, A Sack of Rice, A dozen Bottles of Pickles & Several other little notions, all of which we put under the hatches as they came alongside as there was no Officer onboard sober enough to see them taken care of. Orders also came to get the ship under weigh in the Morning and Lay off & on, But, the Old Mate allowed he would see him damned first before he would start her, until he came onboard himself! for which Piece of good news the Ladies gave him three hearty cheers. Some of the Women were then Made cooks & others took the Stewards Place & Between them got up A Hearty dinner out of the Best that the Ship could afford, after which the after



# Oh! Cracker What Fun. 339

noon was spent in skylarking and all other ways of amusement they could think of. some turning in for a short nap, and others busy washing clothes for the others, and a few more came onboard this afternoon so that there is one spare one onboard now, and I gave her up my berth where she slept alone, and I took up my quarters in the cabin. After supper, the mate sent me with a Bottle of Brandy to the Cook (who came onboard to day as also did the Cooper) to divide amongst the others (who at the same time had plenty of their own) And then he had them all aft on the quarter deck, Women and all Where they went at it in good shape. Reels, Jigs, Country dances, Cotillions, Waltzes, and Polkas were all tried successively & there was some very good dancers among the Women. They kept it up until 10 O'clock, when the Fiddler being too drunk to Play any more, they commenced singing. But, some of the girls having used the Glass pretty freely, the songs, such as Black Eyed Susan, the Dark Eyed Sailor, the Forsaken Fair, & the time is coming that we must part so affected them that most of them were soon in Tears, & were escorted to bed by those of the Male Gender who were in a condition to help them. The Old Mate sprawled out on the Cabin Floor with Nothing but his shirt on his nakedness exposed to every one, & I could not help asking myself; what Sol Davis, or Henry Wilcox would think, could they but just have a look at the old J. Franklin now.



340 Captain, And Mate Sick.

Wednesday 13<sup>th</sup> A lovely day; & as there was nothing to do very few turned out until the Breakfast was ready, excepting the Boys who were despatched as soon as it was daylight for more Oh! be Joyful! as every thing was drained dry this Morning. The Ladies, after having had a Wash, Perched themselves up in the Boats, on the Bows & Stern like so many Mermaids with combs & glases in hand & for lack of hair Oil used Sperm Oil with which the Men supplied them. What a Splendid sight was the Old Doctor! Not a whale ship in the whole Harbour but what wished her out of this Place, & none of them come near us to Gam; for no one here has any time to spare for Gamming. As soon as the Joyful came, they all took a Skip & then Pitched into the Breakfast which was soon dispatched; ~~And~~ then began the Larking, Larking & Love Making again. About noon Old Bagsby, & Captain Grinnell, came along side to tell us the Captain was very Sick in the Country & expected the Ship was under weigh & laying off & on, & wanted a Boat sent in Tomorrow at twelve o'clock for him. You can tell him that I am sick too! Replied the Mate, & he had better come get her under Weigh himself for that he was not able. So off they went and the Ladies all crowding Round the Mate, insisted upon kissing him he was such a Dear, Good, Generous, Old Soul! So as another First Rate Dinner was



# Look And Weep. 341

Now served Food & Aft, all hands soon went to work to appease their Appetites; after which the Fragments were cleared away, the dishes washed and Places swept up; when nearly all hands as with one accord turned in for an afternoon Nap. About 3 P.M., all were out again, & some one Proposing A Bath, they lowered the Waist Boat down, and nearly all hands went in stripped stark naked, while the Ladies crowded on to the Rail each one encouraging her Fanny Man to the Performance of different feats too obscene to be mentioned. While Bathing, some one stole the keys of the Harney's Cask from the Steward, and the consequence was, that before Morning the Harney's Cask was emptied of its contents. After they were done bathing, some of the Ladies expressed A Desire for A Boat sail. So A boat was soon loaded with them and Patterson taking Charge of her, away they went all round the Harbour singing and cheering, they finally stopped at the Heoka where the Ladies got out for A short time, and four of them taking Possession of the Heoka's head, turned their Bare Posteriors towards the Leander, (who was close by) & shouting out Look and Weep! Let Fly at full Charge from their double Batterys! Oh! it was Shameful! More than Shameful! They Returned in time for Supper, After which Several of them Rigged themselves out complete in Whale Attire, while as many of the Men Put on the Womens Clothes, and away they went clambering up the Rigging,



## 342 Wilcox Pays For All.

Screaming and shouting so as to attract the attention of every ship in the Harbour & even the people on shore. The girls then came Aft into the cabin to show themselves to the Mate, But, he poor Soul said there so Sick that he was unable to see, and all this time the second Mate, (who was but little better than the Mate) Was on the quarter deck Encouraging them in all their Mad Pranks, and you would think he was going to laugh until his sides split; every once in a while crying out Go it Gals! Wilcox Pays for all! I like to see a little fun once in a while Myself; But, it was fairly disgusting to see the way they were allowed to carry on here. And thinks I to Myself if Wilcox, or Davis, was here now to see it, they would ever after take a little pains to Enquire into the Character of their Captains & officers, as well as into the Boatsweepers; for there was those here that would never have allowed such licence. But, the Officers (as they call them) were on board And no one else had a Right to speak. But, every thing must have an end, and as the Mates were keel out, & the Fidler also, we had no dancing to night, and After singing a few songs, they all turned in early & I managed to get a good sleep to night. Continued on Page 319.

And my reason for skipping from Page 318 to 331 was that I never could get a chance to write while the ship was floating Brothel; So I just took notes with a Pencil & wrote this since we left, skipping 12 Pages to keep my Regular Sea account upon.



# St Helena Harbour. 343

And now for what little description I can give you of St Helena. The Island itself is about ninety miles in circumference; The Harbour or anchorage being on the North Side of the Island, and there is about one square Mile of Anchorage ground from 11 to 35 fathoms of Water. Dozens of Ships drop anchor daily to get water which is supplied them by Water Tanks that are always on hand, so that a Vessel has to never lay over one day, and as it lies right in the track of all Vessels coming Round the Cape of Good Hope, bound to any part of Europe or America, it is nothing uncommon to see from 30 to 60 Vessels at day Pass in Sight of the anchorage. The greater Part of which, only show their Numbers not being in Want of Water: or short Handed, which is the case with a great many & others having Men Sick stop to Land them here, The Hospital being free to all Nations; And for the Support of it, Each Vessel that Anchors Pays a Tonnage Fee of one Penny per Ton. The Entry Fee is five Shillings & Clearance Fee the same. Time Ball Fee five Shillings; This is a large white Ball hoisted on a Signal Staff in Plain Sight of the Shipping for the Purpose of giving Vessels a chance to Rate their Chronometers & set their Watches. It drops at one o'clock Island Mean Time, and again at one o'clock Greenwich Mean Time. and this is all the Expence a Vessel incurs that anchors there, let her lay as long as she likes.



### 344 Port Regulations.

Consequently our Vessel being 171 Tons, her whole Port Expenses here is, One Pound, Nine Shillings, and Three Pence Sterling. Price of Water Three Shillings & Seven Pence per Ton that is, 252 Gallons. If one Vessel sells anything either in Large or Small quantity's to another Vessel, they must get a Permit from the Custom House, for which they pay Ten Shillings as Transshipment Fee. Any Vessel who is Quarantined, Pays a Fee of One Pound Ten Shillings per day, & has Medical attendance gratis. No Boat is allowed go alongside of any Vessel until she is Boarded by the Health Officer & shows a White flag at the Main. If a Yellow one, she is Quarantined and not admitted to intercourse under a heavy Penalty. Rate of Boat Hire. For one Person going or returning, One Shilling; For every additional Passenger, Six Pence. For a Letter Message, or Parcel, ~~25~~ Pounds weight One Shilling & Sixpence. Over 25 & under 100, One Shilling & Sixpence. For every additional 100 Sixpence. For every hour detained alongside of a Vessel One Shilling. No Licensed Passenger Boat, can refuse to take any Passenger between the Hours of Sunrise, and Sunset to any Ship lying at anchor in the Harbour or to lay alongside if Required to wait, under Penalty of forfeiting their Licence. The Draw Bridge is raised at half Past Nine P.M., and the Town Gates closed, and are opened again at Five O'clock in the Morning. In the Year ending November 30<sup>th</sup> 1857. 314



The Landing, And Fortifications. 345  
Seamen without expence to the ships were Received  
into this Hospital & Provided for. The Latitude  
of This Island is  $15^{\circ} 55' 26''$  South. And Longitude  
 $5^{\circ} 42' 30''$  West, or in Time,  $0^{\circ} 22' 50''$ . We will  
Now Look at the Valley of Larne Town, and  
its Fortifications. The Harbour is half Moon  
Shaped & at each extremity a high Rocky bluff  
upon each of which is strong Forts built  
into the solid Rock and Fortifications or  
Breastworks in front, and you can see the  
Mouths of the Cannon Peeping down upon  
you, some hundreds of them from 5 to 7  
Hundred feet above your head. On the West  
Bluff is the Signal Station & when once  
you get acquainted with the Signals, you  
can tell whether it is a Whaler, Merchant  
man, Steamer or Man of War that is coming  
Hours before they be in sight of the  
Shipping. At the East Bluff is the Landing  
Place both for Cargo & Passengers. All  
Cargo is taken in Lighters, & they have  
Moors outside of the Breakers (which  
never cease Breaking more or less) And  
there is a large Crane that swings out  
over them to which the Goods are hoisted  
and then swung in onto the Jetty or Pier.  
There is another Crane also, for landing  
Passengers in Rough Weather. The Pier or  
Jetty is built down from the solid Rock, &  
is about 50 or 60 feet in width, with a  
solid Stone wall fronting the Sea. After  
landing you walk along the Pier about  
a quarter of a Mile when you come to a



## B46 Ladder Hill.

Boat about 30 feet in width & 25 in depth. Over which is a Draw Bridge; you pass through this, and you find yourself in a Passage of about 70 feet in width; a fine gravel bottom & as level as it can be. To your Right hand, on the inner side of the Boat, there is high Breastworks, behind which there is numerous Large Guns & huge Piles of Balls, also a good number of Mortars for throwing shells. To the Left is a Wall about 30 feet in height and about the same in thickness, This runs along all the way across the Valley which is about half a mile wide & Terminates at Ladder Hill, (so named on account of a Stairway going up the Rock to the signal station in which there is 665 steps) after following the Avenue or Passage, about half way you come to the Principle Gate & passing through this you find yourself at the commencement of James Town. To your Right stands the Custom House, The St Helena Hotel, The Jail & The Church of England & To your Left The Governors House & gardens & The Police Station House. Walk straight Forward & you are in Main Street, on both sides of which are the principal Commercial Houses, Giddison & Sons, Solomon & Harse, Carroll & Hemble & many other Petty Firms. The different Foreign Consulates also reside on this Street which is very short and broad.



## A View Of James Town. 347

and ends abruptly, two other Streets branching from it, one to the Right & the other to the Left. The one to the Right is called Market Street from The Market being at its entrance, here you cross over another Bridge that is built over a Stream of Water that is constantly running & carries away all the offal from both Meat & Fish Markets. Market Street Takes you right Through the Centre of the Valley which gradually narrows until you get to the Hospital which is called one mile from the Waters Edge This is about the End of dwellings in James Town. All the way up Market Street there is different alleys ways which have no name but what the Sailors have given them such as Radcliff Highway, Booble Alley, Black Sea, Crow Bay, Skinning Lane, &c, &c. Those alleys lead to all the Back Buildings or Flats, Built of Rough Stones on spots of Ground cut out to level, on the side hill or Rock, most of them having the Rock itself for one wall, the Rooms many of them having the Rock for a Floor also, & not being over 10 foot square the largest of them. Still the Rent of those are from three to Five dollars Per Month. They are all occupied by Poor Women who have no other means of getting a Living but by prostituting themselves to the Soldiers who are here and the Sailors who come here & as far as I could see for Myself & learn from



## 348 The Inhabitants.

others, virtue is a scarce commodity on this Island. The lower Part of Market Street is mostly Grocery, Provision, & Clothing Stores, with no small sprinkling of Taverns or Grog Shops. The upper, and by far the larger Part are occupied as Brothels of a higher caste. But what surprised me most was to find that nine tenths of the Prostitutes who were nearly in a starving condition, were in different ways related to the Wealthiest and most influential families of the Place & some of them even Natural Daughters & Grand Daughters. Indeed they are to be pitied for many of them are inclined to be virtuous if they had any means to do so & not starve; And this is one of Boasting Old England's Colonies! Well may they cry Old England, what have you come to! The left hand street which branches from Main Street, is called Napoleon Street, and those three are all the Streets that are in the Place, It is occupied by what are called Respectable Dwellings, But, I saw very little difference, with this exception that they were somewhat more private about it. And in fact, take them all through they beat all for Easy Virtue of any place I have ever saw or heard of. Napoleon Street Runs about the height of a Mile and then you are past all the Houses & the Road winds up the side of the hill on a gradual ascent until you arrive at Longwood a distance of four Miles, here lies the Tomb of the Far famed Napoleon Buonaparte! I found



## Napoleons Tomb.

349

The Place Occupied By French Soldiers, Sailors, & Officers, who were turning the Place Topsey Turvy, (For the French have Bought the Place from the English) I being their intention to spare no Expence to Beautify & Revere the Place; And said one of the Officers to me, if you should visit this Island Three years hence, it will be worth your while to visit the Tomb. Thenon said he you will see one Grand Spectacle; One Grand Tomb, with Napoleon (Taking his hat off as he mentioned the Name) Standing thereon in a Statue of Gold Facing the Sea. I tried hard to get a Sprig of the Willow Tree at the entrance of the Tomb But it had been so much defaced by Visitors heretofore, that it looked miserable; And he informed me that he would like to oblige me, But, it would cost him his Commission to allow as much as a single sprig to be carried off without the Imperial Permission. I took a Look at the Old House Where Napoleon Resided whilst they were Building the Pavilion in Which he Resided until his Death & Which the French Officers now Live. I then visited What was called Napoleons Walk, a Road where he used to Ride & Walk as he felt inclined. This The French have also purchased and they informed that it was to be converted into a Beautiful Avenue Shaded with Trees. The Name of The Place is Longwood & Can be Plainly seen from The Anchorage. And as I turned to retrace my steps to Town I could not help Remarking to my Companion That the



## 350 Their Farms.

French People Venerated that man as A God! And although every thing looked Fresh and Green as smiling Nature could make it, yet! there appeared to be A Solemnity about the Place, that created sadening thoughts in spite of oneself. This thought I is the last resting Place & Prison of One of the most Ambitious Men that Ever Existed in This World. During my stay I visited Several of the Principle Farms, Hunts Gate, The Brians, & Dead Wood; Nearly the Whole Face of The Island after you arrive on top is Good Arable Land, with A Light Rich Soil on the Table Lands, But Very Stony on the Hill sides, where there is Plenty of Funge Trees which is the Principle Wood Burnt on the Island. Most of The Tilable Land is owned by A Few Wealthy Individuals who will neither Till it Themselves or let others have it who would, But, I was Told by A Number of the Islanders, (who are Termed, Gam Stocks) that the Gam Stocks in General were Prone to Idleness, and would not work until Hunger drove them to it But, would rather see their Wives & Daughters prostitute themselves for what they could eat drink & wear, while they sauntered about the Town in Idleness. What surprised me most was to find they used no such thing as Ploughs or harrows, but tilled all their Land with Spade & Hoe. They Raise A Few Potatoes, Cabbages, Pumpkins, Beets, A Sort of Turnip called Noco's, and A Few Other Garden Vegetables; But, not



# Island Produce.

351

Enough to supply Larnestown, which contains  
A Population of Three Thousand Inhabitants.  
They raise A few Pigs, But, All the Sheep and  
Cattle come from the Cape of Good Hope.  
Some few of the Farmers raise A little Corn  
Wheat & Rye & They have one Grist mill that  
goes by steam The Only Engine on the Island.  
Nearly all the Potatoes, Beans, Pease, Grain,  
Salt, Clothing, Boots, Shoes, Caps, & Hats, as  
well as various other articles of Consumption  
& wear, are Brought to the Island from other  
Places; They being too Lazy to raise the one,  
Or Make the other. The Only Fruit I saw  
Was Pears, Peaches, Grapes, & Pomegranates,  
and them of A very Poor quality. A good Old  
New England Farmer could Realize A  
Fortune here in A very few years, For  
Thousands of Vessels Touch here every year  
who would give any Price for vegetables  
if they could get them But, they cannot.  
The Chief Living of The Inhabitants is Rice  
& Fish, Albacore, Boneta, & A small kind  
of Mackerel that abounds here all the  
Year round. Beef is 25 cents Per Pound  
Pork 20 cents, Mutton 25 cents, Fowl Seven  
dollars & A half, A dozen, Potatoes 4 Dollars  
A Bushel, & everything else in Proportion.  
Clothing or Shoe Leather or in fact any  
Article ~~you~~ want, you have to pay  
about three times the Home Price. And  
the Highest wages Paid for labour here  
is, Seventy five cents Per day and find yourself.  
And Thus Ends My Remarks on St Helena.



## 352 Anabona Island.

Friday The Tenth day of April 1857, As the Sun Made his appearance on the Horizon, We Saw Bearing N E, from us, & about 25 miles distant the Island of Anabona & by some called St Matthew, And lies in the Latitude of one degree & thirty two miles South. And Longitude of Five degrees & Forty five miles East from Greenwich. After getting our Breakfast, we Broke out the Slop bark & got out a Lot of Blue & White Cloth Ready for Trading, & then Bent the cables. About 10 AM, we were within six miles of the Island, When a Canoe Passed us, in which were three Naked Negroes Shouting with all the strength of their Lungs, Capten haul aback Fly Tib! Tiddy! (Steady) Give a Rope! Give a Rope! Tiddy! Capten! Stop Ship! Tiddy!. But, stop we would not, And our Old Dog Tiger, went Flying fore & aft! in and out of the Boats Barking furiously & Frothing at the Mouth whilst his Ears, Tail, and every hair on his Back stood Erect, & the Fire fairly flashed from his Eyes as he caught sight of the Naked Negroes & their Red Caps, ever & anon looking up into some of our faces with a Piteous whine, as much as to ask what in the Name of God are they! or, Oh! If I could only get at them!. At last one of the Canoes came so close that one of the Natives Grasped one of the Starboard Boat Grifes, & let the Canoe Pass astern. Old Tiger Being Busy watching the Canoe did not observe him until he got on the Rail & Spoke. When turning round, with a Fearful Howl of Rage he Sprang at him, But, the Negro took



# Tiger, And The Negroes. 353

to the Rigging & Old Tig Making a Leap into the Boat nearly had him by the Throat before he got out of Reach. The dog then Placed his fore feet in the Rigging & set up a most dismal Howl & I believe if he could have got at him, he would have torn him to Pieces; But, to save my soul I could not help laughing my fill as well as every one else, while the Captain once in a while would say, look out for him Tig. until the Mate hinted to him, that it might make it Bad for Trade; which he, Good Sensible Man! never thought of Before; So the Dog was called away, and the Negro made to come down; The Captain then took the Dog, & made him smell the Negro, (who was trembling with fear) and give him his Paw to shake, which was a declaration of Peace on Tiger's Part. Still as he walked away slowly towards the Main hatch, where we all stood laughing he would turn & show his Teeth with a Low Growl, as much as to say, Don't you! I don't know about you yet! But I'll watch you. At 3 P.M. we came to an Anchor in seven fathoms of Water & Sandy Bottom; on the N.W. side of the Island about half a Mile from the Beach. On this Side of the Island the Shoal water extends a long way Seaward & is said to be a great Resort for the Female Humpback Whale, in the Calving Season from July until October. Abreast of the Ship was a large level of a Couple of Miles Square on which was situated the Town of St Matthew. We had no sooner let go the Anchor than the Canoes came crowding



### 354 Arabona Fruits.

Around us & the Natives climbing to the decks. Most of them could talk English. A little & all could talk Portuguese & African. Each canoe had something in her for trade although in very small quantities, Oranges that were so Bitter & Sour that you could not eat them although they looked very fine to the eye. Green Coconuts, Pine Apples, Passifloras, or Mummy Apples, Mustard Apples, Bananas, Sugar cane, Limes, Birds Eye & Red Peppers, Fancy Baskets, and Sweet Potatoes, a few Sweet Potatoes, very small in size & you would never see one of them bring more than a quart at a time, and a very few small watery yams, of which we procured enough while we laid there, for two meals in the cabin. We commenced our Trading, with One Porpoise & the Blubber of another Both of which we caught the Night Previous; And for this we got Stuff enough to make fifty Coconut Brooms, a Barrel of limes, fifty Coconuts, and 6 Bunches of Bananas, We then got out the Scraps of the Blackfish we had caught on the 7<sup>th</sup> of December Previous, which were all about & stuck together in one lump; Yet for about One Pound of them we could get 8 Coconuts, four Pine Apples, 100 Limes, a quart of Potatoes, 6 Eggs, or enough stuff for a Broom. And as soon as they got hold of them they would cram their mouths full & chew away singing out very good. As soon as they were used up we stopped Trading for the day, excepting what any of



King Jimmy Hadley. 355

we chose to buy for our own Private use. which we could do for Tobacco, Rifles, Old worn out clothes, knives, fish Hooks, Bits of Old Lead, and in fact for almost anything. Whilst we were Trading I was greatly amused by the arrival of their King on board, who was introduced to our Captain as King Jimmy Hadley. He came in a canoe with his interpreter having a Piece of white cloth flying from a Pole as his colors. The Interpreter having been taken off the Island some years ago by an english ship, had but, a short time ago returned, & he spoke Good English, & sported a full short suit of Blue cloth; his Name was Jack Flowers. King Jimmy was dressed in quite a fanciful manner having on, an old and dirty Calico shirt, a half worn Black Silk Vest, a Pair of Jersey Draws to answer for Pants, a Pair of long white Stockings that came over his knees, & his Draws tied down over them, like a Paddy's knee Breeches! a Pair of Low Shoes, one a thick one & the other a thin one; a cloak made of Red Flannel, about large enough for a Girl of ten years, thrown over his shoulders, an Old Bell Crowned Hat, that had been so long in use that not a vestige of Fur remained on it, covered his Hinky Head! Over which he carried an old Yellow Cotton Umbrella, which I suppose was to keep the Sun from Bleaching his Royal Highness any Whiter, For at the Present time I think Coal Tar would make a white Mark on him.



## 356 Crown Property.

This completed the attire of our illustrious Visitor. I was informed by Jack Flowers that none of this comical Rig belonged to the King, But, was Crown Property, for that every one had a chance of becoming King, when the Royal Garments were of course given up to him. One Man was King until Twelve Ships or Barks Anchored at the Island & left again he receiving all Presents as Port fees from them, as his own Private Property. When the twelfth vessel Left, his Office was taken by the next in turn & the Royal Rig transferred to him & so on. The Present King had with him besides the Interpreter, This Steward as he called him, who had on an Old Patched Red Shirt, and a Bell Toppers which was all the clothing he could sport. This Majesty was invited into the cabin where he was Presented with a Glass of Rum, and a few Fathoms of White Cotton Cloth, he then came on deck where the Captain gave him about five Pounds of Porpoise Meat & as many of the Blubber, adding a Bucket full of Scraps & a Bottle of Rum; which so delighted him that he danced about the decks (Much against the will of Old Tiger who showed his teeth, uttering low growls of dissatisfaction at such strange Proceedings) & gave his Royal Permission to open Trade Forthwith. They were so thick on deck, that we would have to call on the Dog occasionally to make a Passage way for us, And Oh! with what delight he would clear the decks for any one.



Schooner John C Smith.

357

At sundown they all left but the Royal Trio who remained all night stuck to Poor Tigers Chragrin who never slept a wink all night for watching them. The Schooner John C Smith Captain Anderson of N London came to anchor here this evening. She was nine months from Home & had seen Sperm Whales but once. and had taken but fifteen Barrels of Humpback Oil. Anderson, who was a Negro came Onboard of us and Gammed until nine in the Evening; And his Sable Majesty Jimmy Hadly, was in extacies of delight to see one of his own color Master of a Kipel. All his Officers & crew being White men, who gave Captain Anderson the Name of Being as fine a Man as they had ever sailed with before. We stood Anchor Watches to night, The Boatsweepers & the Ship Keeper. On Saturday the Eleventh, Our Friends, (for each one of us had a Black friend of his own) came off with some Green Coconuts Limes & Pine Apples; After Breakfast I went onshore with the two Captains to trade for Wood & While they were busy at Trading I went off to look at the Town & Inhabitants. I came Back in the afternoon and found that Our Captain had just got through Trading for five Boat Loads, at the Rate of Five fathoms of Cloth a Boat load. So I loaded my boat & went off, when all three Boats went in, & by sundown we had it all off to the Ship. While we were on shore Trading, they were Busy onboard of



358 James Patterson, And  
sending down the Fore Top Gallant mast  
to fit new cross trees & sent it up again.  
And also nailing Strips of Calves & Lead over-  
seams in her Starboard quarter where they  
said it would not Bear Corking, for the  
Old Doctor Leaks just as bad, if not worse  
than she did before we corked her At St  
Helena. The Two Captains had another  
gam this Night, and The Sprigs of Royalty  
also remained on board of us all Night. The  
John C Smith makes Jimmy Hudleys  
Ninth Vessel, consequently when three more  
arrives his Sovereignty is to an end. On  
Sunday the 12<sup>th</sup> all hands were called at  
Daylight and we Broke out two Barrels of  
Beef at 15 dollars Per Barrel, One Barrel of  
Pork at 18 dollars, 160 Pounds of Bread, some  
Tea, Beans, Soap, & A Box of Tobacco, for the  
John C Smith who was short of those  
articles. It appeared that Patterson and  
Mr Edgerton had some words at the Fore  
Hatchway this Morning about working  
on Sunday & that the Mate had gone into  
the Cabin & made Complaint to the Captain.  
I was to work on the House abast, and  
the first I knew of it, was hearing The  
Captain call Patterson aft; The Captain  
Met him by the After Part of the Try Works  
And I heard him say, How dare you insult  
My Mate! At the same time, Striking him  
in the face with his right fist, & he repeated  
the Blow twice more before Patterson  
showed any Resistance. At the third Blow



# The Captain, Fight. 359

Patterson Pitched into him knocking him over against the Rail, where he begged him two or three times; When Mr Edgerton ran and caught Pattersons arms behind him, The Captain then Struck him several times about the head & Jugular which completely Stunned him, and then told the Mate to let go of him; As soon as he did the Captain Struck him a couple more blows which knocked him down, & three times as Patterson attempted to rise, he knocked him down again Patterson then said still; And the Captain asked him, What did you strike me for! Patterson Made answer, I only defended myself! Or tried to do so, and if there is any Justice to be had I will make you pay for this when we get Home The Captain Replied, You struck me first, and I can Prove it, & I will now give you salt water for it too. Patterson Replied, You know Better that I did not Sir until you Struck me three Times. The Captain then cried out, Do you want any more or have you got enough of it, Say! quick!. Patterson then Made answer; I cannot get fair Play here, and another thing I am not on an equal footing with you here! You are Captain & I only a Boatswain. Damn you! Replied the Captain, I will give you fair Play; as any of the Rest either. Then Turning towards the crew he cried out, Does any more of you want to try it! if you do, come on! No one making him any answer, he again turned to Patterson and said; If you want to leave the ship I will lower a Boat for you, and Put you



## 360 Peace Restored.

on the Beach now! No! replied Patterson I don't want to leave her now. The Captain then turned & went below & Patterson got up & went below also, and turned in to his Berth. The Captain had his right cheek skinned, and a Black eye. All the Marks I could see about Patterson was a Swelled Lip, But, he must have been sore about the Head & Body; At all events he kept his Berth the whole day after it. At Breakfast time the Captain told the Mate's that he never wanted them to interfere when he had a Row, unless called upon. But, in my opinion if there had been no interference, he would have come out Second Best. And I could pick out as many as eight of the Ships Company that he challenged, that would whip him in less than ten Minutes. After Breakfast we went in with two Boats & after Landing the Captain to Trade, we commenced Boating off wood & By 2 P.M., we got off Seven Stone Boat Loads, which was all we were to get, and it was full of Centipede's Bait, not of a Poisonous kind. I then went in for the Captain & finding him busy trading I obtained Permission to go have a Look at the Place. I found it was composed of about 200 Houses or Huts, Built of Bamboo & other small wood & Thatched with the Leaves of the Coconut Tree, Most of them were very small & all of them but one Story. Still each one had two compartments one for sleeping, and the other for Kitchen, Carbour,



# Anaborna Houses.

361

Dining, & Sitting Room. The Bare earth for  
A Floor, and in the Sleeping Rooms, all you  
could see was a few Grass Mats Spread on  
the Bare Ground for A Bed without any  
thing for covering. The Other rooms had  
in the Centre, Three or four Stones laid in  
A circle, inside of which they kept their fires  
for cooking, and as there was no regular outlet  
for the Smoke, They were as Black inside as  
our Regular Smoke houses to home. All the  
Furniture that I could see, was some Rough  
looking Benches to sit upon, and in some of  
them an Occasional old Sea Chest, that they  
had got from Ships visiting here. Some had  
an Iron Pot to Cook in, but, most of them  
were earthen Pots that they had in use. For  
Dishes they used the Shells of Coconuts and  
Calabashes, with an occasional tin Cup  
that came from the Shipfiring, with fingers  
for knives, forks & Spoons. And to those A  
Couple of wooden Troughs or Trays, for  
kneading the Cassava Meal, & you have A  
full account of the interior of their dwell-  
ings. They are of The regular woolly headed  
African Race & when you come in close  
Proximity with them, they smell Abominably  
strong & disagreeable; I could not get any  
where near to A Woman except the very  
oldest of them, and two or three times in  
Turning A corner Sharply I found myself  
close to some young women, Who with screams  
of affright, dropped everything they were  
Busy at and fled Precipitately towards the



## 362 The Inhabitants.

woods & if I made it start as if I would follow them, they Redoubled their speed & their screams. Upon asking Jack Flowers, the Reason of this he informed that some eight or ten years ago it was not so, that ships used to come there and give their then Liberty, and the young girls were quite eager to bestow their attentions & Favours, in return for the various little articles & ornaments they got from Jack Tar. But, by & by, a fatal & loathsome disease Broke out amongst them, that they knew nothing about & could not cure, until it had carried Quite a number of them to their Graves. And finding it originated from the Sailors they ever since would fly in the greatest alarm, on the approach of any of this Species of the Salt Water Tribe. The elder Portion of the Females however remained in the Flat, And what amused me most was the then, one or two of which was standing at nearly every Flat And all of them had English names, that were given to them by the different Sailors that visit the Island. Those names they appeared to be very Proud of, and would tell them as soon as you came near them. My Name Billy Buck the Goat Sah! Very good Man Sah! Chaw Tabac Please Sah! My Name Light Finger Tom Sah! Best Man on the Island Sah! Sabe Sah! Chaw Tabac Please Sah! There was Dick Tuspin, Pirate Kid, Ben Backstay, Slush Bucket, Tar Pot, Watch This fellow, Head Rogue, Great Rogue, Sby Rogue & Never come Back. Black Ball Bill. Liverpool Prig, &



## Their Propensities.

363

Yankee swindler, & a hundred or more other quaint names, which they all said meant, Good fellow & Best man on the Island, not forgetting to add Chaw Tabac (Tobacco) Please Sah!. In fact I found that the greater part of them, were great Liars, & thieves whenever they got a chance and as a specimen of it, I bought a new shirt on board yesterday evening that one of them offered for sale on the quarter deck for a Round of Tobacco, & shortly afterwards found that he had stolen it from forward. But, one and all are great Beggars. From the Houses I took a turn round the suburbs where every thing looked fresh & green, The Soil appeared to be rich & fertile, But, the Natives are too lazy to cultivate it. There was plenty of Lime Trees, Pauferias, Orange, Coconuts, Palm, & Jack fruit Trees. I saw also plenty of Pine Apple Plants, & Wild Yam Vines, enough to convince me that they could raise a plenty of every thing, if they liked, or were not too lazy or probably they don't know how, still they ought to, for the Place has been a long time settled; it belongs to the Portuguese, and there is I should think, about 1000 inhabitants. They embrace the Roman Catholic faith, and have a Black Priest with them, that has been Educated at Lisbon. He was very sick while we were there, and the Captain let him have some Medicines. The Church, was a Large Board Building of one story height, about 100 feet in length and over 40 in width. With the altar at the farther end



## 364 Church, And Town.

and the Door at the End facing the Town. As you entered it, on either hand was a Holy Water Basen of Stone, & fixed to the Side of the Building. There were no seats, or benches whatever, which makes me think that each family brings the Rough benches I saw in the Huts. The Floor was the Bare earth & is also used as the Burial Place, And there was quite a number of Flat Smooth stones level with the Floor, having epitaphs upon them to mark the Resting Places of the departed Negroes. There was no Church to day, on account of the Church being always used as a Trading Mart when there are any Ships here. although the Sexton Rang the Bell at the Regular Periods for Service, so that all who were not Busy trading, might attend to their devotions in their own houses. And here were we Two Vessels from an Enlightened and Christian Country, Setting them a Good Example, by Breaking Unnecessarily the Sabbath day ourselves, besides inducing them to do the same, No wonder that Missionaries do not like to have Whale ships visit Places where their Missions are established. One thing I could not help Remark, was their having the Town in the Very Hottest & most sickly Part of the Island, which is Quite high in some Places, and I should think about thirty Miles in Circumference, being Situated where the Southeast Trades Blows steadily all the year round; And the Town being on a Low



## Settling our Accounts. 365

Flat, on the Northwest side of the Island, not  
A Breath of air is to be had, which the natives  
appear to like. And I was told that some  
Whites had tried to settle among them several  
times, But, found they could not live there  
& enjoy their health. At sundown we came  
off with what fruit and Potatoes we  
had got, the Principle of Which was  
Coconuts, Pine Apples, Bananas, and a  
few small & warm eaten Potatoes. All  
the skippers went onshore as usual; and  
The Royal Family went on board of the  
J. C. S. where they spent the Night. Early  
Next Morning being Monday, We got everything  
Clear for leaving up & Loosed the Fore Topsail  
The J. C. Smith getting ready also. The Captain  
then Told us to settle with our Friends, and  
send them off. I told mine I had nothing to  
give him! He got nothing for John Bull!  
Best Man on the Island Lah! No John, I have  
got nothing, suppose me had something, I give  
it to you, But, me no got it John!. This made  
the Poor fellow look very down hearted, and  
more especially so, as the Rest were showing  
each other their Presents, Laughing at John,  
and each one, declaring his Particular Friend,  
to be the Best Man in the Ship. At Last I  
took John below and gave him a couple  
of Old Shirts, a Pair of Trowsers, a Pound of  
Tobacco, 6 Pipes, 6 Fish hooks, some Lead for  
Sinkers, a few needles & some thread, a Sheath  
Knife & a hat full of Blackfish Scraps  
that I had saved Purposely for him. I could



## 366 Farewell To Anabona.

scarcely keep him until I gave him the whole  
his Eyes Sparkling with delight; But, when  
I crowned all with the Serapes, away he flew  
up the Stairs with a Whoop that made  
everyone gaze after him, & Striking up a  
Song to which he danced in the Waist, cutting  
new figures & difficult Steps that would  
have made a French dancing Master hang  
his head in despair. The Captain having  
settled with the Royal tribe, Sold Two  
gallons of New England Rum to the King  
for a five dollar Gold Piece, & as soon as  
he got into his canoe, the Dog was let  
loose, and Lord how the Niggers Flew  
some Jumping right into the Sea, But,  
one poor fellow who was not soon enough  
had the calf of his leg nearly taken off before  
we could stop the dog, who thought it was  
glorious fun, While his Brute of a Master,  
now that he had got all he could of the poor  
Negrois, Was Laughing heartily & crying out  
Let him alone! Let him alone! I want him to  
Learn to bite a Nigger. But, the Niggers were  
all gone, and while some were shouting in  
their canoes, No Goat Captain! No Goat Dog!  
Others were crying out goat Bye! to their  
different Friends. And above all I could hear  
John Bull, with a Roar that would not disgrace  
his Namesake, crying Out, Goat Bye Tar! Goat  
Bye Tar! Best man in the Ship! So as we were  
all Best man in the Ship, we Thumped The Windlass  
at 5 o'clock, the I & S, following Suit. After getting our Anchors  
we both stood away to the westward with a fine Breeze, and  
at sundown the Island was just visible in the Eastern horizon.



# Port Habenda Africa. 367

Habenda, Africa. This Place we visited twice during our Voyage (See Pages 99 & 143) Where I have give some little description of the Place But, not as fully as I wished to. Habenda is situated in a small Bay, or Bay that makes in to the Coast, and is almost an Open Roadstead. It lies in Lat  $5^{\circ} 40'$  South. & Long  $12^{\circ} 03'$  East. It is visited by Numbers of Whalers of late years for the Purpose of getting Wood, Water & Vegetables which they have in Great Plenty every Season that they have Rain. But, when it is a dry Season, as it was the first time we were there; It is so hot that the Earth Bakes hard, & they cannot raise more than enough for their own consumption. But, the last time 1858. everything was in a flourishing condition, we were about a Month too soon however, for to get a good recruit, July being the best Month to visit this Place. It is a good Place to get water, and a handy place to get wood, But, the Wood is not of a very good quality being Spongy & as it is cut about two foot in length & split very fine it takes up a great deal of Room, and is consumed very fast. We paid four yards of Blue or white Cotton Cloth for 220 sticks, and it would take eight or nine hundred to make a Boat Load. Every Whaler who gets wood & water here Besides the above has to pay to the head Thing, Ten dollars in Cash or Trade as Port fees before they can



## 368 Habenda crew Men.

Get wood or water. Then there is three more Things under him, each one of Grade lower than the Other; Thing Pookatah, Thing Duck & Thing Batch; Those three all come on board & must have their Presents of cloth, Beef, Pork, Bread, Molasses, and in fact anything they think they can get by incessantly begging for it, and to take it all in all things turn out to be dearer than if you bought them in at Christian Port for Money. The Place is considered very unhealthy & all the Vessels generally hire of Boats crew of the Natives to get off their wood & Water, to whom they give two yards of cotton cloth, or 25 cents a day, and as the Habenda Men are considered the most enlightened & smartest working Men on the Coast; Most of the African Traders employ from eight to a dozen of them so as not to expose their Seamen to the searching heat of the midday sun or the very heavy dews that fall on this Coast of nights. Those so employed are called, crew Men, and are to be found all along the coast, as each vessel discharges them wherever she finishes her cargo, & they remain there until another chance offers. You cannot offer at Habenda Man a worse insult than to call him a Nigger although they are the genuine Congo Tribe. He will tell you, that the Men who live in the Bush are Niggers, But, Habenda Man is Habenda Man; all the same as White Man



and no Nigger. Those others are never sold into Slavery unless they have by some means offended their head King, who will either have them sold or cut their Heads off. None of us ever saw the head King who keeps himself quite secluded. Each Habesda Man is allowed to have as many Wives as he likes, But he must pay the Head King 10 dollars for each one before he can have any connexion with her, excepting the first one, who goes free, after he has paid this she is his to work for him, or he can sell her to any other Habesda Man, But, not as a Slave to a White Man. If any Habesda Man is caught having connexion with another Mans Wife or Wives he forfeits either his head or his liberty, and if sold as a Slave, The deceived husband takes one half & the King the other, The Price of a Full Grown & healthy Slave being Forty dollars here. But, Still they will deliver any of their Wives to the Embraces of a White Man for a very slight gratuity & think themselves highly honored in the bargain. They embrace no religion, and are very superstitious, Every one of them carrying his little Wooden God or Giddy Gilly! as they call them with them, to protect them from all accidents, Treachery, or sickness. Still they will sell their little Gods to any one, for a Trifle, But, first they must ask the consent of some other Niggers Giddy Gilly! who some how or another, always consents, to have his little Brother God, sold off.



## 370 A Slave Barracoon.

There is, about one Mile from the Watering Place  
A Barracoon or Slave Depot, Thwart by An  
Old Portuguese called Don Pedro & three or  
four more Portuguese his assistants. I visited  
this Place, where I saw four or five Hundred  
Negroes, Men, Women & Children, all Penned  
up Together, and as naked as they were Born  
It was A most Pitiabable & disgusting Sight to  
behold. While I stood Gazing at them They  
were served with Dinner. This consisted of  
Boiled Beans & Cassada Roots. This Mese was  
Put in Tubs that would hold from eight  
to ten gallons & Placed in diferent Parts  
of the Pen; And the Poor unfortunates Crow-  
ded round them, with clam & mussel  
shells to supply the Place of Spoons. I  
could not look any longer but, turned, and  
left their Vilanous Precincts, and if I had only  
had my will for A few moments, I would  
have Gratified myself by gazing on five  
Portuguese dancing A Fandango on Nothing  
but Air. Those Poor Negroes A few days  
Afterwards were Put on board The Petrel  
of New York, commanded by Captain Bishop  
and taken off for Cuba; Although there  
was two Men of Wars Launches watching  
her day & Night. The way they Managed it  
was thus; The Petrel Got under weigh about  
12. O'clock in the day, bidding us all good Bye.  
Stating they were Bound for the River Congo  
to take in some Palm Oil. At Sundown  
she could Just be discerned in the Horizon  
The Men of Wars Boats still being suspicious



## Shipping Off Slaves.

371

Placed themselves, one each side of the Harbour, so that nothing could pass in, or out of the Harbour with being seen. This was just what the Portuguese wanted. He having sent out over a dozen large canoes that day as if to go Fishing. At dark the Petrel stood in again, about four miles above Flabinda where the slaves had been marched to, and the canoes being there according to agreement the slaves were put onboard & she made good her escape without any opposition. Myself and Patterson had a little adventure the first time we were in this place, that I never shall forget. We had the 25<sup>th</sup> day of September 1857, given to our Watch to take a Run on Shore, with Orders to come Onboard at Sundown. The day we passed traveling all over the place, skylarking with the natives & their women, and frightening the children, until we were fairly tired out ourselves. So as it was near Sundown we started for the Beach. On the way we met a man who gave his name as Rich, who appeared very glad to see us, and invited us to come to the house where he lived and take a glass of liquor and have a little chat. We told him we were sorry we had not seen him before, as we were to be onboard by Sundown, or we would lose the Boat & so not be able to get off. This objection he soon overruled by informing us that he could furnish us a way to get onboard whenever we wished to go. So I consented to it, and the more so, as he was well acquainted at New



## 372 The Captain, & Harpooneers.

Orleans & had not been very long away from there. He informed us that he had come out to the coast as Sailing Master of the Bark Splendid of New York for a cargo of Negroes. The Captain Officers & half the crew being Portuguese, & himself & the other half were Americans. They had bought & paid for their cargo & only waited for night to take them & be off, When a Portuguese Man of war came in sight & finding they could not escape her, he took the Boat & the Americans & left her in spite of the Portuguese who tried to stop them. They kept the Bark between them & the Man of War, who did not discover them until they were out of gunshot, They sent one of their Boats in chase but, night coming on, they made their escape, and had come over 400 miles down the coast, sailing night times, and keeping dark during the day. He had been here about three weeks, his men had got off in different vessels & he was on the lookout for a chance himself. He did not appear to be short of money, but, was short of a few little things that money would not buy here & we promised to furnish him as far as lay in our power which we afterwards did. We were chatting away on various topics, & taking an occasional glass to keep our talking tracks in order, When in Rushed our Noble Captain Russell Revolver in hand, & followed by King Pookatah with about 50 of his Warriors,



# Dead Or Alive

373

Armed with Clubs, Paddles, and two of them with Old Muskets & Pookatah I pointed an old Rusty Sword. To have saved myself from everlasting Rendition I could not help myself from a hearty Laugh. What is the Reason you two are not on board the Ship! Thundered the Captain. Because Replied I we could enjoy ourselves Better where we are for the Present, But if you had waited another hour you would have seen us there! Not another Minute By God! I have come to carry you aboard dead or alive, & I am armed & Prepared for it! You might just as well keep cool! I Replied, & Put up that Revolver Sir, For you dare not use it! and if I had another at this Present moment, you would never have the Pleasure of pointing that one towards another human Being! What next I! Will you go, or will you not! We have got a conveyance of our own Captain! And we don't wish for any of your Company! By God! you shall go with me & that right off! Not quite so fast Captain! we have got another Bottle here to crack first, and I am very sorry we cannot ask you to drink with us, as you do not belong to our company, and another thing, I think you have had quite enough already by the appearance of Things. This put the old fellow in a Fury, He Stomped, Swore, & Raved, Swearing he would Bay us when he got us on board. But, we only Laughed, while we took a Parting Glass, wishing each other Good health, Good



### 374 King Pookatah's Warriors.

Luck, & good Night. We then Marched out in Front of the House, where the King with about half of his Ebony Tribe took the Lead, followed by, Our King! Myself, and Patterson came Next, and the Rest of the Niggers Brought up the Rear. We had not gone far however, when my dander began to rise, and turning short round, I took the highest Nigger by the Throat, and giving him a Punch under the Ear, at the same time bringing the toe of my shoe to bear upon his seat of Honour, sent him flying far in Advance of the Captain, whilst another came flying past me, served the same sauce by Patterson. This put to flight the Whole of our Rear Guard, who hustled around their King, and his inducement could persuade them to come near us again. The Captain Trembling like a Leaf, swore if we came near him, or attempted to run, he would Shoot; Shoot & Be Damned cried Patterson, at the same time we picked up a Large stone each. Fire away Sir! and don't miss! for here is Guns that will never miss Fire!. The Old fellow Threatened a Spell, & finally began to Reason & then to Coax; While we unbuttoned our Pants & sat down comfortably to ease ourselves, one keeping Guard until the other was done. After Which we made a start; The Army Ahead & we following on at our Leisure behind. We soon arrived at the Bench, where we found the Boat waiting, and all three getting in to her we soon arrived



# Almost A Row.

375

At the Vessel. We had no sooner struck the deck than the Captain off Coat & Rolled up his shirt sleeves; But, on Turning Round, he found we were exactly in the same fix, and A Good Lump of A Stone in each hand to Boot. You could hear low Exclamations from the Crew, who had gathered in the waist; such as we're about! Go in Boys! Only Start it! &c. The Mate then Put his Lip in, But, we soon shut him up by telling him to wait until the dog S—t & then cry halves, for if he had been A Whalesman, what he shipped for, we would all have been better off; that he was no more or less than A Public Robber of the Owners & the Whale Ship's Company. The Captain however took his Part, and commenced his threats at A Great Rate, Styling us Mutineers &c, & that the Law would uphold him in shooting every one of us. We told him he had done enough already on the Voyage, to keep his hands full of Law for A Long time after he arrived Home. That we were no Mutineers, But, Only stood in our own defence & if he attempted violence we would defend ourselves even to the taking of Life!. That we had refused to do nothing but go below Separately, so as to give him, and his officers A Chance to Pounce on & overpower us, when we knew the Kind of treatment we should Receive at his hands!. That we were ready to go below any time, But, we would go together when we did go, whether it was below or to Kingdom Come!. Go below Together then! Exclaimed



## 376 Peaceful Reflections.

The & we will see about this in the morning  
The then, (when we went below, Rocks in  
Thand!) gave orders to his officers not to let  
either of us set foot on shore again the voyage  
without orders from him. Morning after  
Morning came round, But, I never heard  
the slightest Allusion made to our little  
Thabenda affair; Only that the Second Mate  
(who is a genuine Snake in the Grass) Told us  
that the Captain had his old skin chock  
full when he started after us yesterday, and  
that much every one in the ship knew with-  
out his information. Nine days afterwards,  
the Captain was serving us with the key, to  
go on Liberty, at St Paul de Louando, and as  
smiling as a Basket of chips on a frosty morning.  
He is still very careful to have everybody off  
by sundown & I must confess it is quite right.  
Yet, when he himself wishes to pass an evening  
on shore, which was very frequent while on  
the coast, a Boat crew would have to take  
him, & after times get wet through in landing  
through the surf, Then wait until 10 or 11  
and sometimes 12 o'clock at night, until he  
got ready to come off, all the while exposed  
to the heavy & sickly dews of the coast, But,  
little he cared so that he had a good time  
himself. I have only one thing more to say of  
Thabenda, & that is, if I was Master of a Vessel  
I would never visit it, or any other Part of the  
coast, where we have been, To recruit my ship  
with the exception of Princes Island; (See Page  
169 To 232) And Thabenda (from Page 143 To 147)



# Equimina Africa.

377

Equimina. This Place we visited three times during the Voyage. It lays in about the Latitude of  $13^{\circ} 08'$  South. and Longitude about the First Shipping that visited this Place for Recruits, was Whalers, in the years 1855 & 6. It is a Kind of half moon Bay in Shape But, not very deep, and the North Bluff of the Bay is very high, & when the Sun strikes on it, it shows white like chalk and can be seen on a clear day, upwards of 30 Miles. The Bay itself I should judge about four or five Miles across from Head to Head. The Valley as I was told runs some 20 Miles inland, narrowing gradually until it terminates at that distance into the Mountains. A good sized Brook runs down the Centre of the Valley in the Wet Season, But, about one half the Year it is dried up with the heat. The Valley was very thickly wooded with African Oak & other large Timber, to within about two Miles of the Sea Coast. Where they have cleared it away for Plantations. All the Northern Side of the Valley was occupied by an Old Portuguese who called himself, Don Enas, It appears that he had, (for some Political Offence given to the Court of Lisbon) been transported to the Penal Settlement of St Paul de Loando, about the year 1846, for a Period of 21 Years. There he remained four or five years, when by the Influence of his Friends, he was allowed to come to this Place with a few Slaves to cultivate the Land, & also



378 Don Enas, Arid  
with the intention of opening Trade, with  
the Natives of the Interior for Ivory &  
A sort of Moss very much valued for its  
qualities as a Dye Stuff. He had been here  
(as I was informed) but a few months, when  
one Morning he saw a Clipper Bark making  
direct for his Place, chased by an English  
Steamer. The Bark who was a Slaver  
ran ashore & the Captain landed with his  
crew well armed who all betook themselves  
to the Mountains & Escaped. The Captain had  
with him about 30,000 dollars in specie  
that was intended to purchase his Live Cargo  
and being unable to carry it with him  
he trusted it to the keeping of Don Enas  
& fled. The Steamer finding the Vessel a  
wreck & the crew escaped, set fire to her  
& left. Don Enas, also left the next day, &  
when the Captain returned he found he  
was duped, as he had no ~~acknowledgement~~ <sup>knowledge</sup> of  
the Portuguese, & even if he had, he dare not  
follow him to Loando. As soon as the Captain  
left the Coast My Noble Don Enas, returned  
with about 300 athletic Negro slaves, and  
commenced laying the Valley out into  
Plantations; as well as <sup>to</sup> continue his Trade  
with the Interior. He had when we were  
there last, about 700 Slaves, Men women  
& children. He had a Plantation of Sugar  
canes, I should think over 100 Acres, a fine  
Large Sugar Mill, & a distillery. About 100  
head of Bullock, & the same of Sheep, with  
quite a lot of Fowls, Ducks, Geese, & Pigs.



the four last of which, he was keeping for their breeding and would sell none of either. He had a Plantation of Lemon, Orange, Fig, Citron, Apple, Pear, Guava & Pomegranate Trees, all of which bore fruit this year but most of them for the first time; Plantains & Bananas were in abundance, also Pumpkins, Cabbage, Beets, Tomatoes, Egg Plants, Cucumbers, & numerous other Garden Vegetables. He had large fields of Sweet Potatoes & Casabe (which latter with fish is the chief food of the Negroes. He had also large fields of Irish Potatoes but they did not quite well for it was too hot for them. He was laying out some large tracts for the cultivation of Cotton. He kept from 20 to 30 Negroes constantly Fishing off abreast of the heads & they averaged about a Ton of Fish per day, those were salted & dried for the Soando Market, where he kept 7 Launches in constant employ carrying things Back & forth. He showed us a field of Flourishing Indian Corn about two thirds grown that was the first he had tried, also some young Coconut Trees, Water & Musk Melon Plants & various other little delicacies; And finally showed us three Whale Boats with all their Craft telling us that as soon as he could get Officers to head them he was going to commence Whaling, as plenty of Humpbacks came in the Bay every Season. All the while with him at Present, was his Overseer & an American



Carpenter, & I must confess that he appears to me, to be the most enterprising man I ever saw in the course of my life. When he came on board of us, he did not want any money in exchange for what we got of him. But, would take almost anything in exchange. Old Iron, old Chains, Shackles, Old & New Ropes, Hammers, Forks, Spoons, Chisels, Gimlets, Copper or Iron Tacks, Axes, Hatchets, Pats or Pans, Hats, Caps, or any kind of clothing, Salt, Beef or Pork, Bread, Flour or Butter, or in fact almost anything we had to spare. Old Copper, Brass, or Lead, Tar, Paint, & Paint oil & he even bought our old Grindstone, some Iron hoops some copper Rivets, some Nails of different kinds, three Pieces of Calico, some Calico Shirts, A Cheese, A Box of Soap, some Crackery ware & some Boat Boards, & even some Spade Poles, to have in Readiness for to cut in Whales & Two Shots of New Towline & some Lance warp to catch them with. When we went on Liberty, we all had to come take dinner with him; And he had plenty of talk for all. From the Officers he enquired about Whaling, & their information was quickly noted down in Short Hand. from one or two farmers we had, he would enquire about the manner in which they Planted Potatoes &c, all of which he carefully noted down. From one or two Fishermen, The Best Manner of curing & Preserving Fish. And one West Indian, we had, he took Round his Sugar Mill & Distillery asking his Opinion



# Improvements.

381

of them, And not a Syllable of anything new to him but what he noted down; And when I remarked to him, that the Heads & Entrails of the numerous fish they caught daily, Would make fine Manure for his Potato Fields, insted of being thrown into the Sea; he eagerly inquired how; And when I told him he was so Pleased that he insisted on my taking a Fine Present of Fruit & wine when I went on board. He Had Native Coopers, Carpenters, Blacksmiths, And Masons from Loando; And the Overseer was a Mounter by Trade & had some Natives Learning the Business, And this Accounted to me for all the Old Iron Brass Cooper &c that he wanted to Buy. He had no female Companion, But, told me he intended to have one in a few Years Time when he got everything going Regular & a Nice little Garden for her to Amuse herself in. The Wood we got here was the Best Fire wood I ever Saw, Making the Hottest Fire & lasting the Longest; it would leave no Coal, but if you once lit a Piece & threw down anywhere it would Burn until it Left Nothing But a White Ashes, simular to Lime & nearly as strong. At the Coast, it is called African Oak. On the South side of the Bay there lives two more Portuguese who do nothing But, trade with the Natives of the Interior for Bees Ivory, & a Sort of Gum, that is found in the Earth. It was here where we got our Water. At a Spring that Gushed out at the foot of the Bluff; so we sunk a Cask & then dug it out



### 382 My Opinion, of Equissina.

so as to form it well that we could dip out of with Buckets; And then we could not fill more than 75 barrels a day. It was Beautiful water & kept well at Sea. Don Enas, has wells sunk all over his Plantations, at a distance from each other, of about the Eight of a Mile, & all his female & children Slaves (With the Exception of Those Left for Cooking Washing & other Household Duties) are in the dry Season constantly Employed from Sun to Sun, carrying water in Buckets & watering every thing on the Plantations; otherwise they would soon be consumed by the Thirst which is intense on shore, While off where the Vessels say it is quite cool & comfortable being generally calm mornings until 10 or 11 O'clock, When you get a Good Sea Breeze from S.W. that lasts until after Midnight & sometimes until daylight. The Anchorage is safe & good & the holding Ground Excellent. Fish of various kinds, and Excellent Flavor, are Plentiful, even, on the Anchorage Ground. And we always had a Sufficiency for our daily Consumption. If Don Enas should continue his improvements and carry out all the designs, which he said he intended to; I firmly believe, that after the Year 1862; that Equissina, will be one of the best, (if not the very Best) places on the Whole Coast of Africa, for a Ship to call at, that stands in need of Wood, Water, Potatoes, Onions, & Other kinds of Vegetables; As well, as, Fresh Meat, Fish &c &c.



## Bark Isabeleta Thines.

383

(The Bark Isabeleta Thines, (continued from Page 51) On the Sixth day of December; (being as near as I could Judge in the Latitude of 41 Degrees North. & about The Longitude of 170 Degrees West.) we were Steering East, with Whole Topsails, Courses, Jib & Spanker set; The Wind from the S W & Blowing A gale, accompanied by A cold drizzling Rain. We were running at the Rate of 12 knots an hour by the Log; When about five o'clock in the Morning & Just before daylight, the Wind hauled instantaneously to The N E, & Blew A Perfect Hurricane. (I have followed the Sea, now, for upwards of 23 Years & I never saw any shift of wind, that was, half so sudden) It struck us flat aback Raising the whole Fore Part of the Ship clear of the Water as far as the Fore Chains & Plunging her Taffrail under water, and in came A huge Wave that washed the whole length of Her. Nothing could now have saved us, from going down stern foremost, But, the help of the Almighty; which he Mercifully granted to us. The Vessel had not yet lost her Head way, when another fierce gust struck her, which, carried away The Main topsail Yard by the Tie Band, Tearing the Sail into A Thousand Pieces, & Leaving the two Halves of the Yard dangling by the Lifts; Also carrying away the Main Yard in the Slings, Splitting the Chainsal to Pieces, and leaving one half of the Yard dangling by The Lift while the other <sup>half</sup> was, supported by the Truss & Lift. The Mizzen Topmast was carried away by the Sea



## 384 Almost A Wreck.

den jerk of the Main Topsail Braces, and  
 came Thundering down; in its way, striking  
 the Spanker Gaff; it Parted the Vangs, & Spanker  
 Sheet; And away went Boom, Sail, Gaff, and  
 all, over the Starboard Quarter, Breaking  
 the Boom into three Pieces. This instantly  
 Relieved her, as the Forward Sails stood good  
 But, as she laid her head off down - she went  
 over her Beam Ends. There another Merciful  
 interposition of Providence saved us; for it  
 suddenly Lulled, for about three Minutes,  
 which gave her time to Right again, and  
 Pay off; So, that, when the next heavy puff  
 Struck her, it filled the Fore Topsail, The  
 T'aliards of Which, had been Previously let  
 go; And no sooner was the Sail Freed from  
 its Back Pressure against the Mast & Rig-  
 ging, Than down it came by the Run, Car-  
 rying away both Lifts in its descent. I sprang  
 to the Wheel to get her before the Wind, Thin-  
 king to keep her clear of the Seas that were  
 Combing in on us from all quarters. But  
 I found the worst danger was yet to come, for  
 no sooner had I got her before it than away  
 she darted like a Race Horse. The Heavy  
 Head Sea coming from the South west,  
 As she Plunged head long into it, would  
 strike her with such force, as to cause her  
 to tremble like a Leaf from Stern to Stern  
 and At the same time Breaking over the  
 Bows swept clear to the Break of the quar-  
 ter deck, Flooding the decks, so, that it  
 made its escape over the Rails as she



## Cutting Away The Sails.

385

Rollled either way. I was about to give her up, when an Idea Struck me, & calling Another hand to the Wheel, & sang out to Anderson to follow me if he wished to save his Life. We watched our chance & partly by Swimming & partly by wading, we Managed to Reach the Fore Rigging; We were soon in the Fore Top, where in as few words as possible I explained to Anderson that I wanted to cut away the Topsail, That the Lifts were Parted, and as soon as the Sail was freed from the Yard, that it would fly up and down every Roll of the Vessel; Therefore to go out on one side & Take one of the reef Carings & Lash himself to the Yard & I would do the same on the Other, & when I gave the Signal, to cut the Leech Rope of the Topsail, close to the Head Tabbling. We no sooner touched the Knives to the Leech Ropes, Than Pop Went the Topsail, and in Less than five minutes, from the time that I left the Wheel, There was not a vestige of it remaining but the Roping. This eased her considerably; So unlashng ourselves, But still keeping one turn of the Caring around ourselves & the Yard, we slid in gradually, until, we got hold of the Topmast Rigging; we soon got on to the Fore Yard, where the Lifts were yet in good order, and serving it the same as the Topsail, it Fell Flat on the Topgallant Forecastle. This eased her, so, that the decks were soon clear, so that, we could walk fore & aft without being in



## 386 Returning Thanks.

danger of getting washed overboard. As soon as I reached the quarter deck, I could not help falling on my knees & Raising my eyes towards the Stormy Heavens, exclaimed most Fervently & aloud, My God! I Thank Thee For Thy Mercy, to us Poor Mortals! And all with One Accord Pronounced the single sentence, Amen!. By this time it was day light & whilst we kept her steadily before the gale, we set about clearing away the wreck, which we got Pretty well secured by dark, some on deck & some lashed aloft. About 10 O'clock that Night the Wind again shifted suddenly, to the S.W. and blew fearfully Violent; For three days we stood to the N.E. under Bare Poles, with the decks completely Flooded & A Heavy Snow Storm surrounding us; We could make no Fire in the Galley & our Sustenance was Hard Bread & Water, and Raw Salt Pork. We saw nothing of the Skates during this dreadful scene, And the Captain but, once. On the tenth of December it cleared off, so that I got the Sun at 12 O'clock & found we were in the Latitude of 47 degrees North; The wind still South West, Blowing A common Gale & quite Steady. So we got out the only whole Topsail we had in the ship & double Reefed it on to the Fore Yard for A Foresail, and with this sail, besides A Fore & Main Scurer & Fore Topmast Staysail; We ran North West for fourteen days by the Captains orders. Some days we had Snow, others, hail, or



## The Rum Getting Short. 387

Rain & Part of the Time clear, although, all the Time it blew Heavy, from S W, to West. We had Managed during this Period to get the Main & Main Top-sail Yards down & Fished them with Studding Sail Booms, We also got some Sails Patched up after A Manner, Replaced the Spanker Boom, with A Lower Studding-sail Boom, and Sent up A Spare Main Top-galant mast for A Main Top-mast. All this we done of our own accord & for our own benefit, as we thought. The only orders we received from the Captain, being through the Steward, and them so unintelligible, that we were obliged to use our own Judgment.

Christmas day, brought us A light Northerly Breeze & clear Weather, Still there was quite A Heavy Cross Sea. We commenced & got the Main & Main Top-sail Yards aloft & the Sails Bent before Night & set them. The Mate was on deck nearly the whole day, shuffled up in his great-coat, top-coat, & mittens, & fairly Trembling with the horrors, perfectly incapable of giving orders, or even walking the Deck. And the Steward informed us that the Liquor was getting short, and that Captain Calhoun had stowed it away, Still we could see; (as the Mate stood his watch from that time forward;) That he managed to raise an occasional nip from some place or another. He was of A tyrannical disposition, and it was easy to see, if he was not completely subdued by the effects of hard drinking; that he



388 To San Francisco, Or Hell!

would have been a hard than to please. from this time, until the fifth of January we had light winds from the Northward & a clear sky, But, Bitter cold, and as the keel leaked badly the decks were constantly wet. and although we had every chance to have got a Lunar Observation, not even an attempt was made at it. Merely getting the latitude at 12 o'clock, (which on Christmas day was  $36^{\circ}42^m$  North) and keeping her East & East by North, by compass. We had by this time got things but to Rights as well as could be expected from the predicament in which we had been placed. On the Seventh day of January Our wood was exhausted so we commenced using the Spare Spars, we found also that we had but two small casks of Water Remaining, And as the Mate assured us we were not within one Thousand miles of San Francisco, And nearly due North from the Sandwich Islands, we Requested the Captain to Bear away for Oahu, or in a few days we would be in a State of Starvation. This Request, seemed to rouse the Old fellow from his drunken stupor he cursed & swore at every one, saying that we were all combined against him as well as God Almighty! But, I started for San Francisco! And to San Francisco I'll go! or To Hell! one or the other! And into the cabin he went, got out a Revolver Pistol And loaded it. Good God! thought I; can this be the Poor Drunkin! Childish! Imbecile!



that has laid dormant the whole Passage! while we were all in the very jaws of death! "But, so it was" And we kept on our course to the Eastward with light winds & smooth Sea. On the Eighth of January it was nearly calm and Towards Night it clouded up, and we had a light Southerly Wind. For the First time in two Months we saw with Joy that the Captain & Mate were both sober. Every drop of Their Rum being consumed and none left in the Vessel, except some Champagne in the Run, which was cargo. All the First watch it rained very heavy & we felled five casks with good Fresh Water; And at 12 O'clock we turned with lighter Tendants & easier Minds than we had done any time the Voyage. And as Anderson said to me, Let her Heel now! we have got Plenty of Bread & water now, so there is no fear of Starving. I Replied; Yes! Let her Heel, The Rum is all gone! Little we thought, what twenty four hours would Bring Forth! And although I shall attempt to describe it, I well know that My Poor Pen is inadequate to the Task.

The 9<sup>th</sup> day of January 1855 At its commencement was a lovely day! the Sky was clear, not a single cloud to be seen upon the Horizon, a light breeze from S.S.W. the Sea smooth, And our Roughly used old Bark Bowling along at the Rate of four or five knots an hour, her course East, and all sail on her, except the Studding sails, for those we



### 390 A Fatal Mistake.

had used to fix the other sails, and what Booms there was left after fishing the yards, we were then using for Firewood. The Captain & Mate were both walking the Poop conversing which was such an unusual thing, that we smilingly remarked to one another, (as we cast meaning glances towards the quarter deck,) that something was going to happen. We were busy as bees, sleeking up Lobs that had been roughly done, in the bad weather we had experienced; At Noon the Captain & Mate both got the Sun, and after dinner, The Mate informed me, that the Latitude was  $37^{\circ} 10'$  North. consequently we were 39 miles South of San Francisco, and he said we were a little over 800 miles to the Westward of it, and if we held decent winds we would be there in a week. At 4

P.M., I asked the Steward what the Longitude was, but he told me he did not know for they had got no Sights. And, said he, The Old Fellow is at it again, At what again? Why drinking again! He has got out a Basket of Champagne, & is damned near drunk now! Well never mind Steward, replied I; we have only got a short time longer to be with him! How very often since, have I thought on those Prophetic words! I had the dog watch wheel from six to eight that Night, and when I went there it was raining lightly, and the wind increasing (it having begun to blow up about four o'clock;) As the wind increased we took in



# A Gale Of Wind.

391

the Fly Lib, Gaff Topsail & Topgallant Sails. At Seven Bells, the Wind had increased so much that we called all hands to Reef Topsails; It was dark as Pitch, sharp Flashes of Lightning, accompanied by heavy claps of Thunder, while The Rain fell in torrents that completely blinded us. They blew down the Fore Topsail & Put one Reef in it, Then came aft & Put one Reef in the Main also. This took some time to do; for on account of the yard being fished, they had to knot on spare points to those in the sail, to make them long enough, to Reach around the Yard. By the time this was done, they were obliged to blow the Fore Topsail down again & close Reef it. They then laid aft again & blew down the Main Topsail to close Reef it, also; All this time I had the Vessel luffed close to the Wind, and she was heading about S E; While they were blowing down the Main Topsail, I noticed a Broad White Streak on the Lee Bow & Beam, Exactly like what you will see under a heavy Rain cloud, when it is about to clear up. And I said to myself, (as no one was near me) That's a good sign of fine weather! Breaking away to Starward first, And then turned my whole attention to the Main Topsail to keep it shivering whilst they Reefed it, Still the Rain Poured down so heavy, and the darkness was so intense, that I went altogether by the sense of hearing, as it was impossible to see six foot from you & define any object clearly. But, I was



## 392 Breakers Ahead.

Startled, by the loud cries of The Men, on the Main Topsail Yard; Breakers! Breakers! Breakers Ahead! Breakers on the Lee! And Turning my eyes to Leeward, I saw that the Bright streak I had Previously saw, was Huge Mountains of Rollers. Never! shall I forget the Horror that pervaded my whole system at the sight! The Blood Fairly Froze in my veins! And all I uttered was, God! have Mercy on us! The Mate Ordered the Wheel hard up, & sang out, Lay down from aloft, & wear ship. The men were soon down & Brailed up the Spunker, the Vessel Paid off Rapidly and Just as they belayed the Spunker Brails, being dead before the Wind, she struck with a Tremendous Shock, & At the Next instant we were Buried in a Roller that swept the decks from Stern to Stern, While it lifted the Vessel, & swept her on for some distance before she struck again, when another Roller served us the same way, and so on for about a dozen in succession, each one Breaking completely over us, and carrying us farther in to them until we had Broached Broadside to them, while all we could do was to cling with all our strength to the Rigging & it was a Miracle that none of us were washed away. Oh! it was agonizing! Heart rending! to hear the screams of some of my Shipmates, as they called upon God! for assistance, and Piteously asking of one another, Oh! what will become of us! What shall we do. It would



## Our Vessel Strikes.

393

be folly for me to say I was not frightened, For frightened I certainly was! Indeed I think I was speechless; for I had not as yet spoke a single word since she Struck. But I had silently asked forgiveness of the Great Jehovah! for my manifold transgressions, & humbly besought him to sustain me through this, (as I thought) my last Trial on earth; & also to comfort the Friends & Relatives, I left behind me to mourn my sad & untimely End. This done; all my faculties seemed to Return, And I gazed round on the scene, shaking the water from me, as each Breaker Buried us & Receded again, without the slightest sensation of Fear. Perceiving the Captain (who was somewhat labored with the Fright) trying to make his way out of the Cabin, I watched at chance, And Grasping him by the collar drew him up to the Stizen boards where I left him holding on like Grim Death. Perceiving that the Ship was Broad Side to & if she remained in that situation, would soon go to Pieces. I looked up at the Mainmast & then at the Captain, who nodded his head, and uttered the single Sentence, Cut! Two axes were soon found in the Cabin; And myself & the Mate, got astride of the Rail, one forward & one abaft the Main Rigging, And watching our chance between the Rolders, A few lusty Strokes on the Lanyards, and away went the Mainmast. And away went myself & the Mate also! The Mainsail was still set



394. We cut away The Mainmast.  
and we never took it thought, that the weather  
Main Sheet was underneath us; As the  
Mast went carrying everything with it,  
(The Mizzen Topmast also) The Main Sheet  
flew up with Lightning velocity, catching  
us under the Leg we had out board, and I  
can't say how many Somersets I turned until  
I landed about five fathoms to Leeward of the  
Ship striking in the Water amongst the  
Lee Main Rigging that was still fast to  
the Ship. Although much Bruised I succe  
ded in clinging to this, until I dragged my  
self up the Ship's Side; And to my Great  
delight I saw the Mate crawling up from  
the Lee Bulworks, he having been thrown  
no farther. Our Wheel went with A Patent  
Screw upon the Rudder head, so that it  
remained hard up as I had put it before we  
struck. The Lib, Foresail, & Foretop sail  
still held, & assisted to pay her off every  
time A Roller Raised her, until she got  
Nearly before it again. And with unspeak  
able Delight, I Perceived as we drove on, that  
each Roller grew smaller, & struck with  
less force, until about One O'clock on the  
Morning of the Tenth, when she made  
one desperate Plunge & Remained Stationary  
the Sea breaking slightly at intervals over  
the Starboard quarter, But, forward, nothing  
but an occasional light Spray coming on  
board. So we all got Forward, hauled up  
the Foresail Clewed up the Topsail & hauled  
down the Lib, which eased her from Rolling.



## A Dismal Wreck.

395

as the Surf still struck her heavy. We then had time to look about us a little; The Mate told us we were on some unknown Reef not laid down in the Chart, and that a dark streak we saw ahead of us was the Blue water on the other side of it. So I directed my attention to our three Boats two of which to my great joy I found was safe & unharmed. The Captain & Mate had gone into the cabin where they began to swill down Champagne, some of which the Steward brought out to the Men; And as they were both wet & cold, I had hard work to persuade them not to get drunk. And there was only myself & Anderson who would not touch it. About 2 o'clock, feeling fairly exhausted I sat me down forward of the Foremast, it had stopped raining, and I placed my elbows on my knees, resting my head in my hands & was silently brooding over our Situation; Eight hundred miles from any Land, with two open Boats if we should be so lucky as to get them clear of her at daylight. Not a drop of fresh water some of it washed away & the rest filled up & spoiled by salt Water; Our Bread all completely saturated & our Meat in the Hots under water. From this train of sad thoughts, I was suddenly aroused by Anderson, who caught me around the Neck, & after Flipping me two or three times; cried out, My dear Chum! My Dear fellow! Shout! Hollar! Laugh! do something for God Sake! or I shall go crazy.



## 326 A Joyful Discovery.

Do! Do! want you? I had actually begun to think that the horrors we had Passed through had unsettled the Poor fellows mind; And in A soothing tone, said to him, For God's sake, tell me what is the matter! or what can I do for you? Come here! cried he, half dragging & half leading me to the Rail. where A sight met my eyes that Made my heart fairly Leap for Joy! The Rain clouds had dispersed and The stars were Shining Brightly: Not ten Yards from the Starboard Cat head, was A White Sandy Beach, strewn with Portions of the Wreck, & about five or six Rods farther Back was A high Black Bank of good Solid Sand! Oh! how eagerly I shouted out to my Shipmates to come and look; And then hurried to the cabin to let the Officers know of it. I found the Mate & Captain very much intoxicated & they only laughed at me when I told them we were on the Coast of California: I then went forward again, and I could plainly see by the Beach that it was dead low water and that when the Tide returned Again the Vessel would in all Probability go to Pieces. So collecting the Men together I told them to Pack up their things as hastily as they could & we would try to get them on shore. they soon got ready, & we then took A spare Jib & Flying Jib boom that was all in one and Getting A Strong heeL Lashing on it, we launched it over the Port bow, the small end Striking in the Sand about two yards below the dry sand, the heeL we secured to



## The crew saved.

397

the Vessel with strong lashings. One half half the men then slid down to the foot of this & catching a good chance let go, and ran for it. The rest of us remained on board & bent on to the chests & bedding which they hauled on shore through the surf, & also a Barrel of Bread. I then went to the Captain whom I begged to come on shore & save his life, but, he only drew his revolver swearing he would shoot the first man who attempted to leave the vessel; and when I told him that half the men were already on shore, he told the Mate to take their names down and they should forfeit their wages, and another thing when I get the vessel off in the morning I will leave them all behind on the Reef. My dear Sir Replied I, the Vessel is going to pieces now, for-God! Sake come & look & save yourself while you can. Leave the cabin Sir (cried he) Presenting his Revolver; or God! will not save you from going to pieces. Finding it was in vain to talk to them we went forward & went on shore, leaving the Cook, Steward Captain & Mate Onboard, who we could not Persuade to come & the Second Mate Sick in the cabin who we could not take. When I arrived on the Beach I found it was about 10 Rods wide, & then you came to a Bluff wall of Black Slippery, clayey, earth nearly Perpendicular & impossible to climb it being about 40 feet in height. I was by no means satisfied as yet, that it was not an Island so leaving a couple to start a Fire from the



### 398 The Cook, Steward & 2<sup>nd</sup> Mate Saved.

Driftwood that lay scattered about as well as fragments of the Wreck; The rest of us started along the Beach, & after walking about a mile we came to a sort of Gully caused by the heavy Rains; Up this we clambered getting well besmeared by mud, and when we arrived at the Top the first thing that met our delighted Eyes was an Old Horse quietly Grazing, who at sight of us, raised his head & neighed us a Good Morning! (From that day to this I have always dearly loved a Horse.) A little to our Right we saw a Regular Old Virginia Rail Fence, This satisfied us beyond all doubt, that we were on the Coast of California, and close to the Habitation of some American; so we hastened back to share the good news with those on the Beach by the wreck. They had a good fire made & we huddled around it until daylight, when Anderson went onboard again (although it was very dangerous as the tide was rising fast) and lending on to the Cook, Steward, & Second Mate, we hauled them on shore through the Surf. The Mate was on the Topgallant Forecastle Drunk as a Lord! ordering us to come onboard again, and help get the Ship Off. By this time a Number of People were collected on the Bank overhead and some few Americans lowered themselves down the Bank eager to render what Assistance they could. The Seas were making a clean Breach over the Kessel & at last the Mate Mr Beatty, lost his hold & pitched head foremost over the Bow towards us; We saw him Rise



## The Captain & Mate Lost.

399

But once, & was then swept away by the under-  
tow & was seen no more until three days after-  
wards when his Body was found & sent to San  
Francisco to be Identified & receive Christian Bur-  
ial. The Kessel soon began to break up & at  
last drove the Captain (who could scarcely  
walk) on deck; And although he had been the  
Cause of all our Misfortunes, we would not  
see him drown without an effort to save  
him. He now appeared to be fully sensible  
of his danger, and held out his arms beseechingly  
to us. We managed to make him understand  
that he was to come forward to the Fore Rigging  
where he managed to get at last. Taking a  
Codfish line from my chest, I bent one end  
of it to a Piece of Stout Rope and the other  
end to a short Iron Bolt, Then following the  
Under tow down as far as I durst, threw it  
for the Ship. After several attempts I at  
last succeeded in getting it to him; he hauled  
in until he got the Rope, But, was so intox-  
icated that while fumbling & trying to make  
it fast round his body, he fell backwards  
in on deck losing his hold of the Rope, and  
we never saw him afterwards. There was  
a Mexican Diver Present who offered to go  
on board if we could get a Rope fast to her  
& several Mexican Gentlemen, who had arri-  
ved on the Spot with their Horses, Tried  
their very Best to Lasso the Anchor Stock  
And although they hit very near it several  
times, the tide had rose & the Breakers were  
so heavy that they were forced at last to give



## 400 On The Beach.

it up. The hatches by this time were burst open & Boxes of Tea were strewn the Beach but it was saturated with salt water and of no use whatever. One of The American Gentlemen Present, A, Mr Johnson who had a Ranch or Farm about two Miles from the Spot; Had the Second Mate (who was still very sick) carried to his house, and sent us down a good Supply of Fresh Bread Butter, and new Milk. he also sent off word of the disaster to San Francisco, which he informed us was but 30 miles to the Northwest of us. We sat on the Beach the whole day, drying our clothes that we had saved, and looking out to seaward, where we could now see the dangers we had passed through. For more than two Miles we had drove on the Preceding Night through the Breakers, and all Present said if we had struck at Low water instead of at High, that no earthly Means could have saved a single one of us! To our Right, and about two Miles from the Beach was a large Bed of Pointed Ragged Rocks, nearly level with the waters edge & frightful to look at! those we had escaped running on to, by lifting up to Reef Topsails. And I shuddered as the Bystanders spoke of two or three vessels that had run upon them and not a single Soul had escaped to tell the Tale, nor yet anything drifted onshore that would certify beyond Doubt, the Names of the Ill Fated Vessels or their Crews.



# A Good Samaritan.

401.

And I inwardly returned thanks to the Supreme Being! who had so miraculously Preserved us from a watery Grave, all unprepared as we were to appear before the Judgement Seat. About 4 o'clock in the Afternoon the tide fell so that we got on board; But, She was completely Gutted, The Tea having all floated out leaving Nothing But the Rice & The Sugar what had not dissolved, in one complete Mass at the Bottom of the Hold. The Poop was Broke away & no vestige of the Cabin Remained. We however got the Masts & Fore sail unbraced & hauled on shore where we rigged A Tent to Sleep under. As the Sun went down the People began to Leave. And Mr Johnson, gave me A Pressing invitation to go with him to his house for the Night. As I had been wet nearly the whole day, As my shipmates also advised me to go, I accepted his kind offer & Locking my Chest, after taking out A dry suit, which I put on, leaving the Wet ones beside the Chest. I had taken every thing out of my Chest during the day, and after drying them Put them Back, & A Number of The Mexicans both Men, and Women tried to Purchase A Number of Valuable Articles I had brought from China with me, But, I would sell Nothing. I accompanied Mr Johnson to his House which was Built after the Old New England Style; And was introduced to his young, and Beautiful Wife, who shed tears as she listened to the Account of our Misfortunes! A Good



402 Mrs Johnson.

Substantial Hot Supper was soon served  
To which I did ample Justice, After which  
A number of the Farm servants crowded  
round me pressing me to relate to them all  
the Particulars of the sad catastrophe. But  
Mrs Johnson, (with woman's tact,) perceived  
That I was weary & Fatigued; And Taking me  
by the Hand, said, Come my Dear Friend  
I know from what my husband tells me, that  
you stand greatly in need of Repose, so you  
must come along! I will not hear of  
that of excuse! And this good Lady, (O how God!  
Forever Bless her!) led me to a Bedroom where  
all the comforts of home were exhibited to  
my view & giving me the candle Wished me  
a Good Night's Rest & shut the door. I was  
soon undressed & falling on my knees I  
returned thanks to God! for all his Mercies  
to me, and besought him To Prosper & Bless  
those who had befriended us in our time  
of need! & Laying myself down in a Good  
Feather Bed, I was soon fast asleep, & when  
I was again awakened by a Knock at the  
door I perceived the Sun had been up some  
time. I hurried Dressed myself & soon  
found my Hostess with whom I exchanged  
the Morning Salutations, & Then enquired why  
they had allowed me to sleep so late. It is  
all my fault, replied she with a Sweet Sm  
ile! I knew there was no Occasion for you  
and although my Husband was about to call  
you when he went away this Morning, I  
persuaded him to let you sleep until your



# I Get Basely Robbed.

403

Breakfast was ready; And then you could  
Take some Warm Vittuals down to your  
Shipmates! So if you like, Scold me as much  
as you Please! Only, sit down & eat & Heartily  
Breakfast. Scold you Replied I! God! Grant, that  
through life, you may never receive a Scars  
her word from Human Lips, Than you  
will from mine. After Breakfast I spent  
a few moments with the Second Mate &  
then I turned into a Wagon with a Load  
of Provision for the Crew & was soon, at  
the Scene of our Disaster. There I was nearly  
Struck dumb! for I beheld a large Camphor  
Wood Chest, that laid outside of the Tent,  
And contained all I was Possessed of in the  
Wants, Brake Open! And everything gone; (be-  
sides about forty Dollars in cash that I  
had foolishly left in it!) Except a few of  
The Poorest of my Sea Clothes & a Catholic  
Prayerbook. By this I knew it was the  
Mexicans; as the Book they dared not take.  
You can Judge of my feelings, when I found  
that I was destitute of everything now, But  
as I stood! The Vessel had broke in halves  
and was gradually going to Pieces & towards  
Sundown, Seeing we could save nothing  
More, (& half we had saved the day before was  
stole away by the Rascally Mexicans during  
the Night) We were all sent to Mr Johnsons  
who with his Teams, Carried all belonging  
to them to his House where we were treated  
in all kindness & Christian Charity. In  
the Morning of the 12<sup>th</sup> The wreck had



#### 404 Disposal Of The Wreck.

Entirely disappeared. Two Gentlemen arrived from San Francisco Representing Themselves, the One as the Insurance Agent & the Other as the Consignee's Agent, After Making all the Enquiries they thought Proper, They appointed a day to sell by Auction all that had been saved from the wreck; (which I afterwards understood Brought the enormous Sum of Forty Dollars) I then asked them how we were to get to San Francisco? And they told me that was no concern of theirs; And galloped off. We remained there until next Morning, the 13<sup>th</sup> and Managing to muster about twelve Dollars between us, we got a Team to carry the chests & dunnage And had to walk ourselves. We got an Early Breakfast & after Thanking Mr And Mrs Johnson for their Hospitality & Charity towards us, as well as a Number of other Americans who were settled in the vicinity, and who came to bid us good bye; We set out on our tramp. The Road was very bad & in one Place was a hill about a Mile of which was so steep that we were obliged to carry the things up ourselves & let the Horses draw the Empty Waggon. We arrived in San Francisco about 10 O'clock that Night & Put up at a Sailors Boarding House in Pacific Street, where they got some Supper Ready for us & we went to bed. Next day we went to Mr Mc Condray, the Consignee, about our wages & he informed



We are Suspected of Murther. 405  
us that as the vessel had earned no freight  
since we joined her, that we were entitled  
to share! So as times were dull & plenty  
of Idlers I set about looking for a ship.  
The Papers were teeming with different  
accounts of the wreck, not one of which  
was True, And one contradicting the other.  
One Paper stated, that the Captain, and the  
Mate being both missing, There was strong  
suspicions of Foul Play, & that the crew  
about to be put under an investigation  
concerning it; Our kind Friends, living  
close to the scene of the disaster & had  
witnessed the death of both the Captain &  
the Mate, on hearing this report, hastened  
to Town to the Rescue; And was greatly  
incensed at the Presumption of the Papers  
Who they said (& Truly) would rather help  
to cast us farther down the Path of Adversity  
than to extend a Helping hand to us in  
our need! For this also we have to Thank  
Mr. Johnson! And That God! May Prosper  
and Bless him, is my earnest, sincere! & Heart  
felt Prayer! Thus was a fine Vessel & a Rich  
Cargo Lost Through Nothing else But, Interfe-  
rance of their Master, & Chief Officer. We all  
soon separated, some going one way & some ano-  
ther. As for myself I left on the 20<sup>th</sup> Bound to  
the Sandwich Islands. And This I know is  
the Only True account ever given of the  
Passage & Final Loss of The ill Fated Bark  
Isabella Hines, with her Master &  
Chief Officer. May Their Souls Rest In Peace!



406 Bark Doctor Franklin, Continued.  
Sunday May 15<sup>th</sup> 1859. (Continued from Page 330) Rather Squally, Running under Topsails, Courses, Grib, & Sparker. Weather quite cool, Course, N<sup>W</sup> & N. Lat<sup>e</sup> 19° 40' N. Long<sup>e</sup> 43° 04' W. Saw plenty of Gulf Weed to day, & One sail passed us in the Night Bore to the Westward.  
Monday 16<sup>th</sup> A Fine day & strong Breeze. At daylight we killed our last Small Pig. After Breakfast we turned all three Boats up & gave them another coat of Paint. Saw one Sail. Overhauled our Lines & found a good Part of them unfit for use. Lat<sup>e</sup> to day, 21° 13' North. Long<sup>e</sup> 45° 22' West.  
Tuesday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine, and good breeze, Saw one Sail. Broke out some Whale Line, and Run it. Turned our Boats down & Put the Craft in them; Scraped the Bars Biddles &c. At Sundown we Double Reefed Topsails, hove to, Heaving to the Northward, and let Boats crew Watches; By morning Watch. Lat<sup>e</sup> 22° 32' North. Long<sup>e</sup> 47° 43' West.  
Wednesday 18<sup>th</sup> A Fine day & strong breeze from East. Kept her North under double Reefed Topsails & Courses. Saw One Merchant Brig, Plenty of Birds, and the Ocean fairly covered with Gulf Weed. Rove some new Reef Tackles. Broke out & Bunched another Barrel of Pork. Lat<sup>e</sup> 23° 42' N. Long<sup>e</sup> 48° 37' West. At Sundown hauled up the Courses & let her run.  
Thursday 19<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind East, Steering N<sup>by</sup> East, with whole Topsails & Courses on her. Saw Nothing. Lat<sup>e</sup> 25° 16' N. Long<sup>e</sup> 49° 04' West. Got our new Martingale back Ropes on & set up.



# A False Alarm

407

Friday 20<sup>th</sup> A Fine, clear, And cool Day. We made all sail at daylight, and stood to the Northward all day; But, saw Nothing excepting a few Birds, Flying fish & Gulf Weed. We sent down the Foretopgallant Sail, repaired it & bent it again. (The Captain, And Mate, have been overhauling The Vessels old Log Books, of Former Voyages for the last day or Two, to see where she had fell in with whales; And seeing several places where The Captains had Ruised Whales, it has started our old fellow so That he stood at a Harthead yesterday & to day, for the first time this Cruise. We have a Whole Boats crew aloft all the Time now, while there is daylight; The Officer & all, excepting the Captain.) Lat to day  $26^{\circ}45'$  North. Long  $49^{\circ}00'$  West. Night fine, Shortened sail as usual, and kept her N by E  $\frac{1}{2}$  E. Wind East, Variation one Point & a half Westerly.

Saturday 21<sup>st</sup> A Lovely day. Made all sail at daylight. Met Head. Latitude  $28^{\circ}01'$  North. About 5<sup>th</sup> P M, while we were at Supper, we were startled by repeated cries, of, There she Blows! on the Lee Beam two miles off. A School of Sperrn Whales! We soon had the Ship heading for them & the Boats got ready; But, when they came up again, we made them out to be Blackfish; And going so fast, that we could not come up with them. We chased until Six O'clock, and then luffed to the wind. At Sundown we shortened sail & hove her to on the Starboard tack, Heading; N N E. Our Good Friend David stood no lofts to day, having found a Novel to read.



408 The Brig Leonidas. May 1859.

Sunday 22<sup>nd</sup> A Beautiful clear day, and  
A light Easterly Wind. Made all sail at daylight,  
and kept on to the Northward. We saw some  
Grampuses, and Porpoises. The Gulf weed is  
very scarce to day, & we saw numbers of good  
sized Crabs swimming in the water. At 2<sup>h</sup>  
P.M., Lat<sup>re</sup>  $28^{\circ}56'$  North, Longt  $49^{\circ}26'$  West.

At Sundown we shortened sail as usual, & at  
midnight we hauled the Main-Topsail aback.

Monday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & light Easterly winds. Made  
sail & braced Forward. Saw A Finback  
bow & calf. Gulf weed very scarce, saw  
some Porpoises, & Just before Sundown we  
saw A sail to the Westward of us. Latitude  
to day,  $29^{\circ}13'$  North. Longt  $49^{\circ}43'$  West. At  
Sundown we shortened sail, & at 12 O'clock  
hauled Aback again.

Tuesday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze. At 6.30 A.M.  
kept off A.M. At 8 A.M. saw A sail standing  
to the A.E. We chased her until Noon when  
finding her legs too long for us, we squared  
away & kept her West, Dead before the wind.  
At 3 P.M., saw A sail ahead, & luffed A  
little to cut her off. At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., saw another  
astern of us. Saw Plenty of Porpoises to day  
& at 5 P.M., struck one but he got away again.  
by 7 P.M., we had managed to cut the Stranger  
off & spoke her. She Proved to be the Brig  
Leonidas of Westport Captain Devoll;  
Sailed about Oct 40 barrels of Sperm oil, &  
had seen Sperm whales six times since  
leaving home. She was short handed, having  
lost five men at Dominic Island. We jammed



# Strange News From Thorne. 409

Until 10 in the evening & parted with the  
promise of spending the day together To-mor-  
row, & shortening sail, wore round to the  
Northward & kept company all night. Her  
Officers were, Skiff, Chase, and Bassett.  
Lat. to day  $20^{\circ} 47'$  North. Long.  $49^{\circ} 10'$  West.  
We heard a report that the owners had sent  
for us to come Thorne, But, how true it is  
I cannot say, as it was a flying report.

Wednesday 25<sup>th</sup> Rather squally in the  
Forenoon. The Leonidas close to us. P.M.  
fine. Killed our old sow, the last pig we  
had left. At one o'clock we have aboard,  
and Captain Devoll came on board, changed  
boats crews, & gammed until 10 o'clock  
in the evening, when we parted & stood  
away on opposite tacks having previously  
shortened sail. He gave them about half  
a bushel of onions, & several other little  
notions that he had stuck better have  
kept for his own crew. Their mate, the  
skiff informed our mate, under a promise  
of keeping it secret from the captain, that  
there was two vessels in this whaling ground  
that their captains had a power of attorney  
to take this vessel away from Captain  
Russell & send her home, & the mate informed  
me of it. If such is the case; I wish to God!  
one of them would fall in with us tomorrow.  
And so does every body else in the ship. Our  
Lat. to day, was,  $31^{\circ} 37'$  North. Long.  $50^{\circ} 35'$  West.  
Thursday 26<sup>th</sup> Forenoon Squally, Afternoon, Fine  
Running about a dozen different courses; saw



## 410 Disappointed Hopes.

one Sail, & the Merchantman. Latitude  $31^{\circ}29'$  North  
Longitude  $50^{\circ}24'$  West. At Sundown we shortened  
Sail as usual & luffed to the Northward.

Friday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & light Easterly winds.  
Kept away to the Northward & Westward: Saw  
two Schools of Porpoises, one of Grampuses,  
& a Large School of Killers; all going to the  
Eastward. Lat  $32^{\circ}15'$  North Longitude  $52^{\circ}08'$  West.  
At Sundown we shortened sail & hove her to.  
Saturday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze, still  
from the Eastward. Made all sail on her.  
At 6:30 A.M., kept her away the same as  
yesterday. At 10 A.M., I raised a very large  
School, of Large Blackfish; so we luffed  
to the wind, & lowering Starboard & Waist  
Boats, we chased until twelve O'clock, without  
getting Near Enough to dart: So we left  
them, came on board, and squared away  
again. They were all going to the N.E., and  
there was several Large Pods of them, as  
well as lots of Porpoises, and Cowfish. We  
also, saw some Squid, and Plenty of Gulf Weed.  
At one O'clock P.M., we Raised a whale, Long  
Tailing four Miles off, and it was Imme-  
diately called a Large Sperm Whale. All  
Hands were soon on the Move, The Boats  
were got Ready, and Nothing but eager  
looks & smiling faces were to be seen, turn  
which way you would; But, to our Chagrin  
when we got within a Mile of them, We  
discovered that they were a Turnp-Back  
Cow & calf, Breaching, Finning, Long Tailing  
and Spouting, so We kept the Ship away again,



Rather Dull Music. 471

While each one took his own particular  
mode of Heaving all manner of curses  
on all Hump-Backs. We could easily have  
struck her, But, the Captain said he was  
Afraid of losing a Line, and the craft also.  
Lat  $33^{\circ} 02'$  North. Long  $52^{\circ} 41'$  West.

Sunday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind S, S.W. At daylight made  
sail & kept away N<sup>W</sup> West. Saw some Bonita  
and a couple of Hump-back Whales.

At Sundown Hove to Heaving S.W. with  
the Fore Topsail aback & double Reefed. Lat  $33^{\circ} 45'$  North. Long  $53^{\circ} 49'$  West.

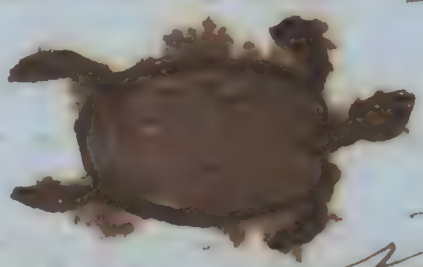
Monday 30<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze from South.  
Made sail at daylight and kept her  
away North. Saw Nothing but a few  
Porpoises & some small fish. At Sundown  
we took in all sail but, double Reefed  
Topsails & let her Run North all Night.  
Lat to day,  $34^{\circ} 17'$  North. Long  $55^{\circ} 01'$  West.

Tuesday 31<sup>st</sup> And Last day of May 1859.  
A Good Breeze from S, S.W. We made all  
Sail again at daylight And kept away  
North again. In the Forenoon, we saw  
some Porpoises, and Grampuses. We also  
Saw a Merchant Schooner and a Bark,  
Standing to the Eastward, And a Bark  
standing to the N.E. By, saw four more  
Sails standing to the Eastward. At Sundown  
we shortened sail as usual, and kept her  
N<sup>W</sup> all night. Lat  $35^{\circ} 58'$  N. Long  $55^{\circ} 13'$  West.

Wednesday, First Day of June 1859. Light  
Buffling winds, dark, cloudy, and some  
Rain. About 10 A.M. it broke away a little



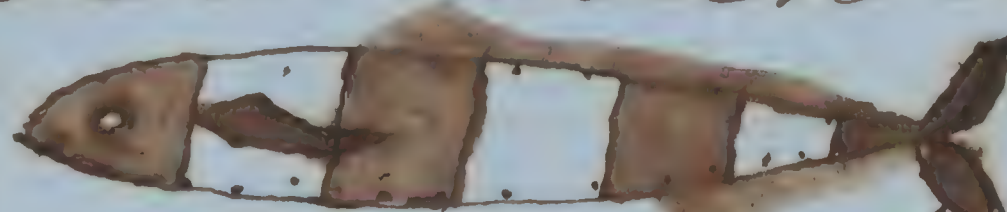

## 412 The Bark Parmelia.

And we saw a Vessel steering for us, By one O'clock P.M., she was within a couple of Miles of us, when it dying away calm, they lowered a boat & came on board of us, and our second Mate with a Boats crew went on board of her. She proved to be the Bark Parmelia Captain Slocum. Twenty eight days out four barrels of Blackfish Oil. The Captain remained on board of us until 5<sup>th</sup> P.M., when both Captains went on board the Parmelia, and we haggled until eight O'clock in the evening. We let them have some Onions, some Iron bolts, and a Sextant belonging to Job Davis our Agent. We obtained from them two bushels of Potatoes, some Beef & some Salsvatis; Our Men also obtained some Tobacco, Pipes, Soap, Books, Papers, &c. And I see by the list that we are reported with 300 barrels more oil, than we have actually got. Their Officers are Howland, Mosier, and White. We both stood to the S.E., under short sail, with a light Southerly wind. Lat  $36^{\circ}31'$  N. Long  $56^{\circ}03'$  West. Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Nearly Calm. Steering East. The Parmelia in sight all day, steering the same. Saw a couple of Finbacks. About 5<sup>th</sup> P.M. we saw a Large Spar, and a fine  alongside of it. We lowered a boat & struck the turtle, and towing the Spar alongside, we hoisted it in on deck. It was Larger Round than my body, and completely hid with Barnacles. When we had



# Massachusetts Pilot Fish. 413.

Scraped the Barnacles (about two Barrels) off, we found a fine New Scanthin, 30 feet in length, and five inches square. We then cleaned our Turtle, and got him all Ready for the brook Tomorrow. It being then Sundown, we took in Top Gallants & courses & let her head to Eastward. Late or Long, we got none.

Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & calm. The Parnelia still in sight. Saw a Finback, & a School of Killers, which we gave chase to with the Starboard boat, But they were too soon for us. We had some fine Turtle Soup for dinner fore & aft, And it was Delicious! After Dinner the Captain Borrowed my Grainsse & struck a fine large Pilot Fish  still larger than the one we caught 26 months Ago. He was the Largest of the kind that I ever saw Measuring 18 inches in length, 10  $\frac{3}{4}$  inches in circumference, and weighed two Pounds nine ounces. Towards Sundown we got a light breeze, & we kept her S E, all Night, under whole Topsails, Gail, And Spanker. Saturday 4<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good Breeze. Saw some Finbacks, Grampuses, Humpbacks and Porpoises, And About Ten o'clock A M, The Second Mate struck & saved  a fine one, As they were playing under the bows. About 5<sup>h</sup> P M, the Parnelia spoke us, & our Captain went on board of her sending Mr Howland with his boats crew on board of us. We harrmed until 10<sup>h</sup> P M, and we learned that the Captain had been telling some more lies



414 Captain Edgerton.

about his having taken Lunar Observations lately. And also that he had Tried to teach Mr Edgerton, (Our Former Mate,) But, found him too thick Headed. But, it so happened that Mr Howland was acquainted with Mr Edgerton, and informed us that when They sailed, Edgerton was Master of A Fine Merchant Bark, Sailing out of Boston; which I was much pleased to hear and more especially, as the news was gall & Hornwood to Captain Russell. We sold A Pair of Rigging Screws to The Parnelia for One Dollar, and fifty cents cash.

Latitude  $37^{\circ} 01'$  North. Longitude  $53^{\circ} 43'$  West. Night fine, Wind South, Shortened sail as usual. Sunday 5<sup>th</sup> Tacked Ship to the S.W. Rather Squally, and about half past five <sup>in the morning</sup> a Whirl-wind passed close to us, scaring us all down from aloft. Saw Plenty of Finbacks, & two or three Merchant Vessels. At Sundown we double reefed the Topsails & furled the courses, and before twelve o'clock we took in the main and spanker, & close reefed. We had some very heavy Squalls, accompanied by Heavy Rain, Thunder, & Lightning. Monday 6<sup>th</sup> Still Squally, with the wind from South. Made A little more sail, and stood on; Saw A couple of Merchantmen. By A, it had settled down into A good double Reefed Topsail Breeze, so we Tacked to the Eastward & gave her the Main-sail, as there was A Vessel following in our wake, and who we thought was gaining on us A little.



## The Bark Cleora.

415

By 5<sup>th</sup> P.M., she had overhauled us, and proved to be the Bark Cleora, of Bedford, Captain Atkins, 28 days out, 18 barrels of Sperm, and had lost two whales from alongside. Our Captain went on board of her, and changed boats crews, & sent the Mate here with his Boats crew. I had quite a gam with one of her Boatsteerers named Armstrong, one of their crew, was a Vestriologist, and he performed several feats to the great delight of our crew. Their Officers were Messrs Atkins, Cowey & Gifford. We gammed until half past nine in the evening, when we parted with the promise of another gam tomorrow as her Chronometer is over a degree out of the way. So we both stood to Eastward under snug sail & our lights set.

Tuesday 7<sup>th</sup> Rather Squally. Made sail but was obliged to take in again, before twelve o'clock. The Cleora on our lee. P.M., it was cloudy disagreeable weather with a light drizzling Rain, and half a Gale of Wind. At 4<sup>th</sup> P.M., we ran off and spoke the Cleora, with whom we agreed to keep company as it was too ragged to venture a gam to night. At Sundown we put her under close reefed topsails & T.M., Staysail & Main Spencer, & hove her to on the Starboard Tack, heading to the Eastward, and the Cleora did the same; it blowing fresh from the Southward accompanied by Rain, & quite a heavy sea running.



# 4416 A Gale Of Wind.

Wednesday 8<sup>th</sup> Thick, Foggy, Raining, and  
Blowing a Gale from the South. Saw  
Nothing of the Cleora. All hands below  
but the Boats crew Watches, until 3 P.M.,  
when it moderated, and cleared off; so we  
shook one Reef out of the Topsails, set  
the Jib, Spanker, and Foresail, and man-  
ned the Mast Heads. About 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., we  
saw The ~~Laurel~~<sup>Cleora</sup> on the Lee Beam, so  
we squared in & ran down to within three  
miles of her, when the Gale increasing, we  
had to close reefed again, & we had quite  
a rough, wet, night of it.

Thursday 9<sup>th</sup> Blowing Strong, but a  
clear sky. Shook out one Reef & set Jib  
Spanker, & Foresail. By 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., the wind  
increasing, we furled the Foresail. Saw  
the Finback. The ~~Laurel~~<sup>Cleora</sup> on the Lee Beam.  
Latitude  $37^{\circ}28'$  North. Longitude  $51^{\circ}41'$  West.  
at Sundown it commenced blowing  
stronger & we close Reefed her again.

Friday 10<sup>th</sup> Thick And Wet, & Blowing a  
Heavy Gale from South. We lashed down  
the Hatchets, lashed the Boats &c and sent  
all below but, a boats crew to a time.  
At 3 P.M., it blew the Fore Topmast-staysail  
all to Pieces, so we Broke out a New one  
and bent it. The Night set in dark & Raining  
blowing hard & a heavy Sea.

Saturday 11<sup>th</sup> About daylight the Gale  
broke but, the Heavy squalls continued.  
with an almost impenetrable Fog. About  
10 A.M., this Broke away & the sun came out



Finbacks And Blackfish. 417

The wind also moderating, we gave her whole Topsails Lib, Spunker, & Foresail. At 2 P.M., Old Barcas opened on us again, and we were obliged to take it all in again. We however got some sights & found our Lat<sup>e</sup>  $37^{\circ}53$  North. Long<sup>e</sup>  $49^{\circ}14$  West. By five P.M., the Wind abated, The clouds broke away, The sea commenced going down, and by Sundown (which is half Past Seven) it was nearly at dead calm & clear as we could wish it. One sail in sight supposed to be the Cleora, but about 10 miles North of us. Saw some Finbacks to day also.

Sunday 12<sup>th</sup> Good whalesail breeze from the South West, With a succession of thick Fog Squalls, full of fine Piercing Rain the whole day, which makes the Weather very chilly for this time of the year, in this Latitude. Saw Plenty of Finbacks, and one Large School of Blackfish, going to windward quick. At Sundown we shortened sail as usual & headed to the Southward.

Monday 13<sup>th</sup> A Beautiful day; Wind S.W., heading S.E. Made all sail. Saw one Finback, and Two Schools of Blackfish, we lowered the Starboard boat once But, could not get near them. There is Plenty of Small fish Round the Ship close to her Rudder, which they call Rudder Fish & weigh from half a Pound to a Pound. I caught 26 of them to day & the Captain caught three more & they are very nice Pan Fish. At Sundown we took in the Light sails & set her work to the Southward. Lat<sup>e</sup>  $36^{\circ}57$  N. Long<sup>e</sup>  $46^{\circ}26$  West.



4418 Another Assault And Battery.  
Tuesday 14<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Southerly wind.  
Made all sail. commenced Ripping up the  
Fore-topmast Staysail that we carried away  
on the 10<sup>th</sup> For it was too fast repairing  
The Captain Pitched into Mc<sup>c</sup> Nutt this  
Morning while I was to the Mast head, and  
after knocking him down, dragged him across  
the deck by the Hair of his Head & I saw  
when I came from aloft that one of his feet  
was badly skinned & bruised. It appears that  
the Captain Ordered him on to the sail, and  
Mc<sup>c</sup> said he had no knife, whereupon the  
Captain told the Steward to bring up a  
new one, which he threw to Mc<sup>c</sup>. Mc<sup>c</sup> said  
he did not want it! The Captain told him  
with an oath, to take it, or he would knock  
his dam'd head off! Mc<sup>c</sup> said he would take it  
but, he would not pay for it! Yes you will  
cried the Captain! No I won't! Replied Mc<sup>c</sup>  
You are not going to compel me to buy a  
knife! Shut up! Cried the Captain or I'll  
knock your dam'd head off your shoulders!  
That wouldn't look well! replied Mc<sup>c</sup>.  
I wouldn't it! Cried the Captain, & he then Pitched  
into him. Mc<sup>c</sup>, had the Knife open in his  
Hand the whole time, But, he never offered  
any Resistance; thereby telling the Captain  
when he got through; That he would make  
him suffer for it when the Vessel got Home.  
Saw one Sail to day, and Plenty of Fin-backs.  
I caught another fine M<sup>14</sup> of Redder fish for  
suffer to day. At Sundown took in the light sails  
Heading S. by E. Lat<sup>d</sup> 36° 59' N. Long<sup>d</sup> 46° 45' West.



# A Little Of All Sorts.

419

Wednesday 15<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze. Made sail all but The Fore Topsail, which we sent down, & was until 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., repairing it. Saw one sail to day, and one Dolphin.

I caught 12 more Rudder fish to day.

Lat  $36^{\circ} 48'$  North. Long  $46^{\circ} 05'$  West. Night Wind S.W.; Took in light sails & kept her going to the Southward & Eastward.

Thursday 16<sup>th</sup> A lovely Day, with a good Breeze, clear, and cool. Made all sail, and kept her going, The wind being the same as yesterday. Saw one sail; And the whole Ocean, appears to be alive with Fin-Back Whales to Day. Caught 4 more Rudder Fish.

By Sundown the wind was quite light; still, we took in the light sails, & let her run at that.

Lat  $35^{\circ} 47'$  North. Long  $44^{\circ} 31'$  West.

Friday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & S.W. wind. Saw two sails one ahead, and the other on the Lee Beam. Saw also, Plenty of Finbacks, Sulphor Bottoms, Porpoises, and Blackfish; lowered Starboard Boat for the Blackfish, But, got none. I caught two more Rudder fish to day. About three P.M., saw a large White Water on the Weather Bow, six miles off, we kept on until 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., when we squared away for the Lee Vessel. Their Captain got on board of us about 6<sup>h</sup> P.M., for the wind being light he did not wait for us to get to him, But, lowered a Boat & met us half way, we then kept on but did not get down to her before eight o'clock in the evening. when we hauled aback, and gummied until 9<sup>h</sup> 30<sup>m</sup> P.M.



4 420 The Orotaft, And the Doctor.

But no one went aboard of her from us. She Proved to be the Bark Orotaft Captain Fisher, of New Bedford nine Months and a half out 150 barrels of Sperm Oil. Her Officers were Messrs Osborne, Place, and Young. They had seen a School of Large Sperm Whales, here, last Monday. But, could not strike one they were so shy. At half past nine in the evening, we parted with the Promise of another Gam tomorrow. Taking in the Light Sails, we set a Light in our Stizen Rigging for her, Although the Moon was shining so bright, that you could scarcely discern the Light from our own decks. But, David is Bound not to lose a Gam! Not if he can help it. Lat  $34^{\circ}40'$  North Long<sup>e</sup>  $43^{\circ}01'$  West.

Saturday 18<sup>th</sup> Fine & Good breeze. Made all sail, & stood to the Westward, with the Wind South, and the Orotaft in our See About One mile off. About 8 A M, she Squared away before it, and after running a Couple of Miles, we up Helm, and followed her, suspecting she saw whales; And we were not mistaken, for about 9 A M, we saw with the Glass, a Whale Spouting ahead of her. She then lowered her Boat, But the Whale had two risings before we got near enough to lower, still they did not get fast. All Six Boats were after him the Next Rising, having agreed to throw our Chances together. The whale somehow had got the Run of us, and started off on the



# A Genuine Foo Paw 421

went to the East Southeast, and after chasing him until one P.M., Our Boats came on board as did two of theirs, got our dinners, and followed on after the Whale with the Vessels; Their Third boat still kept on after the whale who was going about on the wind, until half past two P.M., when he came alongside of us, and got his dinner the Whale being then about half a mile off on our Lee Bow, But we had concluded to let him be for an hour or so to see if he would get still again. At 4<sup>th</sup> P.M., we lowered away again from both the Vessels with all six boats; About five O'clock Mr. Warner went alongside of the Whale Wood & Blackskin, and Patterson darted both Irons at him but did not fasten. What the reason was I do not know. The Boat heeded says that he missed the Whale & Patterson says that the Irons struck him solid but the Irons bent and would not go in. However, the Whale went off, and we kept the Run of him until sundown, going his old course, and had got quite still again. So we had a game until half past ten in the Evening. The Cooper, while we were in chase of the Whale, let the Spy Glass fall from aloft & smashed it in pieces. The Longitude to day, as taken on board the Orontea was  $41^{\circ}57'$  West. Lat.  $34^{\circ}36'$  North. At sun down we shortened sail as usual & stood S. by E.





Cutting In Gear. (See Page 423)

422

(A)

(B)

No 2

No 1

No 3

No 4

No 5

No 6

No 7

No 8

No 9

No 10

No 11

No 12

No 3

No 15

(C)

No 13

No 14

No 16

No 17

No 20

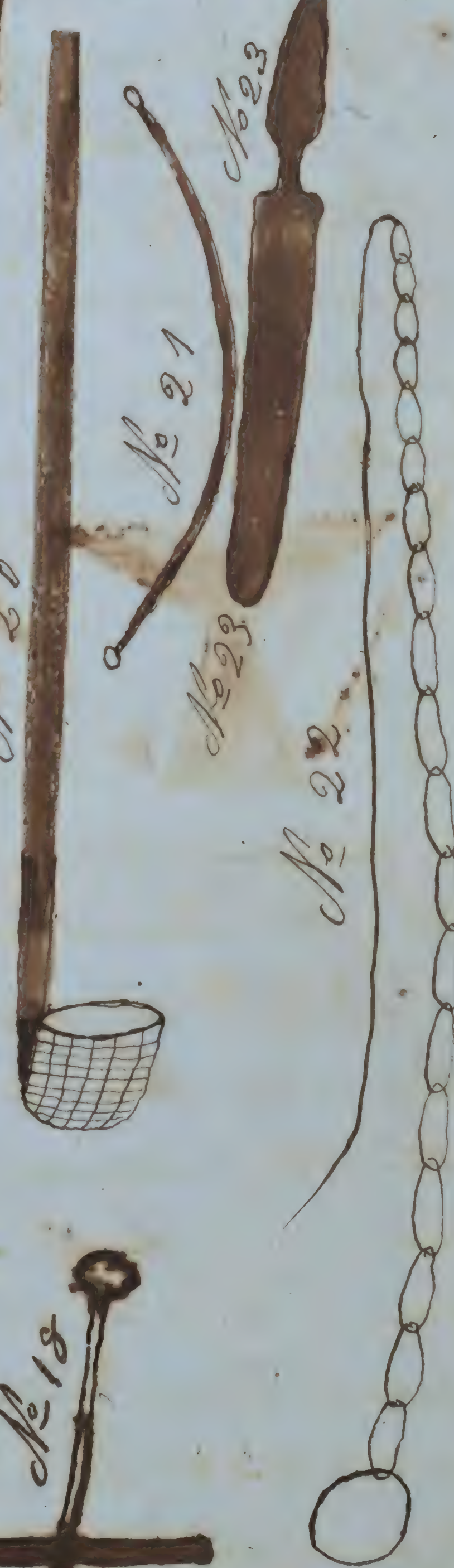
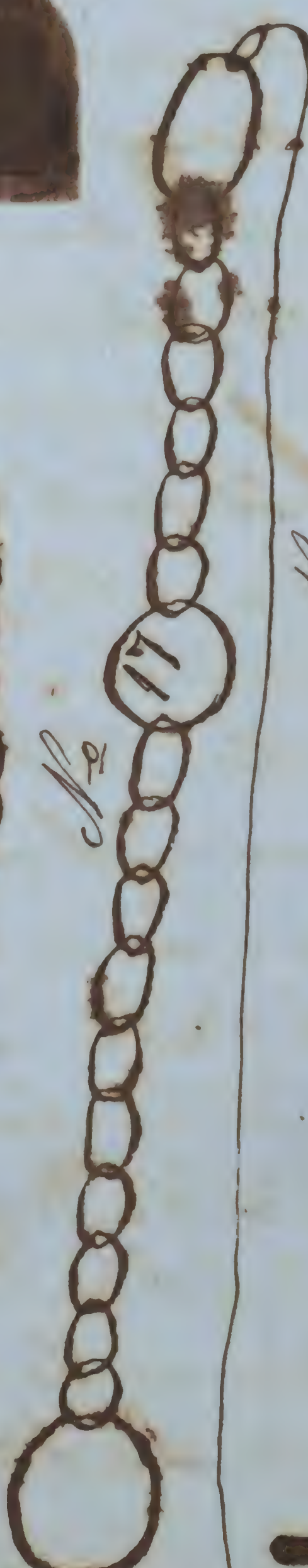
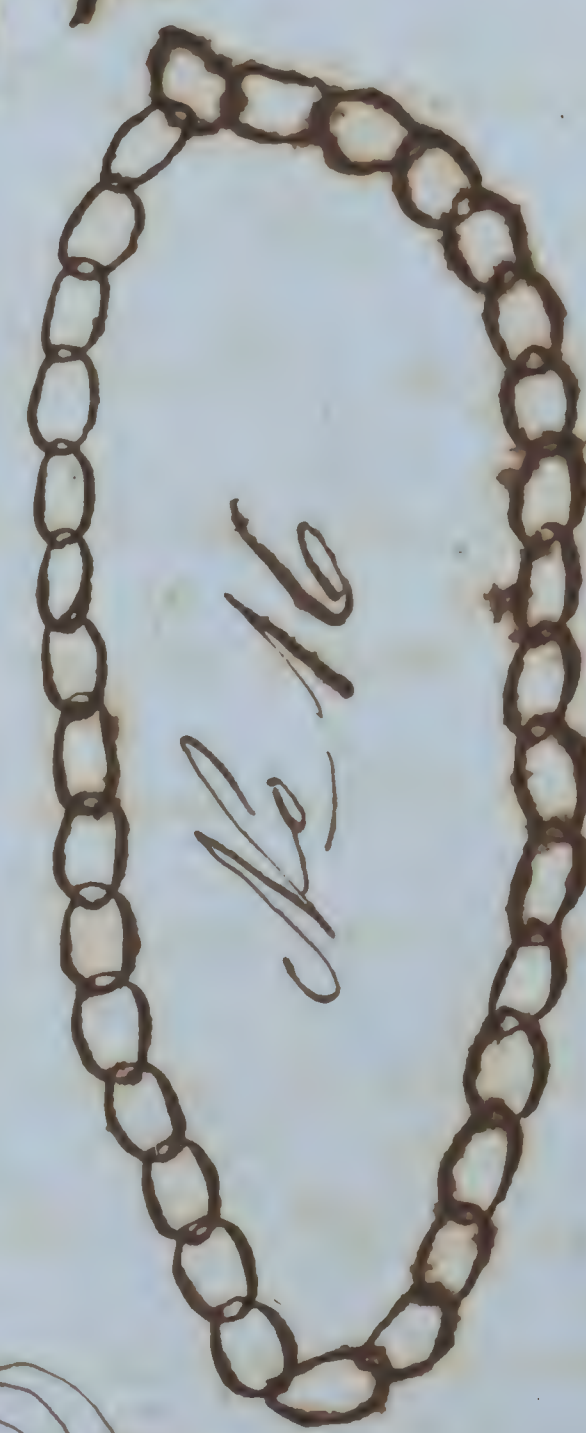
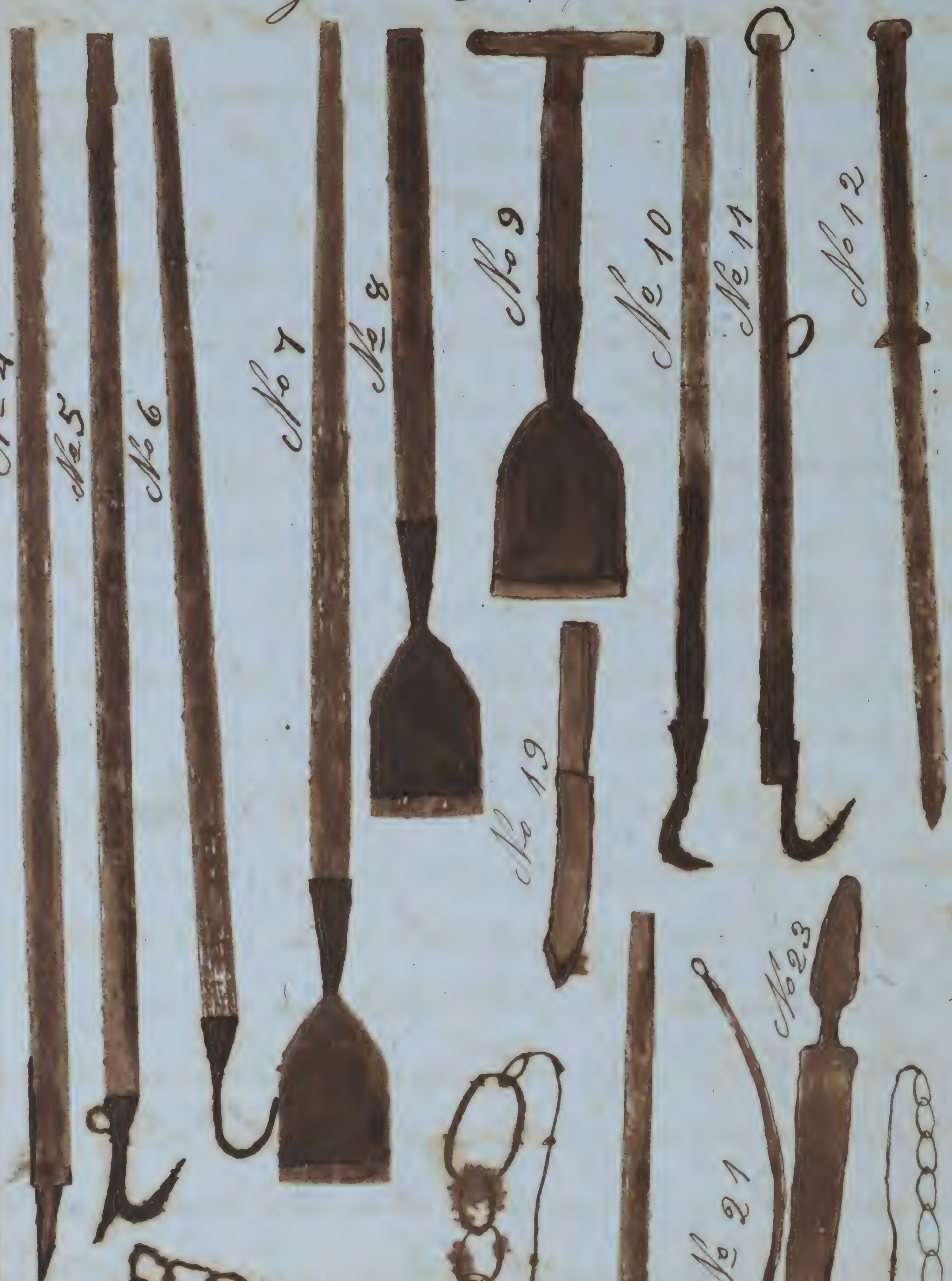
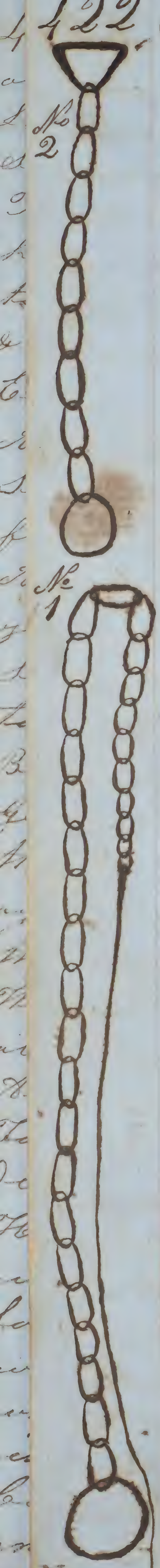
No 21

No 23

No 23

No 22

No 18





What Nos 1, 2, 3, 4, & 5 are Used For. 123

No 1. represents A Fleek Chain; This is passed Round the Whale, The Small end is then rove through the Large Ring at the Opposite End & hauled taught up Round the Small Part of the Whale, it is then led through A House Pipe on the Starboard bow and Made fast, which Secures the Whale alongside With his tail forward, and his head Amidships all ready to hook on & cut him in. See Page

No 2. Is The Mast head Bendants, for there is two; They are Made of very Strong Chain, The upper end, or Triangle is securely fastened to the head of The Mainmast & Lead down through the Lubber hole.

No 3. Represents one of the cutting Tacles Rove off of Those we have two. The Upper Ends Marked (A) is connected by A Shackle (No 13) to the Large Link in the Lower End of the cutting Bendants. The Small Block (B) has A Stout Rope Rove through it to guy the Tacles forward abreast of the Ships Gangway. The Lower Block (C) is for various uses, we first Shackle the Blubber Hook, (No 14) to it, to hook on to the Whale with or hook on to the Head Strap, (No 16) or Fin Chain (No 17) After the first Blanked Piece is Rose, The Blubber Hook is taken off, The Torgal (No 15) being used afterwards, by Loring the long strap of Block (C) through the Blubber & Shoving the Torgal through the Large thimble in the end.

No 4. Is A Large Pike, used for Bearing the whale off from the Ship, Bearing Head Chains & c out clear.

No 5, is A Large Boat Hook with A Small Ring in the Back of it for bending A Rope to. It is used for hauling the Whale in to the Ship, Hauling in Stray Junks of Blubber, Slipping Fleek Chains & c.



424 What Uses Nos 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, & 13 are put to.

No 6 Is A Line Hook, used for hooking up the line from the Boat that Brings the whale to the Ship, Ropes out of the water, or anything that may fall overboard, Boats, Caps, &c.

No 7 Is A Butting Spade, of which there is from eight to A dozen in use, with long handles for butting the Whale over the Side.

No 8 Is A Deck Spade, of which there is about half A dozen in use, for butting up Junk or other Blubber that is landed on deck.

No 9 Is A Blubber Room Spade of which there is Two, used for butting the Blubber Between decks, into Horse Pieces, That is, Pieces about 18 inches in length & 6 inches in Breadth

No 10 Is A Pike, of which we have A dozen They are used for Piking, (or throwing) the Blubber along after it is cut up small.

No 11 Is A Gaff of which there is A dozen. They are used for hauling Large Pieces of Blubber around, & holding them steady while they are cutting it up into Horse Pieces.

No 12 Is A Boarding Knife of which there is Three, They are used for cutting Holes in the Blanket Piece as it Raises, so that we can shove the Strop of Block (C) through & put the Torgal (No 15) in. It is then used for butting the upper Piece off so as to lower it down in the Boat, Also for butting the Harpoons out of the Blubber as they come above the Plankshire &c &c.

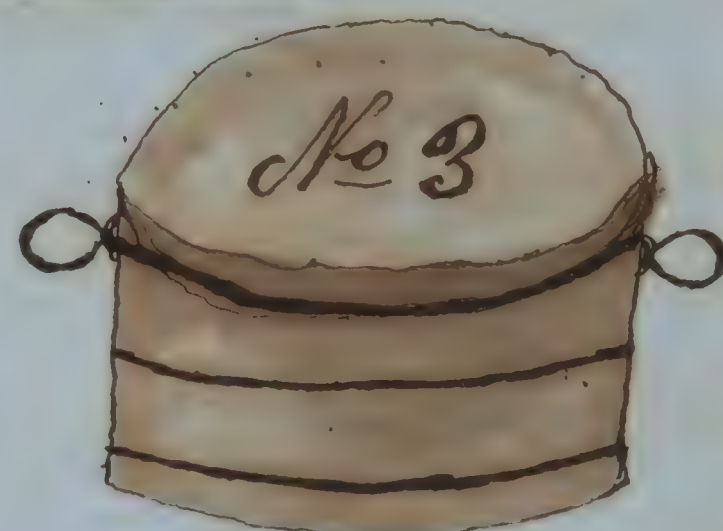
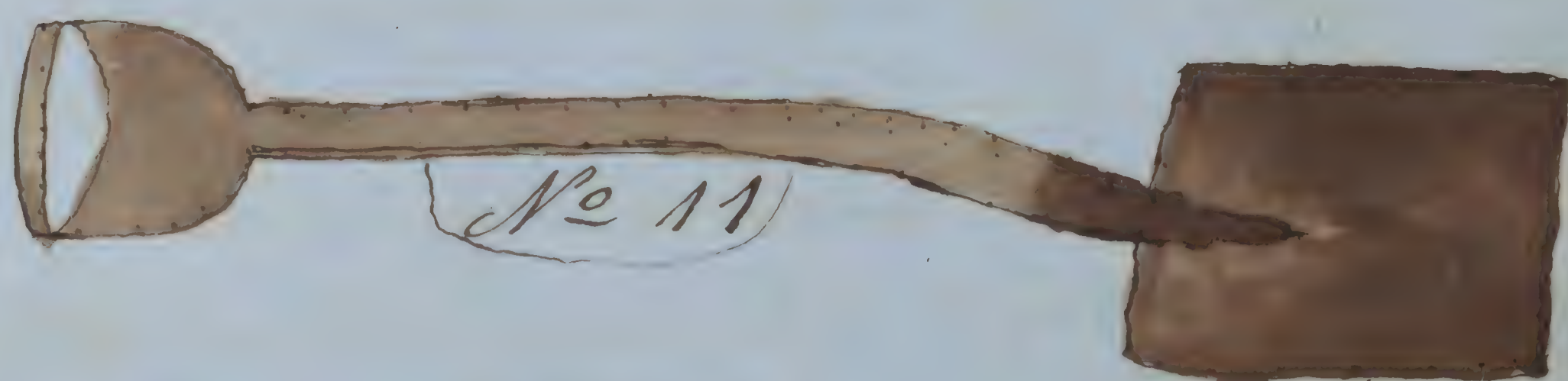
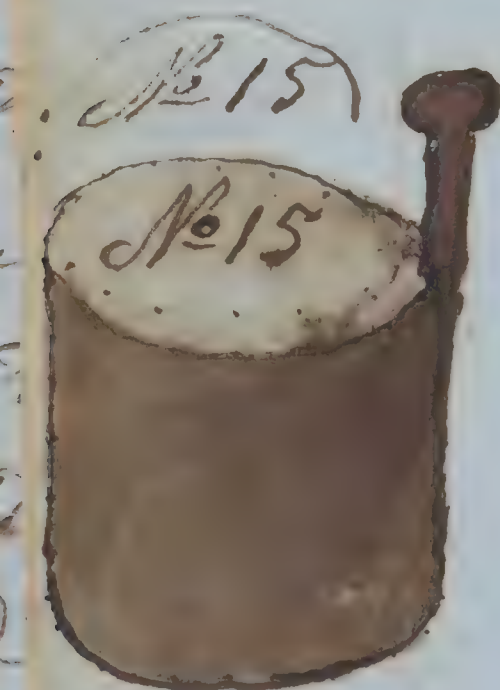
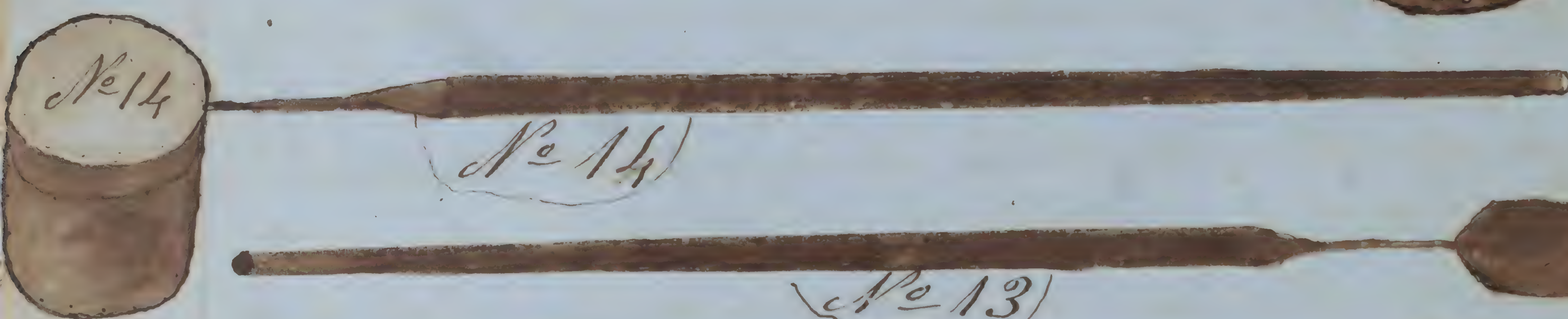
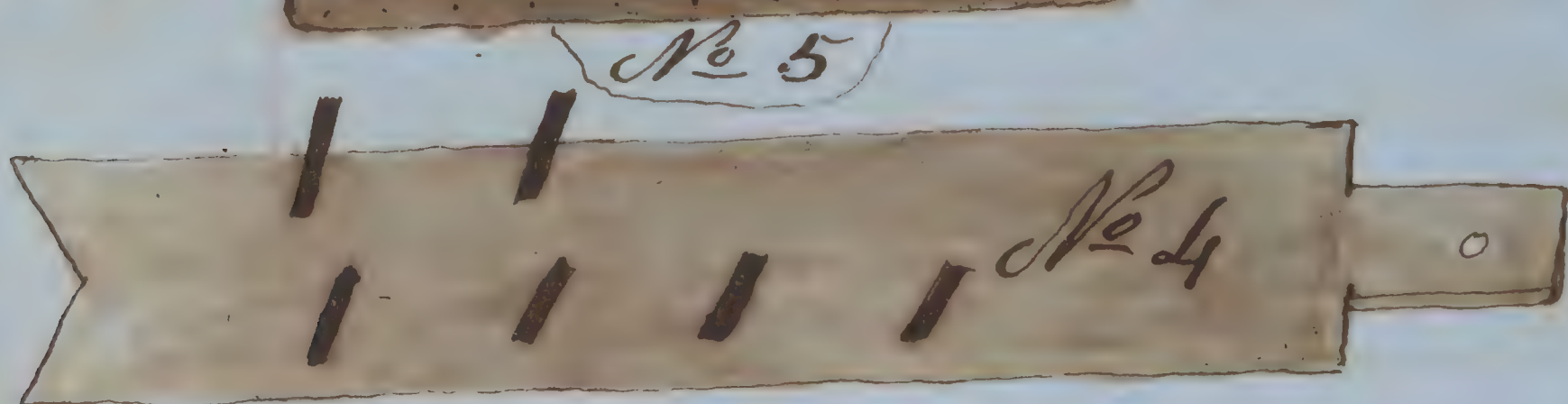
No 13 Is A Large Shackle, with Bolt & Key, used for attaching the Blubber Hook (No 14) to the Block (C) so as to hook on to the Whale &c.



What Nos 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, are used for. 425  
No 14 is A Blubber Hook of Which there is  
Two, used for hooking on to the Blubber, Fin  
Chain, Head Strap, Whales Head &c, &c.  
No 15 Is A Torgal used for Torgaling the Block  
Strop (C) when it is shoved through the Blanket Piece.  
No 16 Is A Head Strap of Strong Chain, used  
for Heaving A Whales Head or Case inboard.  
No 17 Is A Fin Chain, used for Putting Round  
Whales Fins, (excepting the Sperm Whale) so as  
to hook the Blubber Hook into the upper  
end, or Middle Ring, And raise the first Blanket Piece.  
No 18 Is A Torgal Strap, used when the Blanket  
Piece is Tender & not wide enough to cut A  
Large hole for The Strop & Torgal of Block (C)  
No 19 Is A Leaning Knife of Which there is  
half A dozen, used for cutting all the Lean  
Meat off of the Blubber before cutting it  
up into Horse Pieces with the Spades.  
No 20 Is A Scoop Net used for catching all the  
Slivers of Blubber, Made by cutting on the  
Whale & which float alongside of the Ship.  
No 21 Is A Head Needle, used for Reaving A  
Rope through A hole cut in the head, so as  
To haul the Head Chain, or Head Strop Through.  
No 22 Is A Head Chain, used for securing the  
Whales Head after it is cut off, until after  
they heave in the Blubber off of the Whales Body.  
No 23 Is A Stone Rifle, used for Whetting the  
Boarding Knives, Leaning Knives, Skining Knives,  
& sometimes Spades. And These are all the  
Articles, or Tools, that are used, to cut in  
any kind of A Whale at Sea, with the help of  
A Windlass & A couple of Watch Tackles.



426 Mining, And Boiling Apparatus



No 1



What Nos from one, to 8, are used for 427

N<sup>o</sup> 1 Is made To represent A Tryworks, with A Hooper, or Receiver for the Scraps of the Blubber after it is boiled, on the Right, and underneath is A Tub, to catch what Oil may dream off of them. On the Left, Marked (C) is A Large Copper boiler, for Receiving the hot Oil as it is Bailed from the Pots. Marked (O)

N<sup>o</sup> 2 Is A Thincing Tub, of which there is Generally four. One Sets by the Main Hatch way; into which the Horsepieces are Pitched from the Blubber Room; Another sets forward by the Starboard Topmast backstays, to which the Horse Pieces are conveyed by A Scrape Tub; The Third one is used for A Thincing Tub (Over Which the Thincing Horse is Placed) so as to Receive the Blubber, as it is Thinned Ready for Boiling. The Fourth Sets by the Starboard, Forward, corner of the Tryworks, Into this one the Blubber is Put, as fast as it is Thinned, Ready for the Pots.

N<sup>o</sup> 3 Is A Scrape Tub; Used for carrying Blubber Oil, &c, to and Fro round the Ship of which there is <sup>four</sup>

N<sup>o</sup> 4 Is The Thincing Horse, on Which the Horse Pieces are Thinned Ready for Boiling.

N<sup>o</sup> 5 Is The Thincing Knife, of which there is three or four, for Slicing the Blubber Thin.

N<sup>o</sup> 6 Is A Short hand Gaff, for Hooking up the Horse Pieces, Placing them on the Horse, & Steadying them, whilst undergoing the Operation of Thincing.

N<sup>o</sup> 7 Represents A Horse Piece after it is Thinned Ready to be Put into the Pot.

N<sup>o</sup> 8 Is A Fork, used for Pitching the Blubber into the Pots, after it is thinned, Ready for Boiling



## 428 What Nos 9 To 15 Are Used For.

N<sup>o</sup> 9 Is A Stirring Pole, or Rod, used for stirring the Blubber whilst Boiling, to keep it from sticking to the sides, and Bottom of the Pots. They generally have two.

N<sup>o</sup> 10 Is A Fire Pike, of Which there is two; used as Rakers, for stirring the Fires up.

N<sup>o</sup> 11 Is An Iron Shovel, used for feeding the Fires, with the Fire Scraps, Throwing the Hot ashes &c overboard; Scraps being the only fuel used to Boil out the Blubber.

N<sup>o</sup> 12 Is A Skimmer, used for Skimming off the Scraps, after they are sufficiently boiled, And conveying them to the Hooper to dry, ready to be used for Fuel, for the Next Pot.

N<sup>o</sup> 13 Is A Long Handled, Flat Scraper, or Spade, used for Scraping all the Particles of Blubber from the sides, and Bottom of the Pots, that may have Baked on whilst boiling, Previous to Putting on A Fresh Pot of Blubber.

N<sup>o</sup> 14 Is A Long Handled Bailer, used for Conveying the Hot Oil, from the Pots to the Copper Cooler

N<sup>o</sup> 15 Is A Short Handled Bailer, used for Conveying the Oil from the Copper Cooler, To the Funnel which runs it into the Casks.

The drawings on Pages 422, & 426 Represents the whole of the Instruments used for cutting in Whales, and boiling them out, as well as I can draw them, with Nothing but Pen, and Ink; And Several Whalersmen of long standing, to whom I have shown them, Pronounced them to be very fair Specimens, as also, the Boats Gear on Page 29,



Continued From Page 421. 429

Sunday June the 19<sup>th</sup> 1859, Was a beautiful day. At 2<sup>h</sup> A.M., we wore ship to the Westward. At half Past five we wore Round again, having all sail on her, & kept her E. N.E. the Orotaft steering the same, about five miles off, on our Starboard Beam. At 11<sup>h</sup> A.M., A Breach was reported 10 miles off on our Starboard Bow, so we Luffed to the wind & stood on until 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., when seeing nothing we wore round & kept her N.W. by West.

The Orotaft went out of sight to the North. Lat =  $34^{\circ}49'$  North. Long =  $42^{\circ}01'$  West. Just before sundown saw some Breaches to the Northward so we double reefed, and laid with the Main topsail aback all Night. I found our Old Hen's Nest to day with three Eggs in it and also found beyond doubt, that she laid Two Eggs to day, one of them having a soft shell on it & the other Perfect.

Monday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine. At daylight we made all sail, and kept away North, the wind being S, S.E. At 9<sup>h</sup> A.M., we Luffed to the wind on the Starboard Tack. Saw one Sail. Our Old Hen laid Two Eggs to day and both of them Perfect in every respect. Saw also some Finbacks, Blackfish, and Porpoises, caught 9 more Redder fish to day. Lat =  $35^{\circ}10'$  North. Long =  $42^{\circ}02'$  West. At sundown, double Reefed & stood Easterly.

Tuesday 21<sup>st</sup> Fine & strong breeze; made all sail. At 7<sup>h</sup> A.M., Tacked to Westward. Sent the Shanker down, repaired it & bent it again. Saw several Merchant Vessels, one of



## 430 Running The Ground Over.

which, A Thermophrodite Brig, came near enough to compare Longitudes with us, & we agreed in Time. Lat =  $36^{\circ} 00'$  North. And Long =  $41^{\circ} 54'$  West. At Sundown shortened sail as usual. Saw nothing to day but some pieces of Squid & One Finback.

Wednesday 22<sup>nd</sup> A Fine day & good breeze. Saw nothing But Squid & Porpoises.

Lat =  $35^{\circ} 21'$  North. Long =  $43^{\circ} 12'$  West. At Sundown shortened sail as usual.

Thursday 23<sup>rd</sup> Fine & dead calm. Just at daylight, I struck A large Sunfish, hauled him Onboard & took out his Liver to make oil & threw the rest overboard, as no one would eat any of the last one that was caught, (See Page 139.) At 5<sup>h</sup> A M, Saw A large School of Blackfish. Lowered all three Boats, & chased until 7<sup>h</sup> A M, without Success. After Breakfast we caught 12 fine large Rudder fish, with hook & line. Saw Plenty of Porpoises, Grampuses, and all sorts of Anomalocula, with which the Water was thick. About 4<sup>h</sup> P M, we took A light breeze from N<sup>W</sup>, & kept her E, S E. Running all night with whole Topsails. Lat =  $35^{\circ} 08'$  North. Long =  $43^{\circ} 02'$  West.

Friday 24<sup>th</sup> Fine, & Strong N<sup>W</sup> winds. Made sail, & kept on E, S E. At 10<sup>h</sup> A M, hauled up South. At 12 we hauled her up S W by W. At 2<sup>h</sup> P M, hauled on the wind W, N W. Lat =  $34^{\circ} 12'$  North. Long =  $41^{\circ} 51'$  West. Saw nothing to day but A couple of Sails. At Sundown shortened sail as usual. Wind North.



# Another Grand Mistake. 431

Saturday 25<sup>th</sup> Strong N by East winds, with Fog & Rain Squalls, in the Forenoon. P.M., it was quite fine with a thick haze on the Horizon. Lat:  $33^{\circ}14'$  North. Long:  $42^{\circ}56'$  West. kept her going all Night, W, N.W., under whole topsails Lib & Spunker. Saw one Finback.

Sunday 26<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light North Winds. Made all sail, course W, N.W. Saw lots of Porpoises, and Grampuses. Lat:  $32^{\circ}55'$ , Long:  $44^{\circ}16'$  West. At Sundown, we took in the Light as usual & let her go to Westward. Before Midnight it was a dead calm.

Monday 27<sup>th</sup> Fine & dead calm. Saw two Sails & a few small fish. At 7 P.M. we got a light breeze from Eastward & kept her N.W. by West under whole Topsails, and courses. Got no sights to day.

Tuesday 28<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Easterly winds. Saw a Gam of Humpbacks at Sunrise hauled Easterly, & they pronounced them Sperm Whales; This created a great Bustle getting the Boats ready, and hurrying up the Cook with Breakfast, we sat down to it at six O'clock, when we were informed we might take our Time, as they had all turned to Humpbacks. Saw plenty of Porpoises, Grampuses, Dolphin, & Yellow tail, and I succeeded in butchering one of the latter, a fine large one. Saw one sail steering to the Northward. Lat:  $32^{\circ}46'$  North. Long:  $45^{\circ}48'$  West. At Sundown we took in the Light sails & let her Run N.W. by West.





# 432 The Bark Thomas Winslow.

Wednesday 29<sup>th</sup> Fine; Saw two sails at day light. At 7 A M, Spoke one Who Proved to be the Thomas Winslow of New Bedford, Capt<sup>n</sup> Reed Months out, Oil not stated. Had seen no Whales for two Months Back, She Was bound to the Southward as he said, & we to the Westward. So after Tailing, we both kept on our Respective Courses. Saw a few small fish, Plenty of Gulf Weed, and some White water that did not amount to anything. At Sundown, took in the Light sails and kept her going N<sup>W</sup> by West. and another sail in sight ahead of us. Lat = 33° 13' North. Long = 47° 29' West.

Thursday 30<sup>th</sup> and last day of June 1859. Fine & a Strong South Wind. Set the Courses at daylight & kept her W, N<sup>W</sup>. The Brake out to day & found we had but five Barrels of Wheat in the Ship besides 10 days allowance in the Barrels Cask. Saw several Merchant Men in sight. At 2 P M, we Braced Sharp on the wind on the Port tack heading W, S W. and the wind South. Lat = 33° 44' North. Long = 49° 08' West. At Sundown we double Reefed the Topsails, hauled the Courses up, & let her dodge along. Friday The First Day of July 1859, Fine. Wind South, Made Sail at Daylight & kept on, on the Port tack. Saw a few Birds & a School of Porpoises, also one sail to the Southward of us, who Ran down to us by 6 P M, and Proved to be the Ship Mahawk Capt<sup>n</sup> Swain, of Nantucket, Six



The Ship Mohawk 438  
Weeks out, clear. Had seen Sperm Whales  
Once, but could not get near them. The  
Gammed until half Past nine in the  
Evening, & I met some Old acquaintances  
who informed me that times were very  
dull to Home, and also, that a War  
had broke out Between France and  
Austria, that Threatened to convulse  
all Europe. The Mohawk's Officers  
were Messrs, Smith, Biers, & Smith.  
We were round heading to Eastward  
and the Howhawk, to Westward, and by  
11 o'clock it was dead calm, which con-  
tinued so the Whole Night. Long: 50° 22' W.  
Saturday 2<sup>nd</sup> Fine & Calm, The Mohawk  
about five miles from us. About half  
Past Six we saw her three boats over  
four mile from her apparently after  
Whales, and Reported it, But our Captain  
who was Busy Painting a Ditty Box, Paid  
no attention to it, more than to tell us  
to keep a good Lookout for them, although  
there had Sprang up a nice little Breeze  
at the time, & Mr Warner our Mate was  
very angry, & swore he would enter it in the  
Log Book. About noon it died away calm  
again. At 4 P M, the Howhawk set her  
colors for us, & our Captain went on  
board of her, although she was about six  
miles off. Their Third Mate came here & we  
Gammed until 11 P M when a light breeze  
Sprung up we kept her S W by W. The M had  
lowered for Black fish this Morning, & got One.



434 The Fourth of July 1859

Sunday July 3<sup>rd</sup> Fine & dead Calm. Saw  
a few Dolphin & a Shark. The Mohawk about  
Six miles from us all day & one more sail  
in sight. Lat  $\approx 33^{\circ} 20' N$ . Long  $51^{\circ} 04' W$ .  
at Sundown we got a light breeze from S E,  
so we took in light sails & steered N W.

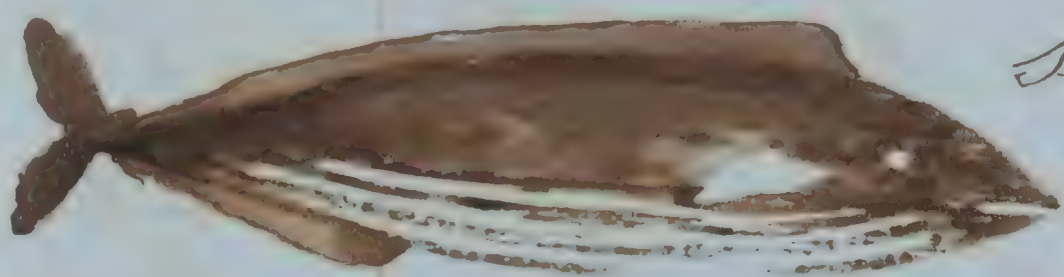
Monday The Fourth of July 1859. Very  
light winds from the N E. Course N W.  
We did no manner of work to day, and I  
could not help thinking of the difference  
between this Fourth & Last Year's Fourth.  
And although I expect to be home in about  
a month from this, I heartily wish I was  
there now, for I do not think we will  
get any more oil & all hands fore, and  
aft are anxious only, to get home; I do  
not expect to have a single cent coming  
to me, & I have not got a decent suit of  
clothes to wear when I get there! with  
such amusing Reflections, and Pleasant  
thoughts, I have managed to while away  
this glorious Anniversary of our American  
Independence, and I feel pretty certain  
that all hands had full as much enjoym  
ent as I did. Some of our men have  
commenced making small wagons, to  
draw their chests & bedding after them  
as they travel from West Port over to New  
Bedford, knowing well, that they will not  
have enough to pay their fare over, in  
the stage that runs between the two places.  
Is not this Encouraging! after nearly Three  
Years confinement, and hard Labour! Very!



# The Seventh Wonder. 435

At sundown, we took in the courses, & light sails, and then squaring the yards, kept away, South by west, with a five knot breeze from the N.E. Long:  $51^{\circ}46'$  West. Plenty of Dolphin, and yellow Tail round the ship but we could not succeed in catching one. Tuesday, 5<sup>th</sup> Bobalition Day Forever!

Fine and a good breeze from the East. Saw some bow Fish, and one Merchant man. The Bark Parnelia passed within a quarter of a mile of us at 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., and we neither made a signal nor spoke each other. This is the first time the whole voyage, that we have let a chance pass, where we could have had a gain! Something Unusual is going to happen! It is the talk of the whole ships company both fore & aft, & I should not wonder if we soon got a Whale; for although we have had fish around the ship this sometime back, we could not catch any. but! no sooner had the Parnelia passed without a gain, than Perkins struck & saved a fine ship Lark. And shortly after I struck & saved another one.



They came very acceptable I can tell you, for meat of any kind is a scarce article nowadays both at supper & breakfast table, & many a hollow space in the stomach, is filled up with a hearty dram from the Scuttle Butt. Lat:  $32^{\circ}07'$  North. Long:  $51^{\circ}42'$  West. At sundown took in light sails & headed S.E. by South.



436 Bark's Maria, and Iowa.

Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> Fine, & Easterly winds. At daylight made sail & kept away South. several sails in sight. At 10 A.M., we spoke Ship Maria of New Bedford, the oldest vessel in the United States, and said to be the first armed vessel that ever flew the Stars & Stripes in the Channel of Old England. She was commanded by Captain Abbott & was 34 months out 700 barrels of Sperm Oil, having taken 140 barrels of it round about where we are now within the last three Weeks. Her Officers were Messrs Tallman, Vere, and Cammey. At 11 A.M., we saw another Whaler to the Leeward of us, so both of us up helm and ran down to her. She proved to be the Bark Iowa, Hoovers, of Fairhaven, 33 Months out, 900 H.B., and 500 of Sperm Oil. All three Captains came on board of us. The Maria's Mate, went on board of the Iowa, but our Mate would not go. All three of the Second Mates, were on board of the Maria, and here we laid under Short Sail, huddled close together, all the Rest of this lovely day for Whaling. We learned from the Iowa that she had struck a large Whale a few days ago and got him spouting blood, when he sounded, took their line & escaped them. They also informed us that the Pamela had struck three large Whales since we saw her & saved one. The Bark Sarah of Nantucket had got a large Whale here &



# An Old Shipmate.

437



few days ago, as also the Schooner James had got an 80 barrel Whale, and several other Vessels had taken whales in this Neighbourhood whose names I have forgot. Captain Hoovers, was an old Ship Mate of mine & we had quite a long chat together about Old times & about the different whereabouts of our other Ship Mates, some of whom were dead, others Rich, and some Retired. And out of 32 Men of us, that were Shipmates together twenty years ago, we knew but 11 that were living, and only four of us following the Sea for a livelihood. We hauled until 10 O'clock at night, taking letters from them, as we intend to be at home by the 15<sup>th</sup> of August, and both of them by the first of September. We then wore round and headed to the Northward taking in the Light Sails. Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> Fine, Wind East. Made sail and kept away N.W. Saw two Sails astern, supposed to be the Iowa & Maria. (I forgot to mention that the Iowa's Officers were Messrs, Taber, Gallagher, & Andrews.) Saw nothing to day but some Sharks. Latitude  $31^{\circ} 12'$  North. Longitude  $52^{\circ} 19'$  West. Friday 8<sup>th</sup> Fine & Light Breeze. At daylight made sail & kept away N.W. again. Saw nothing but some And Mr Warner caught four of them. Lat  $31^{\circ} 35'$  North. Longitude  $52^{\circ} 49'$  West. At sundown hove to under double reefed topsails, same as last night.





# 438 Who Dore It.

Saturday 9<sup>th</sup> Fine & very light breeze.  
 Made Sail & kept her off N.W. West hold, and  
 then Broke out two Barrels of Beef, of which  
 we made 16 Bunches, each Bunch being the  
 allowance for One Day. Some of the other  
 managed to get one barrel into seven Bunches  
 and all put into the Harpers cask, but one  
 Bunch, which from its size, attracted the  
 Suspicion of the Captain, who had it all  
 taken out & finding but seven Bunches  
 made them make eight of it again, all  
 the while muttering threats of vengeance  
 if he only could find out who did it; And  
 I could not help laughing, as I gazed astant  
 at the long Methodistical looking countenances  
 of those concerned in it, while they all  
 denied any knowledge of the transaction.

Mr Warner caught another  Bonita.  
 And after Breakfast I caught  
 a fine Yellow Tail.  There was a  
 number of Bonita,  
 and Dolphin around us to day but we caught  
 no more of them. Got no sight to day. At  
 Sundown we reefed down & luffed to.

Sunday 10<sup>th</sup> A dirty Squally looking  
 day, although the winds were light and  
 variable, with a few light sprinklings of  
 Rain. Saw nothing but some Grampuses.  
 Night set in fine & we took in nothing  
 but the light sails and luffed to the wind  
 having been steering N.W. all day. During the  
 Night we let down the Topsails, furled the Gib  
 and Spunker. Lat<sup>d</sup> 32° 22' North Long<sup>d</sup> 53° 47' West.



# Shipping & Sea.

439

Monday 11<sup>th</sup> 32 Months from home. Rather dirty looking Weather. We made sail at daylight, and were round to the Southeast the Wind being South & Steadily increasing. By 8 A.M., we commenced taking in sail double reefing the Topsails and furling both Fore, & Main Sails. P.M., Took in the Jib & Spanker. At 5 P.M., called the Men down from aloft, and at sundown we close reefed the Fore topsail. Night set in with good Moonlight, which made the straggling clouds look wild; The Gale was quite fresh & the Sea High. About Midnight, the Gale suddenly broke, leaving it nearly dead calm for about three Minutes, during which time she shipped the heaviest Sea I have seen her ship this Voyage. It completely buried her, from the End of the Bowsprit to the Waist of the Vessel. The decks were flooded for some Minutes and nearly all hands drove out of their berths in the Forecastle. The Breeze soon freshened again & she made very good weather of it the Remainder of the Night, much to our satisfaction.

Tuesday 12<sup>th</sup> The Gale had moderated and the Weather was clear. Gave her double Reefed Topsails, Jib, Spanker, and Foresail. we then wore ship, and left her West, the Wind being South. After Breakfast, we got up all the Spare Lances, Harpoons, Spades &c, and unrigged all



440 Happy In Misery.

the spare Harpoons we had set up. All excepting what was in the Boats; the cleaned & Tanned them & Put them on top of the House to dry ready to be headed up in a cask. The Old Man told us all that he would start for Thorne in eight days more. It was Joyful News for all; who looked quite happy at hearing of the near approach to Liberty. I should have danced for Joy myself, had it not been for a Bad Lorc, on my Left Ankle, which was full of Broun & Flesh, & I covered it with Powdered Blue Vitriol; This caused me however, to Dance for Misery, fore & aft the decks like a crazy Man; the whole forenoon while my Shipmates the Heartless wretches seemed to enjoy themselves prodigiously, while laughing at the exquisite torture I was undergoing. I have suffered all day with the Burning Pain of it & now to night it Begins to feel quite comfortable again & looks better also. Our Latitude to day was  $32^{\circ}30'$  North. and Longitude  $52^{\circ}47'$  West. At Sundown we took in all but double Reefed Topsails & let her run West.

Wednesday 13<sup>th</sup> Strong Breeze & Cloudy. Set the courses, Single Reefed Topsails, Lick & Spanker, Steering West. At 10 A.M. we passed an Outward Bound Whaler, about four Miles from us, and a Merchant Brig about half a Mile from us. P.M. the wind



# Very Bad Weather. 441

kept increasing, so we took in the courses  
Jib and Spanker & double reefed the Topsails  
then kept off  $W, N, W.$  & let her run so all  
Night. Lat  $32^{\circ} 38' N.$  Long  $54^{\circ} 43' West.$   
Thursday 14<sup>th</sup> Blowing Fresh. Set Jib &  
Spanker but soon had to take them in  
again. About 3<sup>h</sup> P.M., it came on to blow  
heavy from the South. Accompanied  
by heavy Rain & Thunder & Chain Lightning  
At 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., we wore ship & were obliged  
to close reef the Topsails & got Preventer  
Braces on the Lower & Topsail Yards. and  
Lumpers on the Lower yards also. Night  
set in with very heavy Squalls, Rain  
Thunder, & Lightning, and continued so all  
the night through. The Wind S.W.  
Friday 15<sup>th</sup> The Gale at its height &  
blowing fearfully, with tremendous  
heavy Rain. All below but 8 Boats  
crew at 8 Time. She is a Noble old Sea  
boat & although we shipped a Number  
of heavy Seas, we experienced no damage.  
The Captain is rather Skittish, and  
he allowed if we got safe over this  
Gale he would Point her for home  
as soon as the Lord would send him a  
Fair Wind, And I hope it will be  
very soon. About 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., It began to  
Moderate, and by sundown the clouds  
broke away and it began to clear off.  
by 9<sup>h</sup> P.M., we had a Clear Sky with a  
Good Moon Light, and the Gale and  
Sea going down nicely. Thank God!



## 442 Homeward Bound.

Saturday 16<sup>th</sup> A light breeze from the N<sup>W</sup>, and heavy clouds hanging all round the Horizon. We wet the Flats broke out flour & the last of our Butter, about eight pounds. We then made all sail on her, & the Leach Rope of the Gaff Topsail Parting we sent it down to repair it, for which Purpore we ripped it few patches off of the Old Lib that we unlent at Princes Island, and then dumped the Old fellow overboard. After Breakfast it died away calm and the Captain gave orders to Bend the Royals, & Studding Sails, send up the Studding Sails Booms & blocks, and see all gear in Proper order for clasping them on to her the First fair Breeze. It would have done your heart good to have seen the Sailors Bustling Around, Humming over, that Good Old Song, Hurry! we are Homeward Bound! Hurry! we are Homeward Bound! Indeed every one was in high spirits, and by three O'clock in the Afternoon we had every thing in readiness to Put it on her At ~~at~~ Horneats notice. About 4 P<sup>M</sup>, we got a light breeze from South West, so we set every thing that would draw, and kept her N<sup>W</sup> by West. It however hauled West by sunset & we headed along ~~North~~ Northwest all night. At 7 P<sup>M</sup>, We set half Matches again, And I am in hopes that Boats Crew Matches are at an end for



# Old Neptune Forever. 443

This Voyage. It was my first Watch below  
But, there was no Sleep to be got, for the  
crew were in such fine Spirits, to think  
we had at last made a Start, that they  
once more got up the Old Fiddle & Bones,  
and had a Regular Jubilee until near  
Midnight, and I felt so happy myself, that  
I enjoyed the Fun by listening to them, as  
well as if I was with them. Our Lat<sup>h</sup> to day  
was  $32^{\circ} 16'$  North. & Long<sup>h</sup>  $56^{\circ} 02'$  West.

Sunday 17<sup>th</sup> Fine & Clear, with a light West  
Wind, heading N, N.W. All hands had a  
Regular Good wash from head to foot to day,  
having saved a cask of Rain water during  
the last Gale for that purpose. A Member  
of us Tried to coax a fair wind out of old  
Neptune, by throwing him over a number  
of Old Shirts, Pants, &c. and one man went  
so far, as to let him have his Bed; It may  
appear Singular! But, it is still true, that  
before dinner we had come up her Course  
N.W. by W. and by six O'clock P.M. we had the  
Yards squared in & the Steudding sails set  
with a fine Southerly breeze and as soon  
as the Moon came from aloft at Sundown  
we gave her the Foe & Hair Royals. And  
there is scarcely a Man forward but what  
firmly believes, & would maintain their  
belief by force of Arms, that Old Neptune  
had sent us this fair wind in exchange for  
our free Offerings of this morning. Lat<sup>h</sup> to day  
 $32^{\circ} 58'$  North. Long<sup>h</sup>  $56^{\circ} 47'$  West. Saw one Sail to  
day. The breeze finally settled down in the S.W.



## 444 A Heavy Gale.

and kept increasing steadily, until we had taken in the Royals & Studding Sails before 12 O'clock & the Old Doctor was flying. Monday 18<sup>th</sup> The wind increasing with every appearance of a Gale; Took in Tly Lib, Gaff Topsail, Fore & Main top Gallant Sails in succession, and before 12 O'clock Noon we had taken in Lib, Spanker, & Mainsail, and double reefed the Topsails. She was still going her course N<sup>W</sup> by W, & fairly heaving herself. After dinner we close reefed the Topsails & at 1:30 P.M., took in the Foresail. About 2:30 P.M., a very heavy Squall struck us, the heaviest one I have seen the whole voyage, & accompanied by a deluge of Rain we let the Topsail Run down on the Cap & hauled out the Reef tackles & Buntlines. we however sustained no damage though nearly on our Beam ends. It was fortunate we had no more sail on her, or I feel sure we would have had some Broken spars & Remnants of Canvas. The Squall lasted but a few minutes, when it cleared off & the Gale began to moderate, we then Reefed the Foresail & set it, & by five O'clock P.M., we had the Reef out of it again, one Reef out of the Main Topsail, and set the Lib & Spanker. But it came on heavy again & before Sundown we had her under close Reefed Main Topsail Fore Topmast Stay Sail & Main Spruce, It kept increasing and by 8 O'clock it blew a Perfect Hurricane, and for about one hour we



A Young Hurricane. 445  
lay with our Starboard Leuppers under  
water & her trembling like a Leaf to it  
the Topmast Staysail gave way, But we  
saved it. We would have put her before  
it but she would not pay off, And we  
dare not start the Main Topsail Sheets  
for fear Spars & all would go; All this  
time the Rain fell in Torrents and  
flew with such velocity, that if you  
attempted to turn to windward you  
were instantly Blinded, Added to this  
incessant flashes of Lightning and the  
most deafening Peals of Thunder, Oh!  
it was frightful! we have seen nothing  
like it before, this voyage, & I hope I never  
will again. About 5 P.M., she Righted  
again and from that until Midnight  
we had a continuation of heavy Squalls  
Rain Thunder, And Lightning.  
Tuesday 19<sup>th</sup> About two o'clock this  
Morning the Gale Broke & it cleared  
off. We commenced to make sail gradu-  
ally & by 7 o'clock had all sail on her  
but the Fore top Gallant sail and  
gaff topsail. We had a clear Sky &  
by ten o'clock A.M., the Wind had shifted  
West & increased so that we were  
obliged to double Reef the Topsails  
and furle the Mainsail. Saw a Brig  
Bound South, At 2 P.M., Lat  $\approx 34^{\circ}43'N$ ,  
Long  $\approx 59^{\circ}50'W$ . Light set in blowing  
fresh and very heavy Sea. kept her under  
snug sail, heading North all Night.



# 446 Dreadful Weather.

Wednesday 20<sup>th</sup> Fine & good breeze from West Northwest. At five o'clock A.M., we tacked ship to the S.W., At six o'clock we tacked back again. The wind kept backing round to the S.W., until by 2 P.M., we were going our course, N.W. by West. and a heavy head sea against us. All sail on, but the Royals & Studding sails. Latitude  $35^{\circ}45'$  North. Longitude  $60^{\circ}08'$  West. At 4 P.M., the glass fell fast, and there was every appearance of a gale. By sundown we had all the light sails in. At 8 o'clock double reefed the Topsails, & furled the Main sail splitting it in the operation slightly. At 9 o'clock close reefed, At 10 o'clock we called all hands & took in Fore Topsail & foresail. At half past ten had a tremendous heavy squall that nearly hove us down, we however got her before the wind & took in the Main Topsail. At half past 11 we hove her to again on the Port tack, under Fore Topmast Stay sail and Main Spencer, shipping two or three heavy seas. We then lashed the hatches down & the Watch went below wet as drowned rats, for we had a continual heavy rain ever since sundown but, no Thunder or Lightning this Gale.

Thursday 21<sup>st</sup> From 12 to 2 this morning we had some heavy squalls & a steady rain. At two o'clock the gale broke and it cleared off moderating gradually until four o'clock when they set the close reefed



Agreeably Disappointed. 447  
Main topsail, and it kept moderating  
so that by 10 A M, we had double reefed  
Topsails, courses, Sparker & Lib on her  
Still there was a very strong breeze,  
which as it moderated had hauled due West.  
Saw one Merchant Brig Bound South.  
Lat =  $36^{\circ}35'$  North. Long =  $61^{\circ}27'$  West. At  
5 P M, the Wind again beginning to  
increase, we took in the Mainsail. At  
Sundown there was every appearance of it.  
Bad sight, so we took in everything but the  
F, I, S, sail, Main Spence, & Close reefed Top  
Sails; But by 8 P M, the Wind hauled North  
and was quite moderate, so we gave her  
the courses, double Reefed Topsails, Lib  
& Sparker, & let her go at that.  
Friday 22<sup>nd</sup> Fine and a very heavy Westerly  
swell. At one this morning made all  
sail to a light Northerly Breeze. Heading  
West. At 7 A M, it died away calm, and  
continued so until 5 P M when a Breeze  
sprang up from the S E, and we squared  
the yards steering W, N W and made sail  
Lat =  $37^{\circ}07'$  North. Long =  $62^{\circ}31'$  West. At  
Sundown we set the Royals, & the Weather  
looking suspicious, besides the Barometer  
falling, we furled the Mainsail and sent  
down the Topgallant & Steedingsail Booms.  
Mr Senner off duty with Pairs in his  
Breast & Left Shoulder, as he says! and I  
had to head his watch to Night. The  
Wind kept increasing until by 12 o'clock  
She was under Topsails foresail and Lib.



## 44 & The Last Staff Of Life.


Saturday 23<sup>rd</sup> At one o'clock this morning the wind hauled S.W. & it knocked off raining the wind lulled & we had a clear sky & good moon light by two o'clock, so I made all sail on her again, & away we went flying. At daylight the wind hauled W, S.W., & continued so all day, a good strong breeze. Saw two Merchant Ketches & one large Whale Ship, all steering to the Eastward. We wet hold this morning & I am in hopes it is for the last time. We also opened the last cask of Bread, (& I forgot to mention that we have had neither Coffee or Tea since last Sunday) we also broke out water. The Captain & Carpenter spent the day, Rigging a Machine on the end of the Fore and Main yards to set Signal Lanterns Nights. Lat<sup>e</sup> 37° 33' North. Long<sup>e</sup> 64° 27' West. About 5 P.M., it set in thick, Cloudy, Hazy weather & the wind moderated hauling at the same time to the W, N.W. At Sundown we tacked Ship & headed S.W. by West. The second Mate still off duty. Sunday 24<sup>th</sup> At one this morning the wind hauled round North & blew a strong Breeze. We heaved our course W. N.W. as there was a heavy head sea, she kept the decks completely flooded until 7<sup>h</sup> A.M. when the wind died away & kept failing until 10<sup>h</sup> A.M., when it died away calm. At 1<sup>h</sup> P.M., we got a Breeze from West, and put her on the Starboard tack, heading S, S.W.



Crossing The Gulf Stream 449  
Lat  $37^{\circ}48'$  North. Longitude  $66^{\circ}21'$  West.  
after Sundown, the Breeze gradually died  
away & by Midnight it was dead calm.  
Monday 25<sup>th</sup> Still calm. At 8 AM, we  
got a breeze from NE, so we squared the  
yards, set Studding sails & Main Royal, and  
kept the lookouts forward, (But, he might  
just as well have them on deck! for I  
don't believe there is any body would sing  
out for Whales if they saw them.) Course  
N W by W. Lat  $38^{\circ}04'$  North. Long  $66^{\circ}39'$  West.  
PM, the wind died away to a very light breeze  
and I believe we are in the Southern Edge  
of the Gulf Stream. Saw two Sails, and  
Plenty of Squid & Dolphin, which we see  
about every day now. At Sundown the  
Wind hauled East & we had a very light  
Breeze until Midnight. Mr. Jenney turned to.  
Tuesday 26<sup>th</sup> The wind began to freshen  
with Occasional light Showers, and by day  
light we had a Fine strong breeze, steering  
N W by West. A vessel passed us just before  
daylight that we called a Homeward Bound  
Whaler. Got no sights to day, but, calculated  
we were in about the Latitude of 39 degrees  
North, and Longitude of 68 degrees West. We  
opened two more barrels of Beef to day, which  
leaves but one more in the Hold, and still  
as nigh as we are to home it was allowed  
out in eight lots to the Barrel, each lot to  
last a day. PM, saw one more sail, Bound N  
East. After Sundown the wind commenced  
lulling & by Midnight it was a dead calm.



# 450 In The Gulf Stream

Wednesday 27<sup>th</sup> June. At three o'clock  
this morning we got a Breeze from WNW,  
Dead ahead, so we braced up & stood to the  
Southwest; Great works going on, every  
one for himself, cleaning up Bed clothes,  
Washing off chests, & Packing up things that  
will be wanted no more on board the old  
Doctor, Making chests & Bed Lashings &c &c.  
Lat<sup>a</sup> to day  $38^{\circ} 22'$  North. Long<sup>a</sup>  $68^{\circ} 49'$  West.  
P.M., the wind began to haul gradually to  
the Northward & by 4<sup>h</sup> P.M., she came up West.  
Saw Plenty of Porpoises to day; and at five  
o'clock we struck  and saved  
a fine large one

Cleaned ready for the Cook tomorrow, who  
by the bye, is off duty to day with the  
Rheumatic Pains in his shoulders. We  
took in the Light sails & headed from  
West to Southwest all night & if I don't  
mistake he will be sorry for not keeping  
more sail on her, instead of waiting for  
a fair wind & letting her drift in the Gulf Stream.

Thursday 28<sup>th</sup> Winds the same, Dead Ahead.  
Saw Plenty of Blackfish, Grampuses, Squid,  
Porpoises, Dolphin, & Merchant Vessels  
Bound to Eastward. At 2<sup>h</sup> P.M., we got an  
observation & found our Latitude was  
 $38^{\circ} 42'$  North, & Longitude  $68^{\circ} 35'$  West. Having  
drifted 40 miles South & 14 miles East, in the  
last 24 hours, so he came to the conclusion to  
set the light sails again & try to stem the  
current instead of waiting for a fair Wind.  
At 5<sup>h</sup> P.M., We lowered the Waist boat to board



# Out Of Our Reckoning 451

A vessel on our lee bow, to compare longitudes & send the letters we got from the Swedish Ship *Suenige* the 28<sup>th</sup> of April last. She proved to be the Bark *Mary Annah*, Captain Grace, of Portsmouth N<sup>o</sup> H, from New Orleans 19 days, with a cargo of Tobacco for Liverpool we found that our chronometer was a degree out of the way, being a degree farther from home, to the Eastward than we thought we were. Captain Grace, sent our Captain some papers, and a bar of fresh blams also a couple of pounds of Tobacco, hearing that we were short of that article the crew also gave our men some Tobacco, and after wishing each other a speedy Passage, we filled away on our respective courses, and the wind had hauled due North. By sundown we came up N<sup>o</sup> W, & we kept her so.

Friday 29<sup>th</sup> A lovely day, & a smooth sea About 3<sup>h</sup> this morning the wind hauled N<sup>o</sup> E. so we checked the yards a little & set the Topmast & Top Gallant Studding Sails. The wind continued steady throughout the day, & at 2 P<sup>o</sup> M, we were in Lat<sup>d</sup> 38° 25' North and Long<sup>d</sup> 68° 19' West, corrected by the *Mary Annah's* time. Saw some Merchant Vessels, and some Porpoises, one of which we struck & he broke my harpoon carrying off the head of it with him. I spent the evening looking over the New Orleans Piccadilly, but could see nothing familiar to me in it. The wind continued favorable the rest of the night & kept gradually increasing & hauling N<sup>o</sup> E.



## 452 Five. Useful Receipts.

### To Soften Ivory

In three ounces of Spirits of Nitre, and fifteen ounces of Spring, or Pure Rain Water mixed together Put your ivory to soaking. And in three or four days it will be soft so as to obey your fingers to mould it in any shape you like.

### To Dye Ivory Thus Softened.

Dissolve in Spirits of Wine, such colors as you want to dye your Ivory with. And when the spirit of wine shall be sufficiently tinged with the colour you have put in, Plunge your ivory in it, and leave it there till it is sufficiently Penetrated with it, and dyed inwardly. Then mould your Ivory into any form you please.

### To Harden it Again.

Wrap it up in a Sheet of White Paper, and cover it with decrepitated common salt, And as dry as you can make it to be; In which situation you shall leave it only 24 Hours.

### To Render Boots or Shoes Water Proof.

Take Neats-foot oil & dissolve India Rubber Rarings in it, enough to form a kind of Varnish and Rub on your Boots or Shoes; It will take several days to dissolve, The Oil being placed where it is warm.

### To Render Boots or Shoes Impervious to moisture.

Take one Pint of drying Oil, two ounces Beeswax, two ounces Spirits of Turpentine, half an ounce Burgundy Pitch. melt them over a slow fire & stir it well. Lay it on new Boots or Shoes, either in the Sun, or some distance from the fire, with a sponge or Brush, & repeat it as often as they become dry, until fully saturated. Boots or shoes thus Prepared must not be worn until the Leather has become perfectly dry & elastic. They will be impervious to Water.



On Boardings. 453

Saturday 30<sup>th</sup> commenced with drizzling Rain, and the wind hauled out S E, and blew a Noble breeze, at Daylight it commenced hauling forward, & by breakfast time, she was close hauled to go her course. We wet hold & broke out water for the last time, also Flour & Sugar for the last time. After Breakfast the wind began to haul aft again & we set Studding sails & Royals again and hauled up half a Point more N<sup>W</sup> half N. At 9<sup>h</sup> AM, the water began to change colour. Saw Plenty of Merchant Vessels to day. At 2<sup>h</sup> PM, Lat =  $39^{\circ}52'$  North. Long =  $70^{\circ}46'$  West. Just 82 miles from Nothans Land. At 2<sup>h</sup> PM, Passed close to the Brig Charles Adams of Maitland Nova Scotia, Bount to Westward. We then hauled up North half West, and took in the Studding sails, and Royals as the Wind was E, N E. We saw Plenty of Finbacks & Grampuses. At 5<sup>h</sup> PM, we received orders to take the craft out of the Boats, and Bundle it up, and put all the small stuff in a Cask. I can Tell you, it was Joyful news to us all, and we went at it with a will. At 6 PM, we were 58 miles from Nothans Land, and after getting the Deep Sea Lead & line all ready and congratulating one another on our Prospect of soon being free then again, I went below and the Vessel kept on N by West. I got my Bill from the Captain to day & found I had drew Seventy Six Dollars & Sixty Eight Cents since leaving home. He also gave me a Pair of Gold Ear Rings as an equivalent for One Dollar and



454 Land Ho! At Last!

Thirty cents due to me for Raising Whales  
on the first day of February Last. At 5<sup>h</sup> P.M.  
they sounded & got Blue Mud Bottom in  
fifty five fathoms Water. At 1<sup>h</sup> Sounded  
again & got Blue Mud in forty five fathoms  
Sunday the 31<sup>st</sup> And Last day of July.  
At one o'clock this Morning it was a dead  
calm, which made some of our lower lifts  
hang considerable lower. We sounded & got  
forty fathoms water & Blue Mud slightly  
tinged with orange. At three o'clock, the same  
At daylight we got a light breeze from  
the South, accompanied by Rain, we made  
all sail & kept her a half West. Saw several  
sails, large vessels. At nine o'clock Sounded  
and got orange in 35 fathoms water. At  
12 o'clock, sounded again, and got White  
& Yellow Gravel, rather fine, in twenty five  
fathoms water. But, still no Land in sight,  
The weather thick, & Rainy, & a very light breeze.  
At two o'clock in the afternoon we passed close  
under the stern of the foreign Top sail. Guard  
Ship Bank, Cores, of Yarmouth, standing  
to the Eastward. At half past two it lit up  
and we saw Land, Bearing N.W. At three  
o'clock, we spoke the Fishing Smack, Martha  
of Choac, who told us the Land we saw was  
Black Island, That No Mans Land Bore  
E. by North. from us, & that Gay Head, bore  
N.E. by East, 20 miles distant, So we hauled  
her up N.N.E. & set everything to a four  
knot S.E. wind, All hands in good hopes, if  
the help, to get a Pilot before Night set in.



Nearby To an End 455

At 4<sup>th</sup> P.M., it died away calm, so the Captain lowered a boat, went to one of the fishing Smacks & got six large Codfish for one dollar, which we cooked for supper fore and aft. At five o'clock a light breeze sprang up & we kept her N.E. by N. half North. We then got the cables up & bent them. Gay head was in sight at sundown but no Pilot. About 8 o'clock we madeuddyhunk Light & the Light Boat. At 10 o'clock it was dead calm. And I caught a large Fladdock. At 11 o'clock it was still dead calm. Monday The first day of August and the Nigger Bobbation. At 12 o'clock we got a West wind & it cleared off as clear as a Bell. So we squared away foruddyhunk and at two o'clock, hauled aback about eight miles to westward of it. At daylight we got the Pilot & kept away North for West Port, we then got the Starboard anchor off the Bow & all hands commenced packing up their clothes. At 7<sup>th</sup> A.M., we got the Harbour Pilot, We then got breakfast, and laid off & on waiting for high water. At eight o'clock the Captain went onshore in the River Pilot's boat & when he shoved off the crew mustered to the side, and gave three dismal Grouns, & then hooted at him until he was out of hearing, we then made another tack off shore & then stood in. & at ten minutes past Ten o'clock, A.M., on the first day of August 1859, I jumped on shore and was thankful that the Voyage



456 The Last Of the Voyage  
Was to an end, & Although they held out  
Great inducements for me to go again  
They could not prevail, & it is my firm  
Determination never to Proceed in the  
Business again. For my future travels  
I shall commence another Book, leaving  
the Remaining Blank Pages for the  
Readers to Criticize Upon. D. D. H.







458 New Orleans February 1<sup>st</sup> 1864

Dear Brother William Whitfield. Before I leave New Orleans in the United States Steam Sloop of War Lackawanna I thought it would be as well to let you know where you can always hear of me while I am living; for there is no knowing where we may go after we leave here, or what Accident might happen, that would deprive me of the means of communicating with you or you with me. I might possibly get taken Prisoner, or get killed in some action with the Enemy; & if such should be the case you can always at any time hear from me by writing to Mr Samuel Phillips No 15 Cherry Street New York City. He has some Money of mine, I do not know the exact Amount; But, I believe and know him to be an honest upright Man & I have Instructed him as to the disposal of it in case of My Death. Besides this, I have about five Hundred Dollars, (\$500) of Prize Money due to me at this present date; Besides what may be due to me in Prize Money & wages earned after this date. My Clothing, Bedding, and other Articles of Private Property which will be sold in case of my death, at Auction and the Proceeds added to my Account. I have no one in the wide world to leave this Money to, but you My Brother & I will have things arranged on board so that in case of My Death you will be notified of it & can make Application for my little



Effects that I leave behind me Money & all. 459  
I may be mistaken; but, something tells me that  
After we Part this time, We will never meet  
again on this Earth; & I am a firm Believer in  
Fore warnings, And that you may not Laugh  
at me I tell you Truly & Honestly, that I  
Saw Both My Father & My Brother James  
The Night of their Deaths; although I was  
over Seven Thousand miles distant at the  
time they Died. God Grant that I may be mis-  
taken & that we may meet again; If we do  
we will not Part again through any fault  
of mine until one or both of us take our  
last Journey & May that Journey be Heaven-  
ward! from this day forward I will try my  
Best with God's Blessing for to make it so!  
For the Almighty knows that my Past Life  
has been miserable enough, whereas if I had  
looked to Him & tried through him; I might  
have been happy enough; or at least as happy  
as it is allotted to the Human Family in general  
to be. I scarcely know what the feeling they call  
filial love is; But, this much I do know! that yourself  
and Poor Margaret was the only two of our family  
that I ever had any liking for at all! May God Forgive  
me if I am wrong! but I cannot help it! from all  
others that I ever knew, I could Part Joyously;  
But, when at different times I have Parted with  
you & Her, God who knows everything, knows that  
they were the most Bitter & most Miserable  
Moments of my Life. Why, I cannot tell! But a good  
number of times that I could have come to New  
Orleans I would not; For I was always uneasy and  
careless of Myself while there. And miserably



460 Unhappily when the time came to Leave  
again. This anyhow will be the last time; unless  
our ship by some chance should return here, and  
that I think highly improbable. My Term of Service  
Expires On the thirtieth day of December 1865 and  
then if God spares me until that time; my rambles  
on the Ocean are Finished. And May God! in his  
infinite Mercy see fit to spare me, it shall be  
the constant and unremitting Prayer of your  
Affectionate Brother

Daniel Whitfield  
and now farewell William; May God Bless and  
Prosper you & if we meet no more on Earth  
May we so conduct ourselves on Earth as to be  
confident of meeting each other Hereafter.  
Heaven. This shall be the constant Prayer of  
your Wandering Brother

Daniel Whitfield of  
Newark, New Jersey  
U.S.A.

D



Mr John Fulton Baker Allen  
County, N. Y. Daniel Whiffles

J. J. J.





